



VMG5313-BXB Series

Wireless N VDSL2 IAD with USB

Version 5.11

Edition 1, 01/2016

User's Guide

Default Login Details

LAN IP Address	http://192.168.1.1
Login	admin
Password	admin

IMPORTANT!

READ CAREFULLY BEFORE USE.

KEEP THIS GUIDE FOR FUTURE REFERENCE.

Screenshots and graphics in this book may differ slightly from your product due to differences in your product firmware or your computer operating system. Every effort has been made to ensure that the information in this manual is accurate.

Related Documentation

- Quick Start Guide

The Quick Start Guide shows how to connect the VMG and get up and running right away.

- More Information

Go to support.zyxel.com to find other information on the VMG.



Contents Overview

User's Guide	15
Introducing the VMG	17
The Web Configurator	23
Quick Start	31
Tutorials	33
Technical Reference	55
Network Map and Status Screens	57
Broadband	62
Wireless	90
Home Networking	120
Routing	136
Quality of Service (QoS)	142
Network Address Translation (NAT)	160
Dynamic DNS Setup	176
IGMP/MLD	179
Vlan Group	182
Interface Grouping	184
USB Service	189
Firewall	194
MAC Filter	202
Parental Control	204
Scheduler Rule	208
Certificates	210
Voice	217
Log	248
Traffic Status	251
VoIP Status	254
ARP Table	256
Routing Table	258
Multicast Status	260
xDSL Statistics	262
3G Statistics	265
System	267
User Account	268
Remote Management	270
SNMP	273
Time Settings	275

Contents Overview

E-mail Notification	277
Log Setting	279
Firmware Upgrade	282
Backup Restore	285
Diagnostic	288
Troubleshooting	293
Appendices	
300	

Table of Contents

Contents Overview	3
Table of Contents	5
Part I: User's Guide	15
Chapter 1	
Introducing the VMG	17
1.1 Overview	17
1.2 Ways to Manage the VMG	17
1.3 Good Habits for Managing the VMG	17
1.4 Applications for the VMG	18
1.4.1 Internet Access	18
1.4.2 VMG's USB Support	18
1.5 LEDs (Lights)	19
1.6 The RESET Button	21
1.7 Wireless Access	21
1.7.1 Using the Wi-Fi and WPS Buttons	21
Chapter 2	
The Web Configurator	23
2.1 Overview	23
2.1.1 Accessing the Web Configurator	23
2.2 Web Configurator Layout	25
2.2.1 Title Bar	25
2.2.2 Navigation Panel	26
Chapter 3	
Quick Start	31
3.1 Overview	31
3.2 Quick Start Setup	31
Chapter 4	
Tutorials	33
4.1 Overview	33
4.2 Setting Up an ADSL PPPoE Connection	33
4.3 Setting Up a Secure Wireless Network	36
4.3.1 Configuring the Wireless Network Settings	36

4.3.2 Using WPS	37
4.3.3 Without WPS	41
4.4 Setting Up Multiple Wireless Groups	42
4.5 Configuring Static Route for Routing to Another Network	45
4.6 Configuring QoS Queue and Class Setup	47
4.7 Access the VMG Using DDNS	51
4.7.1 Registering a DDNS Account on www.dyndns.org	51
4.7.2 Configuring DDNS on Your VMG	52
4.7.3 Testing the DDNS Setting	52
4.8 Configuring the MAC Address Filter	52
4.9 Access Your Shared Files From a Computer	53
Part II: Technical Reference.....	55
Chapter 5	
Network Map and Status Screens	57
5.1 Overview	57
5.2 The Network Map Screen	57
5.3 The Status Screen	58
Chapter 6	
Broadband.....	62
6.1 Overview	62
6.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter	62
6.1.2 What You Need to Know	63
6.1.3 Before You Begin	66
6.2 The Broadband Screen	66
6.2.1 Add/Edit Internet Connection	68
6.3 The 3G Backup Screen	76
6.4 The Advanced Screen	80
6.5 The Ethernet WAN Screen	82
6.6 The 802.1x Screen	83
6.6.1 Modify 802.1X Settings	84
6.7 Technical Reference	84
Chapter 7	
Wireless	90
7.1 Overview	90
7.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter	90
7.1.2 What You Need to Know	90
7.2 The General Screen	91

Table of Contents

7.2.1 No Security	93
7.2.2 Basic (WEP Encryption)	93
7.2.3 More Secure (WPA(2)-PSK)	94
7.3 The Guest/More AP Screen	95
7.3.1 Edit Guest/More AP	96
7.4 MAC Authentication	98
7.5 The WPS Screen	99
7.6 The WMM Screen	101
7.7 The WDS Screen	102
7.7.1 WDS Scan	103
7.8 The Others Screen	104
7.9 The Channel Status Screen	105
7.10 Technical Reference	106
7.10.1 Wireless Network Overview	106
7.10.2 Additional Wireless Terms	108
7.10.3 Wireless Security Overview	108
7.10.4 Signal Problems	110
7.10.5 BSS	111
7.10.6 MBSSID	111
7.10.7 Preamble Type	112
7.10.8 Wireless Distribution System (WDS)	112
7.10.9 WiFi Protected Setup (WPS)	112
Chapter 8	
Home Networking	120
120	
8.1 Overview	120
8.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter	120
8.1.2 What You Need To Know	121
8.1.3 Before You Begin	122
8.2 The LAN Setup Screen	122
8.3 The Static DHCP Screen	126
8.4 The UPnP Screen	127
8.4.1 Turning On UPnP in Windows 7 Example	128
8.5 The Additional Subnet Screen	129
8.6 The STB Vendor ID Screen	131
8.7 The Wake on LAN Screen	131
8.8 The TFTP Server Name Screen	132
8.9 Technical Reference	132
8.9.1 LANs, WANs and the VMG	132
8.9.2 DHCP Setup	133
8.9.3 DNS Server Addresses	133
8.9.4 LAN TCP/IP	134

Chapter 9	
Routing	136
9.1 Overview	136
9.2 The Routing Screen	136
9.2.1 Add/Edit Static Route	137
9.3 The DNS Route Screen	138
9.3.1 The DNS Route Add Screen	138
9.4 The Policy Route Screen	139
9.4.1 Add/Edit Policy Route	140
9.5 RIP	141
9.5.1 The RIP Screen	141
Chapter 10	
Quality of Service (QoS).....	142
10.1 Overview	142
10.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter	142
10.2 What You Need to Know	143
10.3 The Quality of Service General Screen	144
10.4 The Queue Setup Screen	145
10.4.1 Adding a QoS Queue	146
10.5 The Classification Setup Screen	147
10.5.1 Add/Edit QoS Class	148
10.6 The QoS Shaper Setup Screen	152
10.6.1 Add/Edit a QoS Shaper	153
10.7 The QoS Policer Setup Screen	153
10.7.1 Add/Edit a QoS Policer	154
10.8 Technical Reference	155
Chapter 11	
Network Address Translation (NAT).....	160
11.1 Overview	160
11.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter	160
11.1.2 What You Need To Know	160
11.2 The Port Forwarding Screen	161
11.2.1 Add/Edit Port Forwarding	163
11.3 The Applications Screen	164
11.3.1 Add New Application	164
11.4 The Port Triggering Screen	165
11.4.1 Add/Edit Port Triggering Rule	167
11.5 The DMZ Screen	168
11.6 The ALG Screen	168
11.7 The Address Mapping Screen	169
11.7.1 Add/Edit Address Mapping Rule	170

Table of Contents

11.8 The Sessions Screen	171
11.9 Technical Reference	171
11.9.1 NAT Definitions	172
11.9.2 What NAT Does	172
11.9.3 How NAT Works	173
11.9.4 NAT Application	173
Chapter 12	
Dynamic DNS Setup	176
12.1 Overview	176
12.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter	176
12.1.2 What You Need To Know	176
12.2 The DNS Entry Screen	177
12.2.1 Add/Edit DNS Entry	177
12.3 The Dynamic DNS Screen	178
Chapter 13	
IGMP/MLD	179
13.1 Overview	179
13.1.1 What You Need To Know	179
13.2 The IGMP/MLD Screen	179
Chapter 14	
Vlan Group	182
14.1 Overview	182
14.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter	182
14.2 The Vlan Group Screen	182
14.2.1 Add/Edit a VLAN Group	183
Chapter 15	
Interface Grouping	184
15.1 Overview	184
15.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter	184
15.2 The Interface Grouping Screen	184
15.2.1 Interface Group Configuration	185
15.2.2 Interface Grouping Criteria	187
Chapter 16	
USB Service	189
16.1 Overview	189
16.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter	189
16.1.2 ().What You Need To Know	189
16.1.3 Before You Begin	190

Table of Contents

16.2 The File Sharing Screen	190
16.2.1 The Add New User Screen	191
16.3 The Media Server Screen	192
Chapter 17	
Firewall	194
17.1 Overview	194
17.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter	194
17.1.2 What You Need to Know	195
17.2 The Firewall Screen	195
17.3 The Protocol Screen	196
17.3.1 Add/Edit a Service	197
17.4 The Access Control Screen	198
17.4.1 Add/Edit an ACL Rule	199
17.5 The DoS Screen	200
Chapter 18	
MAC Filter	202
18.1 Overview	202
18.2 The MAC Filter Screen	202
Chapter 19	
Parental Control	204
19.1 Overview	204
19.2 The Parental Control Screen	204
19.2.1 Add/Edit a Parental Control Profile	205
Chapter 20	
Scheduler Rule.....	208
20.1 Overview	208
20.2 The Scheduler Rule Screen	208
20.2.1 Add/Edit a Schedule	208
Chapter 21	
Certificates	210
21.1 Overview	210
21.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter	210
21.2 What You Need to Know	210
21.3 The Local Certificates Screen	210
21.3.1 Create Certificate Request	211
21.3.2 Load Signed Certificate	213
21.4 The Trusted CA Screen	214
21.4.1 View Trusted CA Certificate	214

21.4.2 Import Trusted CA Certificate	215
Chapter 22	
Voice	217
22.1 Overview	217
22.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter	217
22.1.2 What You Need to Know About VoIP	218
22.2 Before You Begin	218
22.3 The SIP Account Screen	218
22.3.1 The SIP Account Add/Edit Screen	219
22.4 The SIP Service Provider Screen	223
22.4.1 The SIP Service Provider Add/Edit Screen	224
22.4.2 Dial Plan Rules	230
22.5 The Phone Device Screen	231
22.6 The Region Screen	231
22.7 The Call Rule Screen	232
22.8 The Call History Screen	233
22.9 The Call Summary Screen	233
22.10 Technical Reference	234
22.10.1 Quality of Service (QoS)	242
22.10.2 Phone Services Overview	242
Chapter 23	
Log	248
23.1 Overview	248
23.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter	248
23.1.2 What You Need To Know	248
23.2 The System Log Screen	249
23.3 The Security Log Screen	249
Chapter 24	
Traffic Status	251
24.1 Overview	251
24.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter	251
24.2 The WAN Status Screen	251
24.3 The LAN Status Screen	252
24.4 The NAT Status Screen	253
Chapter 25	
VoIP Status	254
25.1 The VoIP Status Screen	254
Chapter 26	
ARP Table	256

Table of Contents

26.1 Overview	256
26.1.1 How ARP Works	256
26.2 ARP Table Screen	256
Chapter 27	
Routing Table	258
27.1 Overview	258
27.2 The Routing Table Screen	258
Chapter 28	
Multicast Status	260
28.1 Overview	260
28.2 The IGMP Status Screen	260
28.3 The MLD Status Screen	260
Chapter 29	
xDSL Statistics.....	262
29.1 The xDSL Statistics Screen	262
Chapter 30	
3G Statistics	
.....	265
30.1 Overview	265
30.2 The 3G Statistics Screen	265
Chapter 31	
System	267
31.1 Overview	267
31.2 The System Screen	267
Chapter 32	
User Account	
.....	268
32.1 Overview	268
32.2 The User Account Screen	268
32.2.1 The User Account Add/Edit Screen	268
Chapter 33	
Remote Management.....	270
33.1 Overview	270
33.2 The MGMT Services Screen	270
33.3 The Trust Domain Screen	271
33.4 The Add Trust Domain Screen	271
Chapter 34	

SNMP273

Table of Contents

34.1 Overview	273
34.2 The SNMP Screen	273
Chapter 35	
Time Settings	275
35.1 Overview	275
35.2 The Time Screen	275
Chapter 36	
E-mail Notification	
.....	277
36.1 Overview	277
36.2 The Email Notification Screen	277
36.2.1 Email Notification Edit	277
Chapter 37	
Log Setting	279
37.1 Overview	279
37.2 The Log Settings Screen	279
37.2.1 Example E-mail Log	280
Chapter 38	
Firmware Upgrade	282
38.1 Overview	282
38.2 The Firmware Screen	282
Chapter 39	
Backup Restore	285
39.1 Overview	285
39.2 The Backup Restore Screen	285
39.3 The Reboot Screen	287
Chapter 40	
Diagnostic	
.....	288
40.1 Overview	288
40.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter	288
40.2 What You Need to Know	288
40.3 Ping & TraceRoute & Nslookup	289
40.4 802.1ag	289
40.5 OAM Ping	290
Chapter 41	
Troubleshooting.....	293
41.1 Power, Hardware Connections, and LEDs	293

Table of Contents

41.2 VMG Access and Login	294
41.3 Internet Access	296
41.4 Wireless Internet Access	297
41.5 USB Device Connection	298
41.6 UPnP	298
Part III: Appendices	300
Appendix A Customer Support	302
Appendix B Wireless LANs	308
Appendix C IPv6	321
Appendix D Services	329
Appendix E Legal Information.....	333
Index	341

PART I

User's Guide

Introducing the VMG

1.1 Overview

The VMG is a wireless VDSL router and Gigabit Ethernet gateway. It has a DSL port and a Gigabit Ethernet port for super-fast Internet access. The VMG supports both Packet Transfer Mode (PTM) and Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM). It is backward compatible with ADSL, ADSL2 and ADSL2+ in case VDSL is not available.

Only use firmware for your VMG's specific model. Refer to the label on the bottom of your VMG.

The VMG works over the analog telephone system, POTS (Plain Old Telephone Service). The VMG has two USB ports for sharing files via a USB storage device or connecting a 3G dongle for a WAN backup connection.

1.2 Ways to Manage the VMG

Use any of the following methods to manage the VMG.

- Web Configurator. This is recommended for everyday management of the VMG using a (supported) web browser.
- TR-069. This is an auto-configuration server used to remotely configure your device.

1.3 Good Habits for Managing the VMG

Do the following things regularly to make the VMG more secure and to manage the VMG more effectively.

- Change the password. Use a password that's not easy to guess and that consists of different types of characters, such as numbers and letters.
- Write down the password and put it in a safe place.
- Back up the configuration (and make sure you know how to restore it). Restoring an earlier working configuration may be useful if the device becomes unstable or even crashes. If you forget your password, you will have to reset the VMG to its factory default settings. If you backed up an earlier configuration file, you would not have to totally re-configure the VMG. You could simply restore your last configuration.

1.4 Applications for the VMG

Here are some example uses for which the VMG is well suited.

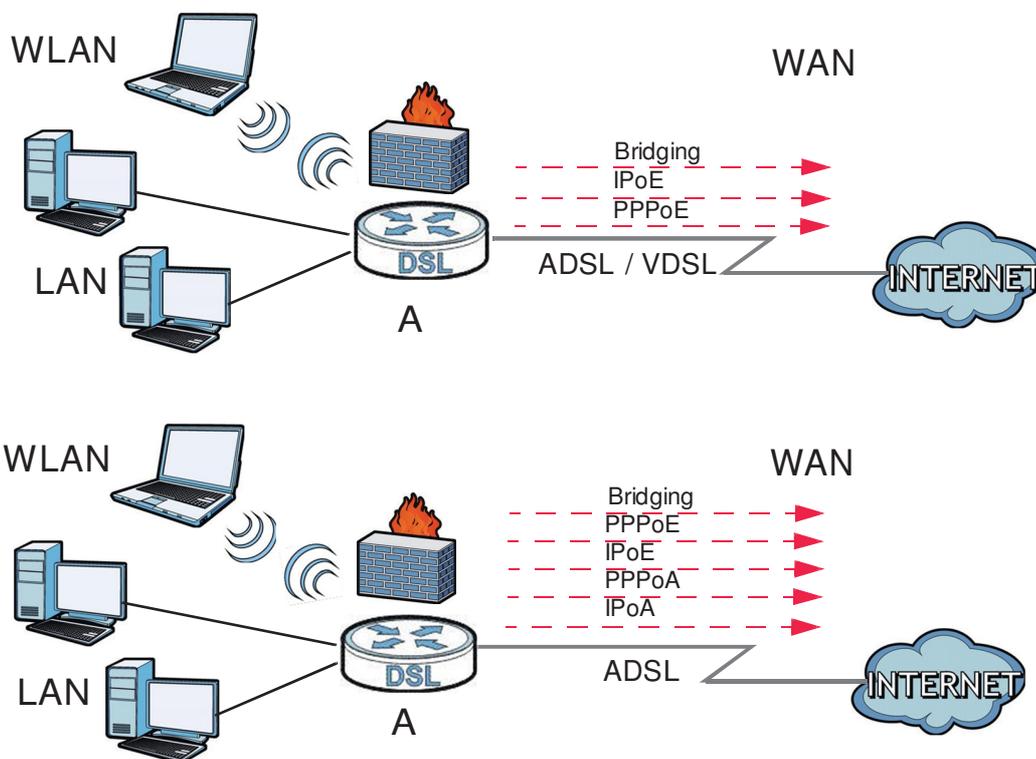
1.4.1 Internet Access

Your VMG provides shared Internet access by connecting the DSL port to the DSL or MODEM jack on a splitter or your telephone jack. You can have multiple WAN services over one ADSL or VDSL. The VMG cannot work in ADSL and VDSL mode at the same time.

Note: The ADSL and VDSL lines share the same WAN (layer-2) interfaces that you configure in the VMG. Refer to [Section 6.2 on page 66](#) for the Network Setting > Broadband screen.

Computers can connect to the VMG's LAN ports (or wirelessly).

Figure 1 VMG's Internet Access Application



You can also configure IP filtering on the VMG for secure Internet access. When the IP filter is on, all incoming traffic from the Internet to your network is blocked by default unless it is initiated from your network. This means that probes from the outside to your network are not allowed, but you can safely browse the Internet and download files.

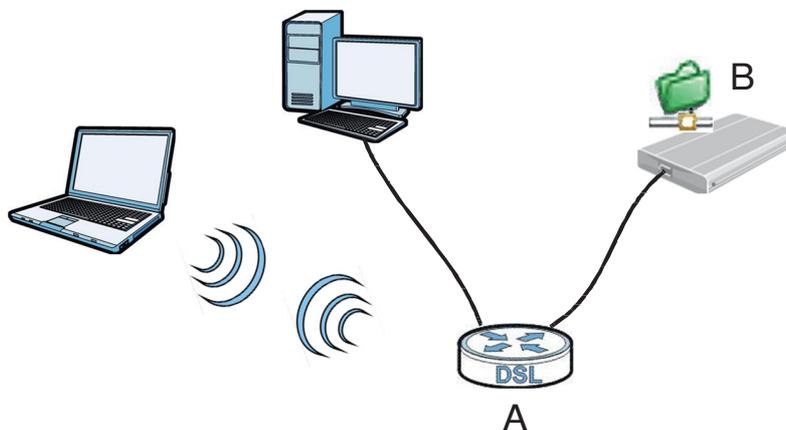
1.4.2 VMG's USB Support

The USB port of the VMG is used for file-sharing and media server.

File Sharing

Use the built-in USB 2.0 port to share files on a USB memory stick or a USB hard drive (B). You can connect one USB hard drive to the VMG at a time. Use FTP to access the files on the USB device.

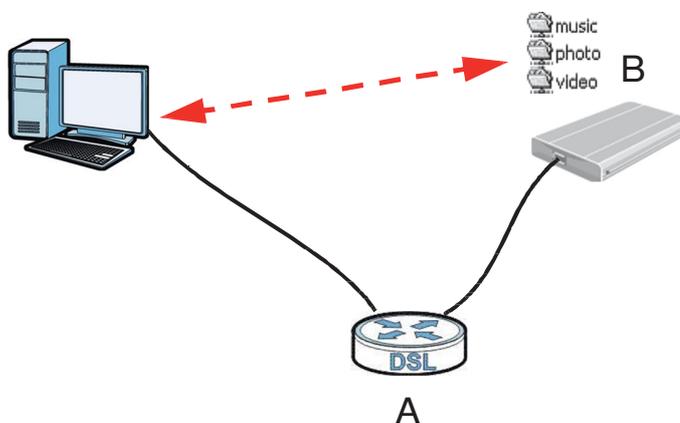
Figure 2 USB File Sharing Application



Media Server

You can also use the VMG as a media server. This lets anyone on your network play video, music, and photos from a USB device (B) connected to the VMG's USB port (without having to copy them to another computer).

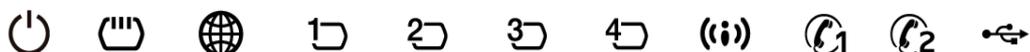
Figure 3 USB Media Server Application



1.5 LEDs (Lights)

The following graphic displays the labels of the LEDs.

Figure 4 LEDs on the VMG



None of the LEDs are on if the VMG is not receiving power.

Table 1 LED Descriptions

LED	COLOR	STATUS	DESCRIPTION
 Power	Green	On	The VMG is receiving power and ready for use.
		Blinking	The VMG is self-testing.
	Red	On	The VMG detected an error while self-testing, or there is a device malfunction.
		Off	The VMG is not receiving power.
 DSL	Green	On	The VDSL line is up.
		Blinking	The VMG is initializing the VDSL line.
		Off	The DSL line is down.
 Internet	Green	On	The VMG has an IP connection but no traffic. Your device has a WAN IP address (either static or assigned by a DHCP server), PPP negotiation was successfully completed (if used) and the DSL connection is up.
		Blinking	The VMG is sending or receiving IP traffic.
		Off	There is no Internet connection or the gateway is in bridged mode.
	Red	On	The VMG attempted to make an IP connection but failed. Possible causes are no response from a DHCP server, no PPPoE response, PPPoE authentication failed.
Ethernet WAN	Green	On	The VMG has a successful 1000 Mbps Ethernet connection on the WAN.
		Blinking	The VMG is sending or receiving data to/from the WAN at 1000 Mbps.
	Orange	On	The VMG has a successful 10/100 Mbps Ethernet connection on the WAN.
		Blinking	The VMG is sending or receiving data to/from the WAN at 10/100 Mbps.
		Off	There is no Ethernet connection on the WAN.
 LAN1~4	Green	On	The VMG has a successful 1000 Mbps Ethernet connection with a device on the Local Area Network (LAN).
		Blinking	The VMG is sending or receiving data to/from the LAN at 1000 Mbps.
		Off	The VMG does not have an Ethernet connection with the LAN.
 WLAN/WPS	Green	On	The 2.4 GHz wireless network is activated.
		Blinking	The VMG is communicating with 2.4 GHz wireless clients.
	Orange	Blinking	The VMG is setting up a WPS connection with a 2.4 GHz wireless client.
		Off	The 2.4 GHz wireless network is not activated.
 Phone1, Phone2	Green	On	A SIP account is registered for the phone port.
		Blinking	A telephone connected to the phone port has its receiver off of the hook or there is an incoming call.
	Orange	On	A SIP account is registered for the phone port and there is a voice message in the corresponding SIP account.
		Blinking	A telephone connected to the phone port has its receiver off of the hook and there is a voice message in the corresponding SIP account.
		Off	The phone port does not have a SIP account registered.

Table 1 LED Descriptions (continued)

LED	COLOR	STATUS	DESCRIPTION
 USB	Green	On	The VMG recognizes a USB connection through the USB slot.
		Blinking	The VMG is sending/receiving data to /from the USB device connected to it.
		Off	The VMG does not detect a USB connection through the USB slot.

1.6 The RESET Button

If you forget your password or cannot access the Web Configurator, you will need to use the RESET button at the back of the device to reload the factory-default configuration file. This means that you will lose all configurations that you had previously and the password will be reset to "1234".

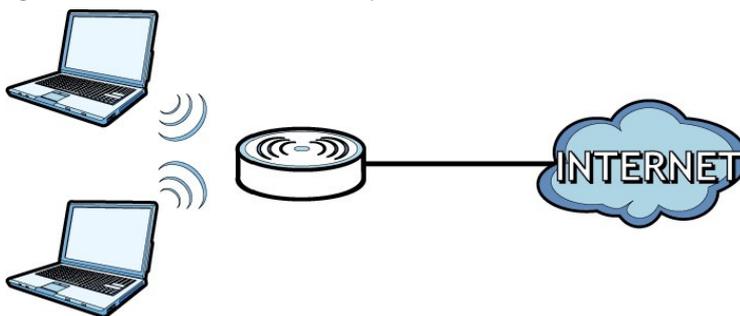
- 1 Make sure the PWR/SYS LED is on (not blinking).
- 2 To set the device back to the factory default settings, press the RESET button for ten seconds or until the PWR/SYS LED begins to blink and then release it. When the PWR/SYS LED begins to blink, the defaults have been restored and the device restarts.

1.7 Wireless Access

The VMG is a wireless Access Point (AP) for wireless clients, such as notebook computers or PDAs and iPads. It allows them to connect to the Internet without having to rely on inconvenient Ethernet cables.

You can configure your wireless network in either the built-in Web Configurator, or using the WPS button.

Figure 5 Wireless Access Example



1.7.1 Using the Wi-Fi and WPS Buttons

If the wireless network is turned off, press the Wi-Fi On/Off button for one second. Once the WLAN/WPS LED turns green, the wireless network is active.

You can also use the WPS On/Off button to quickly set up a secure wireless connection between the VMG and a WPS-compatible client by adding one device at a time.

To activate WPS:

- 1 Make sure the PWR/SYS LED is on and not blinking.
- 2 Press the WPS On/Off button for two seconds and release it.
- 3 Press the WPS button on another WPS-enabled device within range of the VMG. The WLAN/WPS LED flashes orange while the VMG sets up a WPS connection with the other wireless device.
- 4 Once the connection is successfully made, the WLAN/WPS LED shines green.

To turn off the wireless network, press the Wi-Fi On/Off button for one to five seconds. The WLAN/WPS LED turns off when the wireless network is off.

The Web Configurator

2.1 Overview

The web configurator is an HTML-based management interface that allows easy VMG setup and management via Internet browser. Use Internet Explorer 8.0 and later versions or Mozilla Firefox 3 and later versions or Safari 2.0 and later versions. The recommended screen resolution is 1024 by 768 pixels.

In order to use the web configurator you need to allow:

- Web browser pop-up windows from your VMG. Web pop-up blocking is enabled by default in Windows XP SP (Service Pack) 2.
- JavaScript (enabled by default).
- Java permissions (enabled by default).

2.1.1 Accessing the Web Configurator

- 1 Make sure your VMG hardware is properly connected (refer to the Quick Start Guide).
- 2 Launch your web browser. If the VMG does not automatically re-direct you to the login screen, go to <http://192.168.1.1>.
- 3 A password screen displays. To access the administrative web configurator and manage the VMG, type the default username `admin` and password `1234` in the password screen and click Login. If advanced account security is enabled (see [Section 32.2 on page 268](#)) the number of dots that appears when you type the password changes randomly to prevent anyone watching the password field from knowing the length of your password. If you have changed the password, enter your password and click Login.

Figure 6 Password Screen



The screenshot shows a dark blue login interface. At the top left is the ZyXEL logo. Below it, the text reads "Welcome" followed by "Welcome to VMG5313-B10B configuration interface." There are two input fields: "Username:" and "Password:". A "Login" button is located in the bottom right corner of the form area.

- 4 The following screen displays if you have not yet changed your password. Enter a new password, retype it to confirm and click Apply.

Figure 7 Change Password Screen



- 5 Configure basic Internet access, and wireless settings. The Network Map page appears.

Figure 8 Network Map



- 6 Click Status to display the Status screen, where you can view the VMG's interface and system information.

2.2 Web Configurator Layout

Figure 9 Screen Layout

ZyXEL VMG5313-B10B English Quick Start Logout

Status Refresh interval: None

Device Information

Host Name:	VMG5313-B10B
Model Number:	VMG5313-B10B
Serial Number:	S154146010218
Firmware Version:	V5.11(AAYY.0)b5

System Status

System Up Time:	0days: 0hours: 6minutes
Current Date/Time:	1970-01-01/01:07:21
System Resource:	
- CPU Usage:	2%
- Memory Usage:	48%
- NAT Session Usage:	0.073% 15/20480

Interface Status

Interface	Status	Rate
LAN 1	No Link	N/A
LAN 2	Up	100M / Full
LAN 3	No Link	N/A
LAN 4	No Link	N/A
WLAN 2.4GHz	Up	144 Mbps
DSL	No Link	N/A
3G	No Device	N/A

Registration Status

Account	Action	Account Status	Service Provider	URI
SIP1	Register	In-Active	ChangeMe/ChangeMe	ChangeMe@ChangeMe

Navigation Panel: Connection Status, Network Setting, Security, VoIP, System Monitor, Maintenance

As illustrated above, the main screen is divided into these parts:

- A - title bar
- B - main window
- C - navigation panel

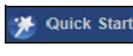
2.2.1 Title Bar

The title bar provides some icons in the upper right corner.



The icons provide the following functions.

Table 2 Web Configurator Icons in the Title Bar

ICON	DESCRIPTION
	Language: Select the language you prefer.
	Quick Start: Click this icon to open screens where you can configure the VMG's time zone Internet access, and wireless settings.
	Logout: Click this icon to log out of the web configurator.

2.2.2 Navigation Panel

Use the menu items on the navigation panel to open screens to configure VMG features. The following tables describe each menu item.

Table 3 Navigation Panel Summary

LINK	TAB	FUNCTION
Connection Status		This screen shows the network status of the VMG and computers/ devices connected to it.
Network Setting		
Broadband	Broadband	Use this screen to view and configure ISP parameters, WAN IP address assignment, and other advanced properties. You can also add new WAN connections.
	3G Backup	Use this screen to configure 3G WAN connection.
	Advanced	Use this screen to enable or disable PTM over ADSL, Annex M/Annex J, and DSL PhyR functions.
	Ethernet WAN	Use this screen to enable the fourth Ethernet LAN port to be an Ethernet WAN port.
	802.1x	Use this screen to view and configure the IEEE 802.1x settings on the VMG.
Wireless	General	Use this screen to configure the wireless LAN settings and WLAN authentication/security settings.
	Guest/More AP	Use this screen to configure multiple BSSs on the VMG.
	MAC Authentication	Use this screen to block or allow wireless traffic from wireless devices of certain SSIDs and MAC addresses to the VMG.
	WPS	Use this screen to configure and view your WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup) settings.
	WMM	Use this screen to enable or disable Wi-Fi MultiMedia (WMM).
	WDS	Use this screen to set up Wireless Distribution System (WDS) links to other access points.
	Others	Use this screen to configure advanced wireless settings.
	Channel Status	Use this screen to scan wireless LAN channel noises and view the results.

Table 3 Navigation Panel Summary (continued)

LINK	TAB	FUNCTION
Home Networking	LAN Setup	Use this screen to configure LAN TCP/IP settings, and other advanced properties.
	Static DHCP	Use this screen to assign specific IP addresses to individual MAC addresses.
	UPnP	Use this screen to turn UPnP and UPnP NAT-T on or off.
	Additional Subnet	Use this screen to configure IP alias and public static IP.
	STB Vendor ID	Use this screen to configure the Vendor IDs of the connected Set Top Box (STB) devices, which have the VMG automatically create static DHCP entries for the STB devices when they request IP addresses.
	Wake on Lan	Use this screen to remotely turn on a device on the local network.
	TFTP Server Name	Use DHCP option 66 to identify a TFTP server name.
Routing	Static Route	Use this screen to view and set up static routes on the VMG.
	DNS Route	Use this screen to forward DNS queries for certain domain names through a specific WAN interface to its DNS server(s).
	Policy Route	Use this screen to configure policy routing on the VMG.
	RIP	Use this screen to configure Routing Information Protocol to exchange routing information with other routers.
QoS	General	Use this screen to enable QoS and traffic prioritizing. You can also configure the QoS rules and actions.
	Queue Setup	Use this screen to configure QoS queues.
	Classification Setup	Use this screen to define a classifier.
	Shaper Setup	Use this screen to limit outgoing traffic rate on the selected interface.
	Policer Setup	Use this screen to configure QoS policers.
NAT	Port Forwarding	Use this screen to make your local servers visible to the outside world.
	Applications	Use this screen to configure servers behind the VMG.
	Port Triggering	Use this screen to change your VMG's port triggering settings.
	DMZ	Use this screen to configure a default server which receives packets from ports that are not specified in the Port Forwarding screen.
	ALG	Use this screen to enable or disable SIP ALG.
	Address Mapping	Use this screen to change your VMG's address mapping settings.
	Sessions	Use this screen to configure the maximum number of NAT sessions each client host is allowed to have through the VMG.
DNS	DNS Entry	Use this screen to view and configure DNS routes.
	Dynamic DNS	Use this screen to allow a static hostname alias for a dynamic IP address.
IGMP/MLD		Use this screen to configure multicast settings (IGMP for IPv4 and MLD for IPv6 multicast groups) on the WAN.
Vlan Group	Vlan Group	Use this screen to group and tag VLAN IDs to outgoing traffic from the specified interface.
Interface Grouping		Use this screen to map a port to a PVC or bridge group.
USB Service	File Sharing	Use this screen to enable file sharing via the VMG.
	Media Server	Use this screen to use the VMG as a media server.

Table 3 Navigation Panel Summary (continued)

LINK	TAB	FUNCTION
Security		
Firewall	General	Use this screen to configure the security level of your firewall.
	Protocol	Use this screen to add Internet services and configure firewall rules.
	Access Control	Use this screen to enable specific traffic directions for network services.
	DoS	Use this screen to activate protection against Denial of Service (DoS) attacks.
MAC Filter		Use this screen to block or allow traffic from devices of certain MAC addresses to the VMG.
Parental Control		Use this screen to block web sites with the specific URL.
Scheduler Rules		Use this screen to configure the days and times when a configured restriction (such as parental control) is enforced.
Certificates	Local Certificates	Use this screen to view a summary list of certificates and manage certificates and certification requests.
	Trusted CA	Use this screen to view and manage the list of the trusted CAs.
VoIP		
SIP	SIP Account	Use this screen to set up information about your SIP account and configure audio settings such as volume levels for the phones connected to the VMG.
	SIP Service Provider	Use this screen to configure the SIP server information, QoS for VoIP calls, the numbers for certain phone functions, and dialing plan.
Phone	Phone Device	Use this screen to view detailed information of the phone devices.
	Region	Use this screen to select your location and a call service mode.
Call Rule	Speed Dial	Use this screen to configure speed dial for SIP phone numbers that you call often.
Call History	Call History	Use this screen to view a call history list.
	Call Summary	Use this screen to view the summary of received, dialed and missed calls.
System Monitor		

Table 3 Navigation Panel Summary (continued)

LINK	TAB	FUNCTION
Log	System Log	Use this screen to view the status of events that occurred to the VMG. You can export or e-mail the logs.
	Security Log	Use this screen to view all security related events. You can select level and category of the security events in their proper drop-down list window. Levels include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Emergency • Alert • Critical • Error • Warning • Notice • Informational • Debugging Categories include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Account • Attack • Firewall • MAC Filter
Traffic Status	WAN	Use this screen to view the status of all network traffic going through the WAN port of the VMG.
	LAN	Use this screen to view the status of all network traffic going through the LAN ports of the VMG.
	NAT	Use this screen to view NAT statistics for connected hosts.
VoIP Status		Use this screen to view VoIP registration, current call status and phone numbers for the phone ports.
ARP table		Use this screen to view the ARP table. It displays the IP and MAC address of each DHCP connection.
Routing Table		Use this screen to view the routing table on the VMG.
Multicast Status	IGMP Status	Use this screen to view the status of all IGMP settings on the VMG.
	MLD Status	Use this screen to view the status of all MLD settings on the VMG.
xDSL Statistics		Use this screen to view the VMG's xDSL traffic statistics.
3G Statistics		Use this screen to look at 3G Internet connection status.
Maintenance		
System		Use this screen to set Device name and Domain name.
User Account	User Account	Use this screen to change user password on the VMG.
Remote Management	MGMT Services	Use this screen to enable specific traffic directions for network services.
	Trust Domain	Use this screen to view a list of public IP addresses which are allowed to access the VMG through the services configured in the Maintenance > Remote Management screen.
SNMP		Use this screen to configure SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) settings.
Time		Use this screen to change your VMG's time and date.
Email Notification		Use this screen to configure up to two mail servers and sender addresses on the VMG.
Log Setting		Use this screen to change your VMG's log settings.

Table 3 Navigation Panel Summary (continued)

LINK	TAB	FUNCTION
Firmware Upgrade		Use this screen to upload firmware to your VMG.
Backup/Restore	Backup/Restore	Use this screen to backup and restore your VMG's configuration (settings) or reset the factory default settings.
Reboot		Use this screen to reboot the VMG without turning the power off.
Diagnostic	Ping&Traceroute &Nslookup	Use this screen to identify problems with the DSL connection. You can use Ping, TraceRoute, or Nslookup to help you identify problems.
	802.1ag	Use this screen to configure CFM (Connectivity Fault Management) MD (maintenance domain) and MA (maintenance association), perform connectivity tests and view test reports.
	OAM Ping	Use this screen to view information to help you identify problems with the DSL connection.

Quick Start

3.1 Overview

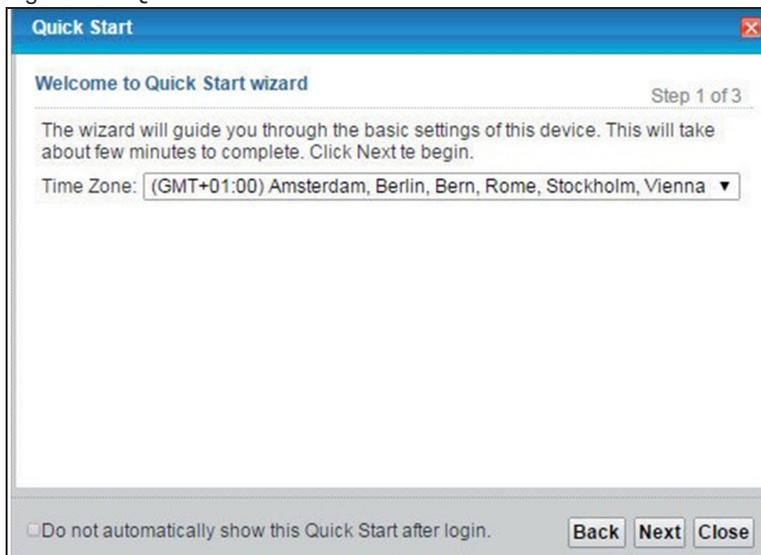
Use the Quick Start screens to configure the VMG's time zone, basic Internet access, and wireless settings.

Note: See the technical reference chapters (starting on [Chapter 4 on page 33](#)) for background information on the features in this chapter.

3.2 Quick Start Setup

- 1 The Quick Start Wizard appears automatically after login. Or you can click the QuickClick Start icon in the top right corner of the web configurator to open the quick start screens. Select the time zone of your location. Click Next.

Figure 10 Quick Start - Welcome



- 2 Enter your Internet connection information in this screen. The screen and fields to enter may vary depending on your current connection type. Click Next.

Figure 11 Quick Start - Internet Connection

Quick Start Step 2 of 3

The current connection type is set to **PPPoE** and needs a user name and password to get online.

User Name:

Password: password unmask

Is there specific IP address information from your Internet Service Provider (ISP)?

Yes No

Then the IP Address information will be dynamically assigned to you from your ISP.

Do not automatically show this Quick Start after login. Back Next Close

- 3 Turn the wireless LAN on or off. If you keep it on, record the security settings so you can configure your wireless clients to connect to the VMG. Click Save.

Figure 12 Quick Start - Wireless

Quick Start Step 3 of 3

The following settings are the current wireless settings which your wireless client devices need in order to get connected to this device.

Wireless Service: Enable Disable

Wireless Network Name (SSID): ZyXEL_94E1

Security: WPA2-PSK

Password: *****

Do not automatically show this Quick Start after login. Back Save Close

- 4 Your VMG saves your settings and attempts to connect to the Internet.

4.1 Overview

This chapter shows you how to use the VMG's various features.

- [Setting Up an ADSL PPPoE Connection](#), see page 33
- [Setting Up a Secure Wireless Network](#), see page 36
- [Setting Up Multiple Wireless Groups](#), see page 42
- [Configuring Static Route for Routing to Another Network](#), see page 45
- [Configuring QoS Queue and Class Setup](#), see page 47
- [Access the VMG Using DDNS](#), see page 51
- [Configuring the MAC Address Filter](#), see page 52
- [Access Your Shared Files From a Computer](#), see page 53

4.2 Setting Up an ADSL PPPoE Connection

This tutorial shows you how to set up an ADSL Internet connection using the Web Configurator.

If you connect to the Internet through an ADSL connection, use the information from your Internet Service Provider (ISP) to configure the VMG. Be sure to contact your service provider for any information you need to configure the Broadband screens.

- 1 Click Network Setting > Broadband to open the following screen. Click Add New WAN Interface.



- 2 In this example, the DSL connection has the following information.

General	
Name	MyDSLConnection
Type	ADSL

Connection Mode	Routing
Encapsulation	PPPoE
IPv6/IPv4 Mode	IPv4
ATM PVC Configuration	
VPI/VCI	36/48
Encapsulation Mode	LLC/SNAP-Bridging
Service Category	UBR without PCR
Account Information	
PPP User Name	1234@DSL-Ex.com
PPP Password	ABCDEF!
PPPoE Service Name	MyDSL
Static IP Address	192.168.1.32
Others	Authentication Method: AUTO PPPoE Passthrough: Disabled NAT: Enabled IGMP Multicast Proxy: Enabled Apply as Default Gateway: Enabled VLAN: Disabled

- 3 Select the **Active** check box. Enter the **General** and **ATM PVC Configuration** settings as provided above.

Set the **Type** to **ADSL over ATM**.

Choose the **Encapsulation** specified by your DSL service provider. For this example, the service provider requires a username and password to establish Internet connection. Therefore, select **PPPoE** as the WAN encapsulation type.

Set the **IPv6/IPv4 Mode** to **IPv4 Only**.

- 4 Enter the account information provided to you by your DSL service provider.
- 5 Configure this rule as your default Internet connection by selecting the **Apply as Default Gateway** check box. Then select **DNS as Static** and enter the DNS server addresses provided to you, such as 192.168.5.2 (DNS server1)/192.168.5.1 (DNS server2).
- 6 Leave the rest of the fields to the default settings.
- 7 Click **Apply** to save your settings.

WAN Configuration
X

General

Active

Name

Type

Mode

Encapsulation

IPv6/IPv4 Mode

ATM PVC Configuration

VPI

VCI

DSL Link Type:

Encapsulation Mode:

Service Category:

PPP Information

PPP User Name

PPP Password password unmask

PPP Trigger Type connect on Demand Manual

Authentication Method:

Idle Timeout [minutes]:

PPPoE Service Name

PPPoE Passthrough

IP Address

Obtain an IP Address Automatically

Static IP Address

IP Address : Subnet

Mask : Gateway IP

Address

Routing Feature

NAT Enable

Fullbone NAT Enable

IGMP Proxy Enable

Apply as Default Gateway :

DNS server

DNS

DNS Server 1

DNS Server 2

Tunnel

Enable 6RD

6RD Type

IPv4 Mask Length

6RD Border Relay Server IP :

6RD IPv6 Prefix

VLAN

Active

802.1p

802.1q (0-4094)

QoS

Rate Limit (kbps)

WAN Outgoing Default Tag Enable Disable

DSCP

MTU

MTU Size MTU [68-1492]

- 8 You should see a summary of your new DSL connection setup in the Broadband screen as follows.

Broadband												
3G Backup Advanced 802.1x												
You can configure the Internet settings of this device. Correct configurations build successful Internet connection.												
Add New WAN Interface												
#	Name	Type	Mode	Encap...	802.1p	802.1q	IGMP Proxy	NAT	Default Gateway	IPv6	MLD Proxy	Modify
1	ADSL	ATM	Routing	IPoE	N/A	N/A	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	 
2	MyDS...	ATM	Routing	PPPoE	N/A	N/A	Y	Y	Y	N	N	 
3	VDSL	PTM	Routing	IPoE	N/A	N/A	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	 

Try to connect to a website to see if you have correctly set up your Internet connection. Be sure to contact your service provider for any information you need to configure the WAN screens.

4.3 Setting Up a Secure Wireless Network

Thomas wants to set up a wireless network so that he can use his notebook to access the Internet. In this wireless network, the VMG serves as an access point (AP), and the notebook is the wireless client. The wireless client can access the Internet through the AP.



Thomas has to configure the wireless network settings on the VMG. Then he can set up a wireless network using WPS ([Section 4.3.2 on page 37](#)) or manual configuration ([Section 4.3.3 on page 41](#)).

4.3.1 Configuring the Wireless Network Settings

This example uses the following parameters to set up a wireless network.

SSID	Example
Security Mode	WPA2-PSK
Pre-Shared Key	DoNotStealMyWirelessNetwork
802.11 Mode	802.11b/g/n Mixed

- 1 Click Network Setting > Wireless to open the General screen. Select More Secure as the security level and WPA2-PSK as the security mode. Configure the screen using the provided parameters (see [page 36](#)). Click Apply.

Wireless Network Setup	
Band:	2.4GHz ▾
Wireless	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable (settings are invalid when disabled)
Channel:	Auto ▾ Current: 2
Bandwidth:	20MHz ▾
Wireless Network Settings	
Wireless Network Name(SSID):	ZyXEL_DD34
Max clients:	16
	<input type="checkbox"/> Hide SSID
	<input type="checkbox"/> Multicast Forwarding
Max. Upstream Bandwidth	Kbps
Max. Downstream Bandwidth	Kbps
BSSID:	10:20:30:11:22:34
Security Level	
<p>The slider is positioned at the 'More Secure (Recommended)' level. The levels are represented by colored segments: red for 'No Security', yellow for 'Basic', and green for 'More Secure (Recommended)'.</p>	
<input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	

- Go to the Wireless > Others screen and select 802.11b/g/n Mixed in the 802.11 Mode field. Click Apply.

Wireless Advanced Setup	
RTS/CTS Threshold :	2347
Fragmentation Threshold :	2346
Auto Channel Timer :	0 min
Output Power :	100% ▾
Beacon Interval :	100 ms
DTIM Interval :	1 ms
802.11 Mode :	802.11b/g/n Mixed ▾
802.11 Protection :	Auto ▾
Preamble :	Long ▾

Thomas can now use the WPS feature to establish a wireless connection between his notebook and the VMG (see [Section 4.3.2 on page 37](#)). He can also use the notebook's wireless client to search for the VMG (see [Section 4.3.3 on page 41](#)).

4.3.2 Using WPS

This section shows you how to set up a wireless network using WPS. It uses the VMG as the AP and ZyXEL NWD210N as the wireless client which connects to the notebook.

Note: The wireless client must be a WPS-aware device (for example, a WPS USB adapter or PCMCIA card).

There are two WPS methods to set up the wireless client settings:

- Push Button Configuration (PBC) - simply press a button. This is the easier of the two methods.
- PIN Configuration - configure a Personal Identification Number (PIN) on the VMG. A wireless client must also use the same PIN in order to download the wireless network settings from the VMG.

Push Button Configuration (PBC)

- 1 Make sure that your VMG is turned on and your notebook is within the cover range of the wireless signal.
- 2 Make sure that you have installed the wireless client driver and utility in your notebook.
- 3 In the wireless client utility, go to the WPS setting page. Enable WPS and press the WPS button (Start or WPS button).
- 4 Push and hold the WPS button located on the VMG's front panel for more than 5 seconds. Alternatively, you may log into VMG's web configurator and go to the Network Setting > Wireless > WPS screen. Enable the WPS function for method 1 and click Apply. Then click the Connect button.

General Guest/More AP MAC Authentication **WPS** WMM WDS Others Channel Status

Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS) lets you set up wireless security easily. Select a method for establishing a WPS connection between the router and another WPS-compatible device.

2.4GHz WPS Setup

WPS :

Method 1	Method 2	Method 3
<p>Method 1 <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disabled</p> <p>Push Button Configuration 1. Click 'Connect'. Connect 2. Activate WPS on the wireless client within 2 minutes after clicking "Connect".</p>	<p>Method 2 <input type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disabled</p> <p>Register Wireless Client PIN Number 1. Enter the PIN of your wireless client and click 'Register' <input type="text"/> Register 2. Activate WPS on the wireless client within 2 minutes after clicking "Connect".</p>	<p>Method 3 <input type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disabled</p> <p>Enter AP's PIN Number in Wireless Client Current state: Configured 1. Please release configuration if you want to configure the wireless settings Release Configuration 2. Enter current PIN 19457970 on your wireless client Generate New PIN Number</p>

Notes:

1. The WPS function only works on the first SSID for 2.4 and 5GHz respectively. Guest WLAN's cannot be used with WPS.
2. Click the 'Release Configuration' button to have the WPS status changed to 'Unconfigured'. Otherwise, WPS status is in 'Configured' mode.

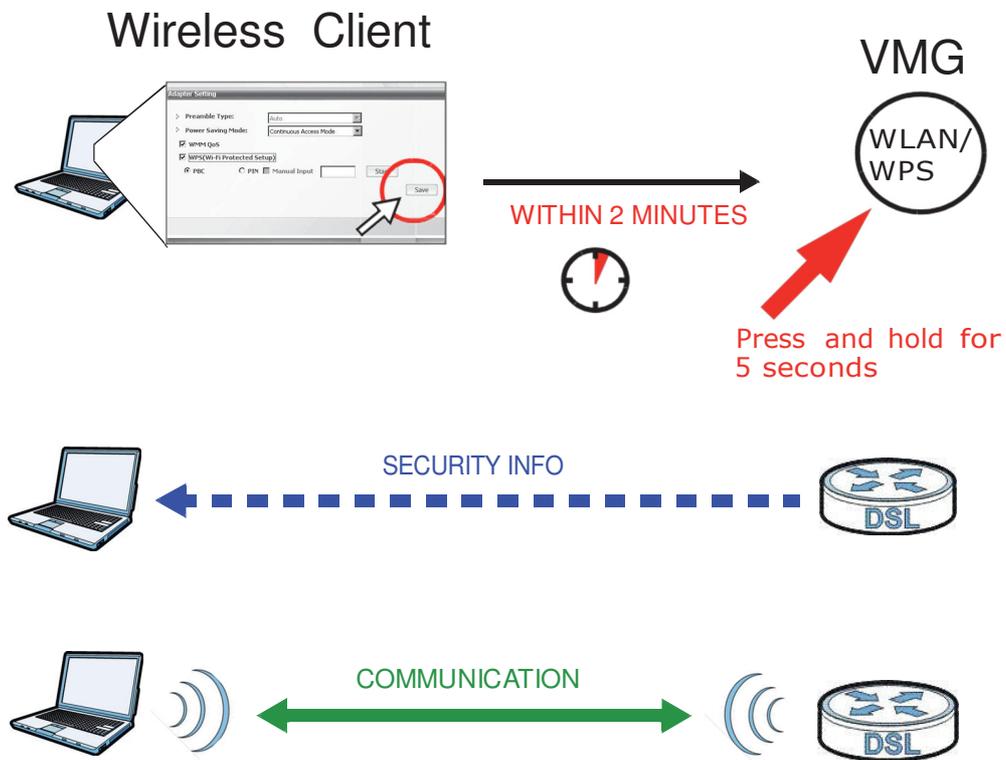
Apply **Cancel**

Note: Your VMG has a WPS button located on its front panel as well as a WPS button in its configuration utility. Both buttons have exactly the same function: you can use one or the other.

Note: It doesn't matter which button is pressed first. You must press the second button within two minutes of pressing the first one.

The VMG sends the proper configuration settings to the wireless client. This may take up to two minutes. The wireless client is then able to communicate with the VMG securely.

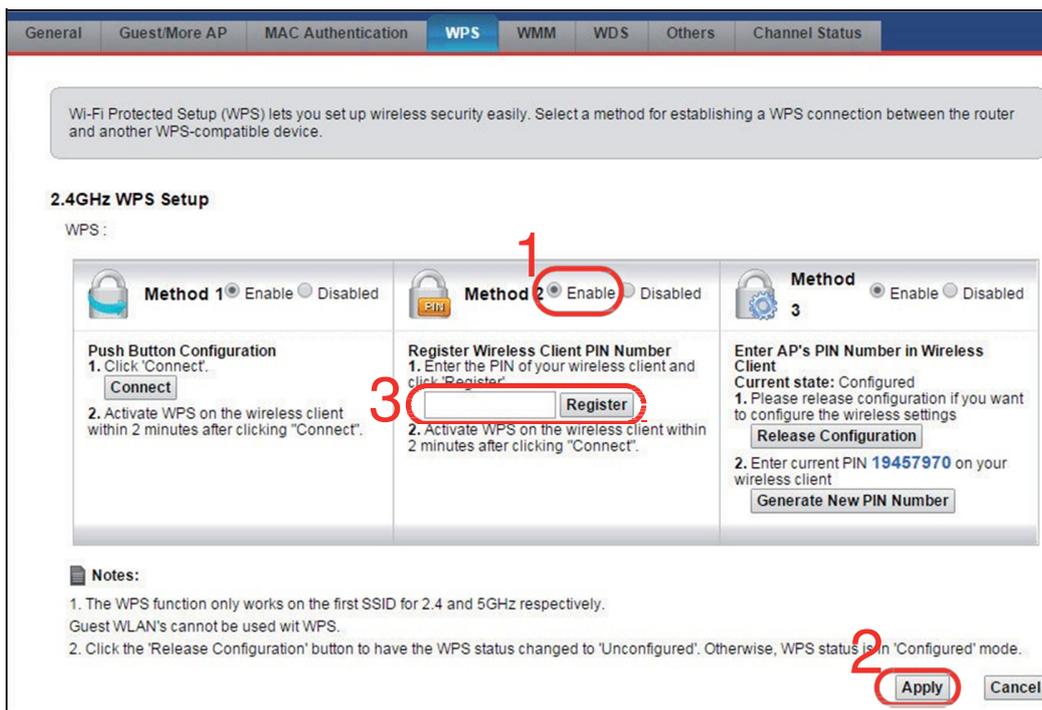
The following figure shows you an example of how to set up a wireless network and its security by pressing a button on both VMG and wireless client.



PIN Configuration

When you use the PIN configuration method, you need to use both the VMG's web configurator and the wireless client's utility.

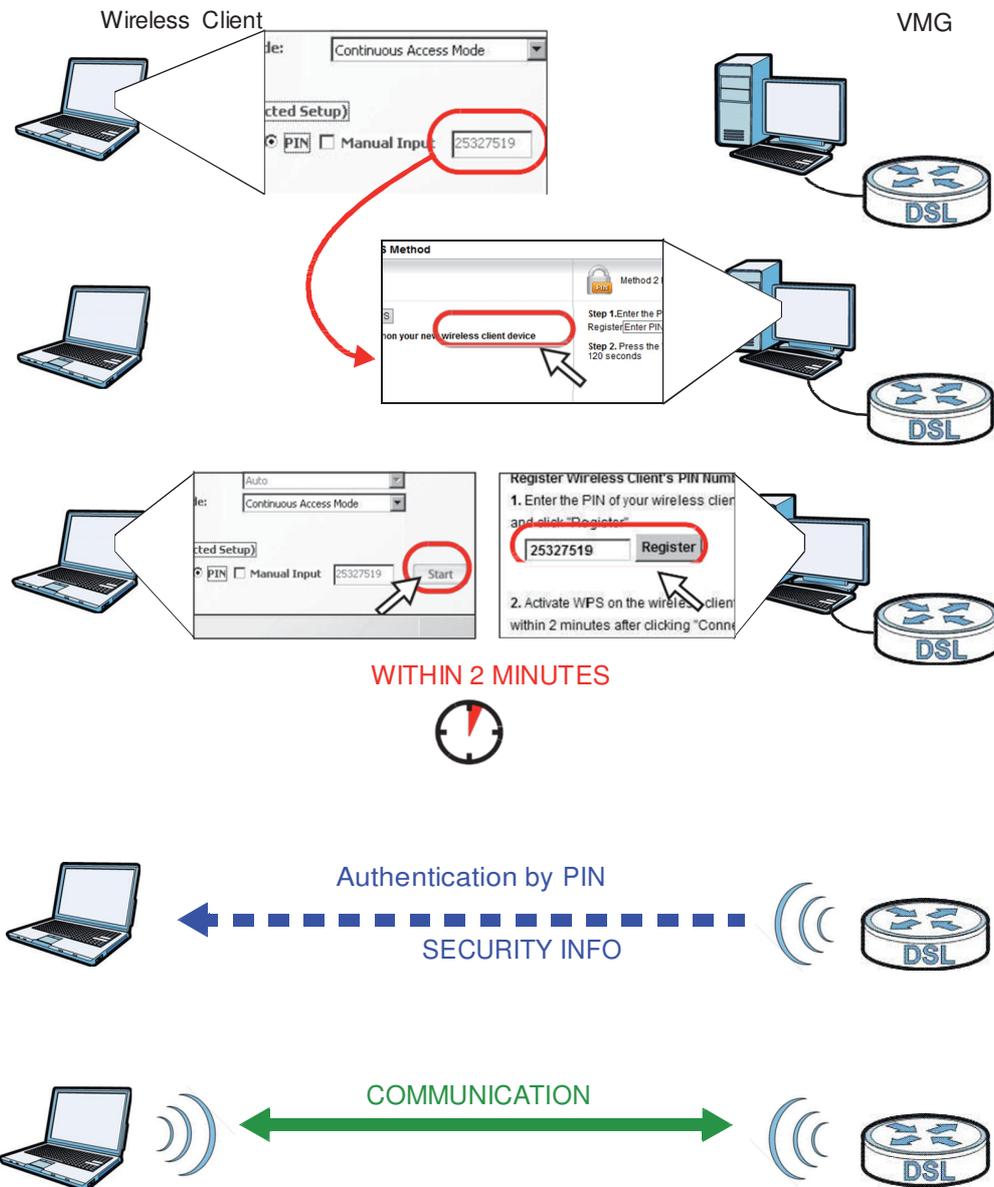
- 1 Launch your wireless client's configuration utility. Go to the WPS settings and select the PIN method to get a PIN number.
- 2 Log into VMG's web configurator and go to the Network Setting > Wireless > WPS screen. Enable the WPS function and click Apply.



- 3 Enter the PIN number of the wireless client and click the Register button. Activate WPS function on the wireless client utility screen within two minutes.

The VMG authenticates the wireless client and sends the proper configuration settings to the wireless client. This may take up to two minutes. The wireless client is then able to communicate with the VMG securely.

The following figure shows you how to set up a wireless network and its security on a VMG and a wireless client by using PIN method.



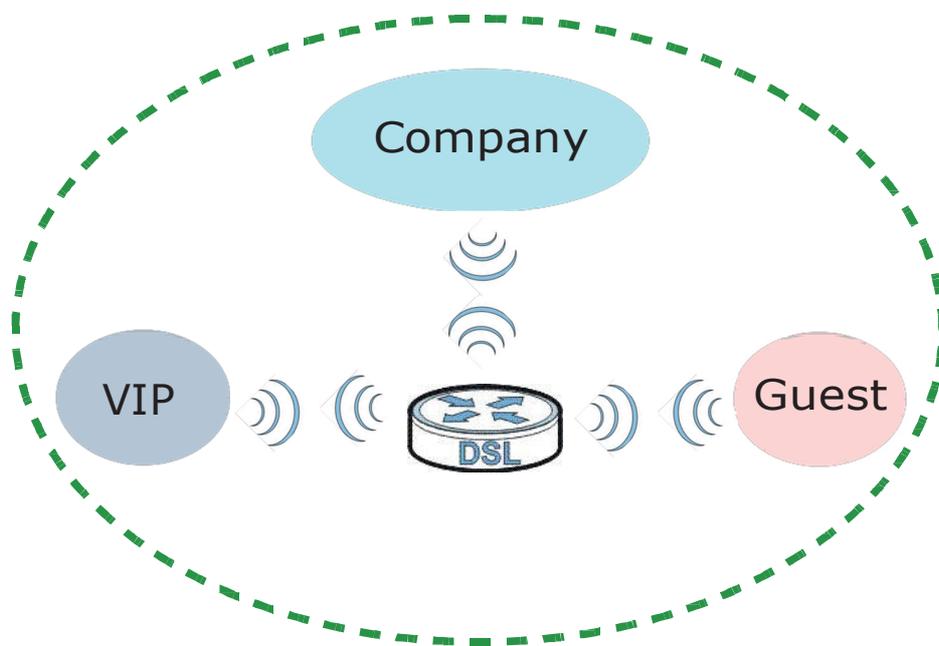
4.3.3 Without WPS

Use the wireless adapter's utility installed on the notebook to search for the "Example" SSID. Then enter the "DoNotStealMyWirelessNetwork" pre-shared key to establish an wireless Internet connection.

Note: The VMG supports IEEE 802.11b and IEEE 802.11g wireless clients. Make sure that your notebook or computer's wireless adapter supports one of these standards.

4.4 Setting Up Multiple Wireless Groups

Company A wants to create different wireless network groups for different types of users as shown in the following figure. Each group has its own SSID and security mode.



- Employees in Company A will use a general Company wireless network group.
- Higher management level and important visitors will use the VIP group.
- Visiting guests will use the Guest group, which has a different SSID and password.

Company A will use the following parameters to set up the wireless network groups.

	COMPANY	VIP	GUEST
SSID	Company	VIP	Guest
Security Level	More Secure	More Secure	More Secure
Security Mode	WPA2-PSK	WPA2-PSK	WPA2-PSK
Pre-Shared Key	ForCompanyOnly	123456789	guest123

- 1 Click Network Setting > Wireless to open the General screen. Use this screen to set up the company's general wireless network group. Configure the screen using the provided parameters and click Apply.

Wireless Network Setup

Band : 2.4GHz

Wireless: Enable Disabled (settings are invalid when disabled)

Channel : Auto Current: 13 [more...](#)

Wireless Network Settings

Wireless Network Name (SSID) : Company

Max clients: 16

Hide SSID

Enhanced Multicast Forwarding

Max. Upstream Bandwidth: Kbps

Max. Downstream Bandwidth: Kbps

Notes:

1.Max. Upstream Bandwidth:This field allow user configure the maximum bandwidth of this SSID to WAN.
 2.Max. Downstream Bandwidth:This field allow user configure the maximum bandwidth of WAN to this SSID.
 3.If Max. Upstream/Downstream Bandwidth is empty, the CPE sets the value automatically.

BSSID: CC:5D:4E:00:00:02

E-mail notification when the wireless guest visit

Enable Email Notification

Security Level

No Security Basic **More Secure (Recommended)**

Security Mode: WPA2-PSK

Generate password automatically

Enter 8-63 characters (a-z, A-Z, 0-9, '-', '_', and '.'). other characters are not allowed.

Password: ForCompanyOnly [more...](#)

password unmask

Apply **Cancel**

- 2 Click Network Setting > Wireless > Guest/More AP to open the following screen. Click the Edit icon to configure the second wireless network group.

General **Guest/More AP** MAC Authentication WPS WMM WDS Others Channel Status

This device can enable up to 4 wireless networks to work at the same time. Assign a name and a security level (if needed) to start the 2nd, 3rd, and 4th wireless network services.

#	Status	SSID	Security	Guest WLAN	Modify
1		ZyXEL000001_Guest1	Mixed WPA2-PSK/WPA-PSK	External Guest	
2		ZyXEL000001_Guest2	Mixed WPA2-PSK/WPA-PSK	N/A	
3		ZyXEL000001_Guest3	Mixed WPA2-PSK/WPA-PSK	N/A	

- 3 Configure the screen using the provided parameters and click Apply.

Wireless Network Setup

Wireless : Enable Disabled (The settings in this screen are invalid if you select this.)

Passphrase Type :

Wireless Network Settings

Wireless Network Name(SSID):

Max clients:

Hide SSID

Enhanced Multicast Forwarding

Guest WLAN

Access Scenario:

Max. Upstream Bandwidth: Kbps

Max. Downstream Bandwidth: Kbps

Notes:

- 1.Max. Upstream Bandwidth:This field allow user configure the maximum bandwidth of this SSID to WAN.
- 2.Max. Downstream Bandwidth:This field allow user configure the maximum bandwidth of WAN to this SSID.
- 3.If Max. Upstream/Downstream Bandwidth is empty, the CPE sets the value automatically.

E-mail notification when the wireless guest visit

Enable Email Notification

SSID Subnet: Enable Disabled

Security Level

 No Security Basic More Secure (Recommended)

Generate password automatically
Enter 8-63 characters (a-z, A-Z, 0-9, '-', '_' and '!'), other characters are not allowed.

Password: [more...](#)

password unmask

- 4 In the Guest/More AP screen, click the Edit icon to configure the third wireless network group.Configure the screen using the provided parameters and click Apply.

Wireless Network Setup

Wireless : Enable Disabled (The settings in this screen are invalid if you select this.)

Passphrase Type : None

Wireless Network Settings

Wireless Network Name(SSID): Guest

Max clients: 32

Hide SSID

Enhanced Multicast Forwarding

Guest WLAN

Access Scenario: External Guest

Max. Upstream Bandwidth: Kbps

Max. Downstream Bandwidth: Kbps

Notes:

- 1.Max. Upstream Bandwidth:This field allow user configure the maximum bandwidth of this SSID to WAN.
- 2.Max. Downstream Bandwidth:This field allow user configure the maximum bandwidth of WAN to this SSID.
- 3.If Max. Upstream/Downstream Bandwidth is empty, the CPE sets the value automatically.

E-mail notification when the wireless guest visit

Enable Email Notification

SSID Subnet: Enable Disabled

Security Level

No Security Basic **More Secure (Recommended)**

Security Mode: WPA2-PSK

Generate password automatically
Enter 8-63 characters (a-z, A-Z, 0-9, '-', '_' and '!'), other characters are not allowed.

Password: guest123 [more...](#)

password unmask

OK Cancel

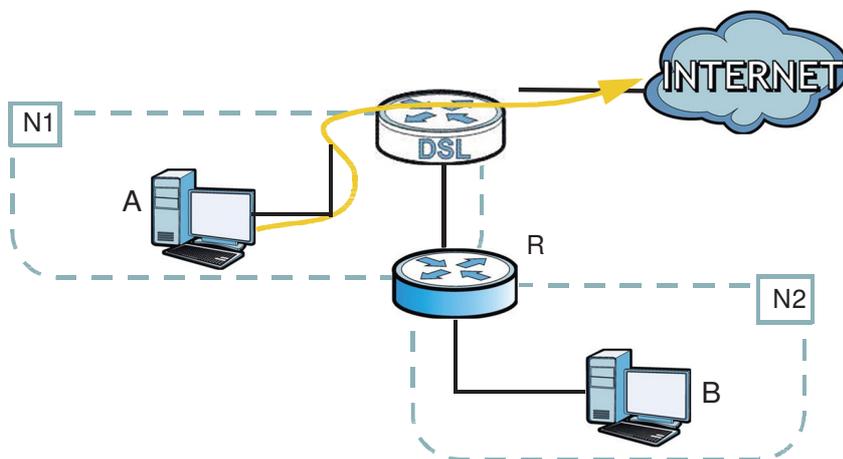
- 5 Check the status of VIP and Guest in the Guest/More AP screen. The yellow bulbs signify that the SSIDs are active and ready for wireless access.

#	Status	SSID	Security	Guest WLAN	Modify
1		ZyXEL000001_Guest1	Mixed WPA2-PSK/WPA-PSK	N/A	
2		VIP	Mixed WPA2-PSK/WPA-PSK	External Guest	
3		Guest	Mixed WPA2-PSK/WPA-PSK	External Guest	

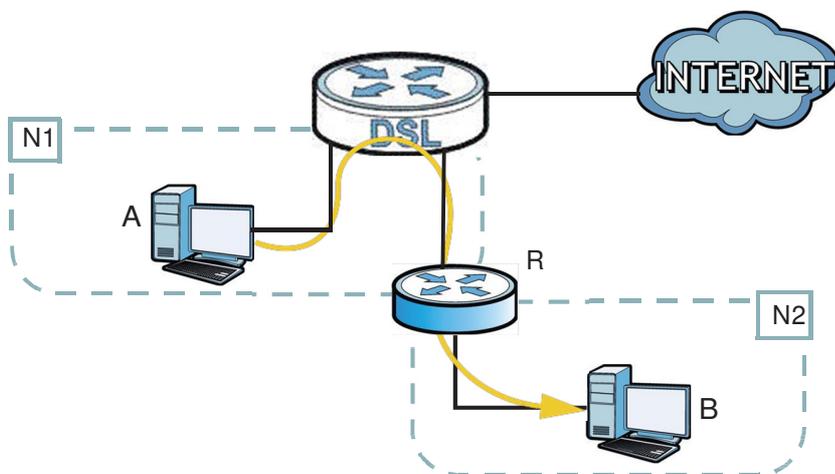
4.5 Configuring Static Route for Routing to Another Network

In order to extend your Intranet and control traffic flowing directions, you may connect a router to the VMG's LAN. The router may be used to separate two department networks. This tutorial shows how to configure a static routing rule for two network routings.

In the following figure, router R is connected to the VMG's LAN. R connects to two networks, N1 (192.168.1.x/24) and N2 (192.168.10.x/24). If you want to send traffic from computer A (in N1 network) to computer B (in N2 network), the traffic is sent to the VMG's WAN default gateway by default. In this case, B will never receive the traffic.



You need to specify a static routing rule on the VMG to specify R as the router in charge of forwarding traffic to N2. In this case, the VMG routes traffic from A to R and then R routes the traffic to B.



This tutorial uses the following example IP settings:

Table 4 IP Settings in this Tutorial

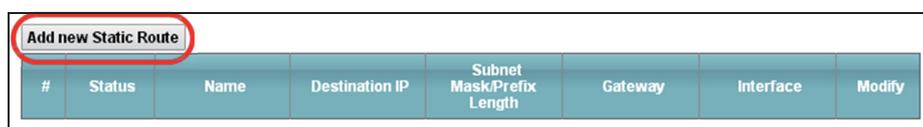
DEVICE / COMPUTER	IP ADDRESS
The VMG's WAN	172.16.1.1
The VMG's LAN	192.168.1.1
IP Type	IPv4
Use Interface	VDSL/ppp1.1
A	192.168.1.34

Table 4 IP Settings in this Tutorial

DEVICE / COMPUTER	IP ADDRESS
R's N1	192.168.1.253
R's N2	192.168.10.2
B	192.168.10.33

To configure a static route to route traffic from N1 to N2:

- 1 Log into the VMG's Web Configurator in advanced mode.
- 2 Click Network Setting > Routing.
- 3 Click Add new Static Route in the Static Route screen.



- 4 Configure the Static Route Setup screen using the following settings:
 - 4a Select the Active check box. Enter the Route Name as R.
 - 4b Set IP Type to IPv4.
 - 4c Type 192.168.10.0 and subnet mask 255.255.255.0 for the destination, N2.
 - 4d Select Enable in the Use Gateway IP Address field. Type 192.168.1.253 (R's N1 address) in the Gateway IP Address field.
 - 4e Select VDSL/ppp1.1 as the Use Interface.



- 4a Click OK.

Now B should be able to receive traffic from A. You may need to additionally configure B's firewall settings to allow specific traffic to pass through.

4.6 Configuring QoS Queue and Class Setup

This section contains tutorials on how you can configure the QoS screen.

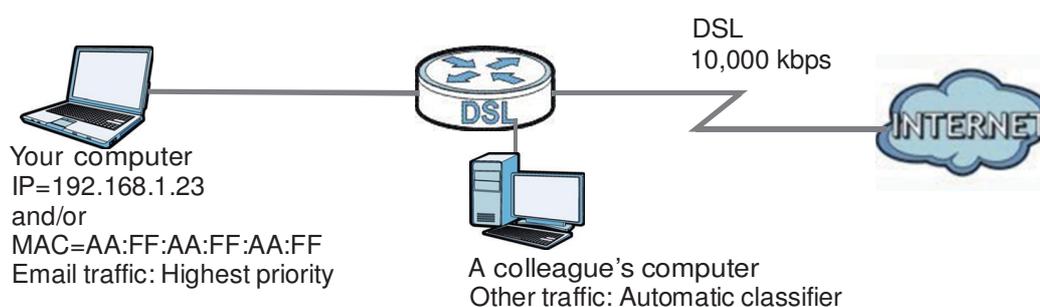
Let's say you are a team leader of a small sales branch office. You want to prioritize e-mail traffic because your task includes sending urgent updates to clients at least twice every hour. You also upload data files (such as logs and e-mail archives) to the FTP server throughout the day. Your colleagues use the Internet for research, as well as chat applications for communicating with other branch offices.

In the following figure, your Internet connection has an upstream transmission bandwidth of 10,000 kbps. For this example, you want to configure QoS so that e-mail traffic gets the highest priority with at least 5,000 kbps. You can do the following:

- Configure a queue to assign the highest priority queue (1) to e-mail traffic going to the WAN interface, so that e-mail traffic would not get delayed when there is network congestion.
- Note the IP address (192.168.1.23 for example) and/or MAC address (AA:FF:AA:FF:AA:FF for example) of your computer and map it to queue 7.

Note: QoS is applied to traffic flowing out of the VMG.

Traffic that does not match this class is assigned a priority queue based on the internal QoS mapping table on the VMG.



- 1 Click Network Setting > QoS > General and select Enable. Set your WAN Managed Upstream Bandwidth to 10,000 kbps (or leave this blank to have the VMG automatically determine this figure). Click Apply.

QoS Enable Disable (settings are invalid when disabled)

WAN Managed Upstream Bandwidth: (kbps)

LAN Managed Downstream Bandwidth: (kbps)

Upstream traffic priority Assigned by:

Note:
 You can assign the upstream bandwidth manually. If the field is empty, the CPE sets the value automatically.
 If Enable QoS checkbox is selected, choose a default DSCP mark to automatically mark incoming traffic without reference to a particular classifier.
 If the setting of WAN managed upstream bandwidth is greater than current WAN interface linkup rate, then the WAN managed upstream bandwidth will become current WAN interface linkup rate.

- 2 Click Queue Setup > Add new Queue to create a new queue. In the screen that opens, check Active and enter or select the following values:

- Name: E-mail

- Interface: WAN
- Priority: 1 (High)
- Weight: 8
- Rate Limit: 5,000 (kbps)

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Add new Queue" with the following settings:

- Active
- Name: E-mail
- Interface: WAN
- Priority: 1 (High)
- Weight: 1
- Buffer Management: Drop Tail (DT)
- Rate Limit (kbps): 5000

Buttons: OK, Cancel

- 3 Click Class Setup > Add new Classifier to create a new class. Check Active and follow the settings as shown in the screen below.

Please follow the guidance through step 1-5 to configure a QoS rule

Step1: Class Configuration

Active
 Class Name :
 Classification Order :

Step2: Criteria configuration
 Use the configurations below to specify the characteristics of a data flow need to be managed by this QoS rule

▪ **Basic**
 From Interface :
 Ether Type :

▪ **Source**

Address Subnet Netmask Exclude
 Port Range ~ Exclude
 MAC MAC Mask Exclude

▪ **Destination**

Address Subnet Netmask Exclude
 Port Range ~ Exclude
 MAC MAC Mask Exclude

▪ **Others**

Service Exclude
 IP protocol Exclude
 DHCP Exclude
 Packet Length ~ Exclude
 DSCP (0-63) Exclude
 802.1P Exclude
 VLAN ID (0-4094) Exclude
 TCP ACK Exclude

Step3: Packet modification
 The content of the packet can be modified by applying the following settings:
 DSCP Mark : (0-63)
 802.1P Mark :
 VLAN ID : (0-4094)

Step4: Policy Forwarding
 This module can route or bridge packets to certain interface according to the class settings:
 Forward To Interface :

Step5: Outgoing queue selection
 Outgoing queue decide the priority of the traffic and how traffic should be shaped in the WAN interface. Choose "None" if you don't want to apply outgoing queue
 To Queue Index :

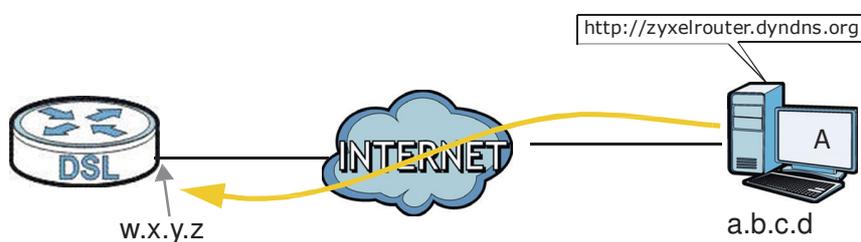
Class Name	Give a class name to this traffic, such as E-mail in this example.
From Interface	This is the interface from which the traffic will be coming from. Select LAN1 for this example.
Ether Type	Select IP to identify the traffic source by its IP address or MAC address.
IP Address	Type the IP address of your computer - 192.168.1.23. Type the IP Subnet Mask if you know it.
MAC Address	Type the MAC address of your computer - AA:FF:AA:FF:AA:FF. Type the MAC Mask if you know it.
To Queue Index	Link this to an item in the Network Setting > QoS > Queue Setup screen, which is the E-mail queue created in this example.

This maps e-mail traffic coming from port 25 to the highest priority, which you have created in the previous screen (see the IP Protocol field). This also maps your computer's IP address and MAC address to the E-mail queue (see the Source fields).

- 4 Verify that the queue setup works by checking Network Setting > QoS > Monitor. This shows the bandwidth allotted to e-mail traffic compared to other network traffic.

4.7 Access the VMG Using DDNS

If you connect your VMG to the Internet and it uses a dynamic WAN IP address, it is inconvenient for you to manage the device from the Internet. The VMG's WAN IP address changes dynamically. Dynamic DNS (DDNS) allows you to access the VMG using a domain name.



To use this feature, you have to apply for DDNS service at www.dyndns.org.

This tutorial covers:

- [Registering a DDNS Account on \[www.dyndns.org\]\(http://www.dyndns.org\)](#)
- [Configuring DDNS on Your VMG](#)
- [Testing the DDNS Setting](#)

Note: If you have a private WAN IP address, then you cannot use DDNS.

4.7.1 Registering a DDNS Account on www.dyndns.org

- 1 Open a browser and type <http://www.dyndns.org>.
- 2 Apply for a user account. This tutorial uses `UserName1` and `12345` as the username and password.
- 3 Log into www.dyndns.org using your account.
- 4 Add a new DDNS host name. This tutorial uses the following settings as an example.
 - Hostname: `zyxelrouter.dyndns.org`
 - Service Type: Host with IP address
 - IP Address: Enter the WAN IP address that your VMG is currently using. You can find the IP address on the VMG's Web Configurator Status page.

Then you will need to configure the same account and host name on the VMG later.

4.7.2 Configuring DDNS on Your VMG

Configure the following settings in the Network Setting > DNS > Dynamic DNS screen.

- Select Enable Dynamic DNS.
- Select www.DynDNS.com as the service provider.
- Type zyxelrouter.dyndns.org in the Host Name field.
- Enter the user name (UserName1) and password (12345).

Dynamic DNS Setup

Dynamic DNS Enable Disable

Service Provider :

Hostname :

Username :

Password :

Dynamic DNS Status

User Authentication Result :

Last Updated Time :

Current Dynamic IP :

Apply Cancel

Click Apply.

4.7.3 Testing the DDNS Setting

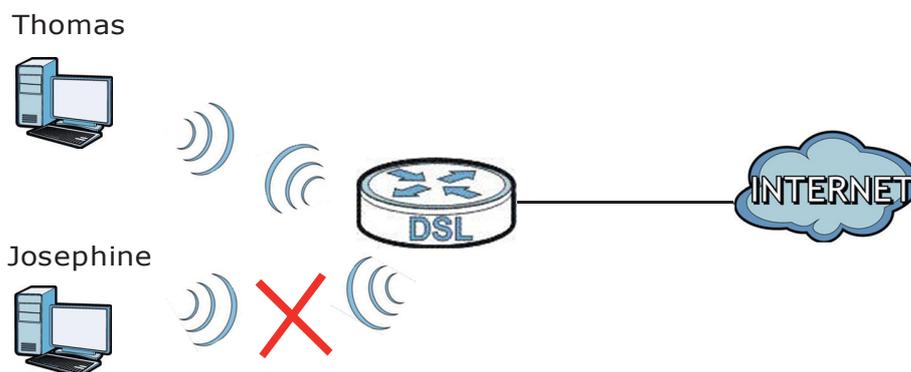
Now you should be able to access the VMG from the Internet. To test this:

- 1 Open a web browser on the computer (using the IP address a.b.c.d) that is connected to the Internet.
- 2 Type `http://zyxelrouter.dyndns.org` and press [Enter].
- 3 The VMG's login page should appear. You can then log into the VMG and manage it.

4.8 Configuring the MAC Address Filter

Thomas noticed that his daughter Josephine spends too much time surfing the web and downloading media files. He decided to prevent Josephine from accessing the Internet so that she can concentrate on preparing for her final exams.

Josephine's computer connects wirelessly to the Internet through the VMG. Thomas decides to use the Security > MAC Filter screen to grant wireless network access to his computer but not to Josephine's computer.



- 1 Click Security > MAC Filter to open the MAC Filter screen. Select the Enable check box to activate MAC filter function.
- 2 Select Allow. Then enter the host name and MAC address of Thomas' computer in this screen. Click Apply.

MAC Address Filter : Enable Disable (settings are invalid when disabled)

MAC Restrict Mode : Allow Deny

Set	Allow	Host name	MAC Address
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Thomas	00:24:21:AB:1F:00
2	<input type="checkbox"/>		
3	<input type="checkbox"/>		
4	<input type="checkbox"/>		
5	<input type="checkbox"/>		
30	<input type="checkbox"/>		
31	<input type="checkbox"/>		
32	<input type="checkbox"/>		

Note:
Only devices listed here are granted or prohibit access to the network.

Apply Cancel

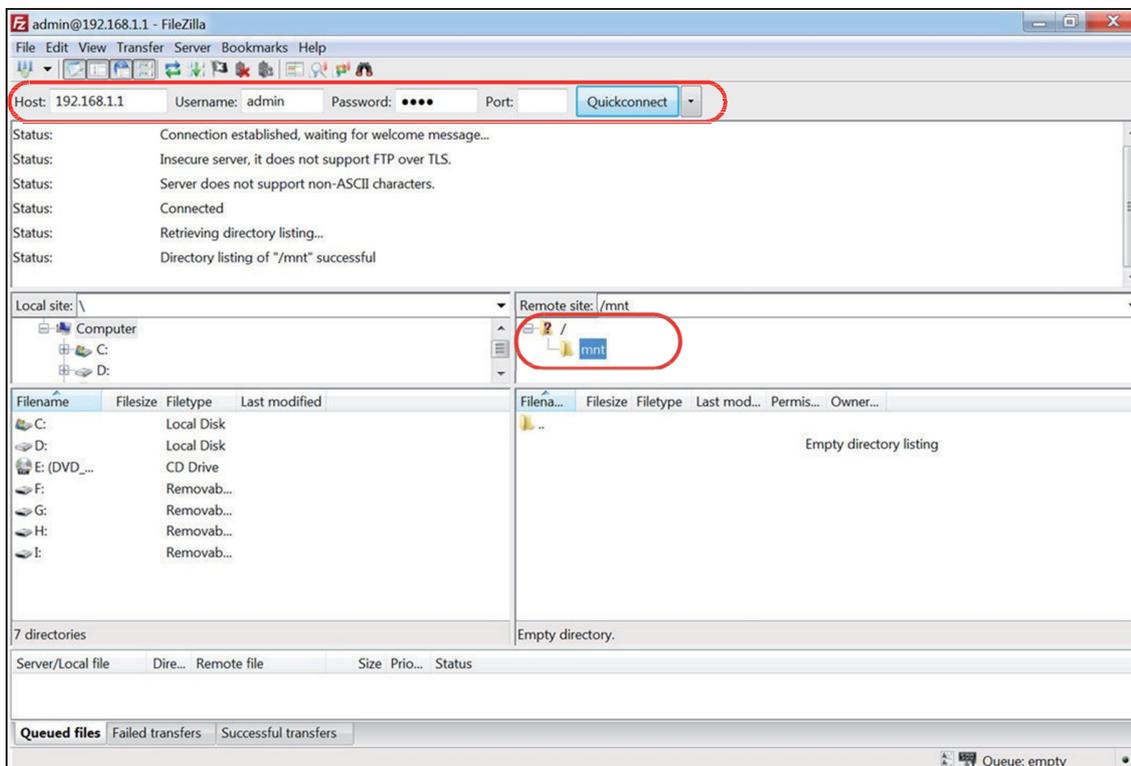
Thomas can also grant access to the computers of other members of his family and friends. However, Josephine and others not listed in this screen will no longer be able to access the Internet through the VMG.

4.9 Access Your Shared Files From a Computer

Here is how to use an FTP program to access a file storage device connected to the VMG's USB port.

Note: This example uses the FileZilla FTP program to browse your shared files.

- 1 In FileZilla enter the IP address of the VMG (the default is 192.168.1.1), your account's user name and password and port 21 and click Quickconnect. A screen asking for password authentication appears.



- 2 Once you log in the USB device displays in the mnt folder.

PART II

Technical Reference

Network Map and Status Screens

5.1 Overview

After you log into the Web Configurator, the Network Map screen appears. This shows the network connection status of the VMG and clients connected to it.

You can use the Status screen to look at the current status of the VMG, system resources, and interfaces (LAN, WAN, and WLAN).

5.2 The Network Map Screen

Use this screen to view the network connection status of the device and its clients. A warning message appears if there is a connection problem.

Figure 13 Network Map: Icon View Mode



If you want to view information about a client, click the client's name and Info. Click the IP address if you want to change it. If you want to change the name or icon of the client, click Change name/icon.



If you prefer to view the status in a list, click List View in the Viewing mode selection box. You can configure how often you want the VMG to update this screen in Refresh interval.

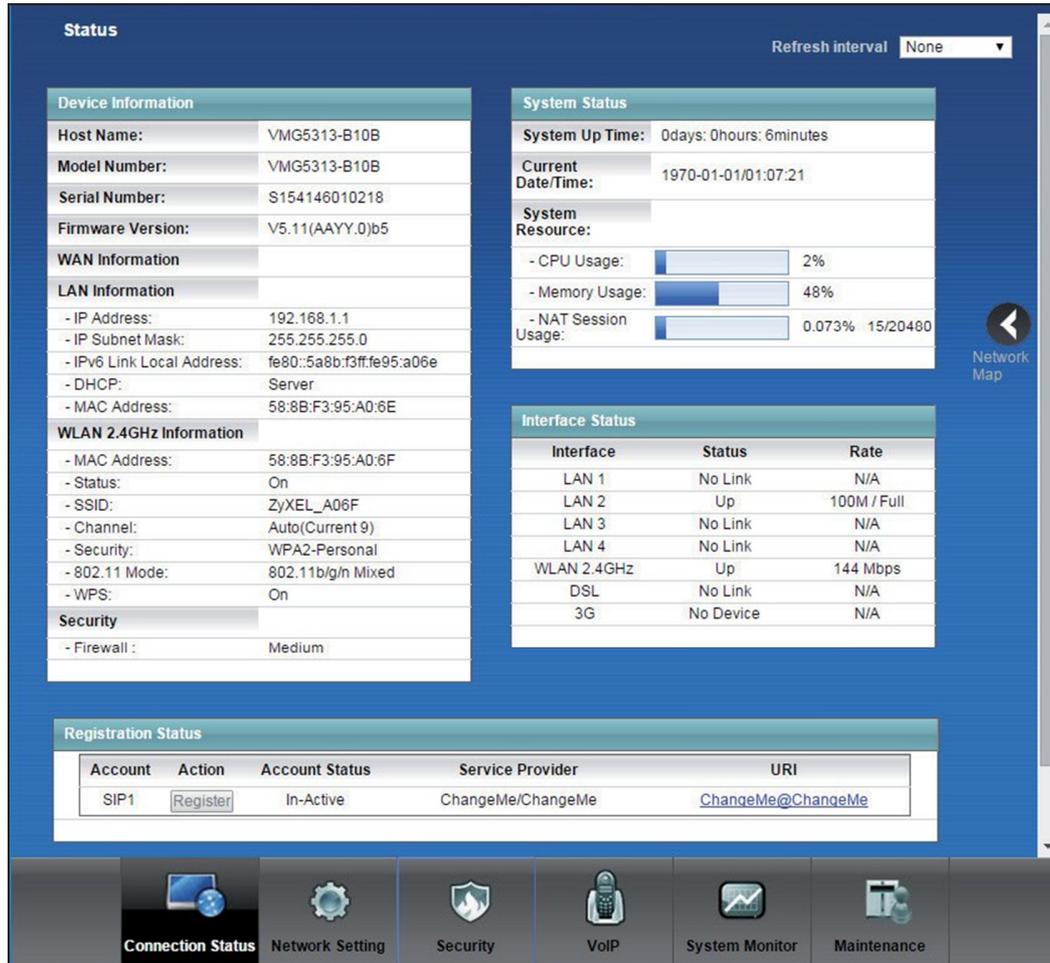
Figure 14 Network Map: List View Mode

#	Device Name	IP Address	MAC Address	Address Source	Connect Type
	Unknown	192.168.1.5	c0:3f:d5:ba:9e:b7	Static	Ethernet

5.3 The Status Screen

Use this screen to view the status of the VMG. Click Status to open this screen.

Figure 15 Status Screen



Each field is described in the following table.

Table 5 Status Screen

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Refresh Interval	Select how often you want the VMG to update this screen.
Device Information	
Host Name	This field displays the VMG system name. It is used for identification.
Model Number	This shows the model number of your VMG.
Serial Number	This field displays the serial number of the VMG.
Firmware Version	This is the current version of the firmware inside the VMG.
WAN Information (These fields display when you have a WAN connection.)	
Encapsulation	This field displays the current encapsulation method.
IP Address	This field displays the current IP address of the VMG in the WAN.
IP Subnet Mask	This field displays the current subnet mask in the WAN.
MAC Address	This shows the WAN Ethernet adapter MAC (Media Access Control) Address of your VMG.
Primary DNS server	This field displays the first DNS server address assigned by the ISP.

Table 5 Status Screen (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Secondary DNS server	This field displays the second DNS server address assigned by the ISP.
DHCP	This field displays whether the WAN interface is using a DHCP IP address or a static IP address. Choices are: Client - The WAN interface can obtain an IP address from a DHCP server. None - The WAN interface is using a static IP address.
LAN Information	
IP Address	This is the current IP address of the VMG in the LAN.
IP Subnet Mask	This is the current subnet mask in the LAN.
IPv6 Link Local Address	This field displays the current link-local address of the VMG for the LAN interface.
DHCP	This field displays what DHCP services the VMG is providing to the LAN. The possible values are: Server - The VMG is a DHCP server in the LAN. It assigns IP addresses to other computers in the LAN. Relay - The VMG acts as a surrogate DHCP server and relays DHCP requests and responses between the remote server and the clients. None - The VMG is not providing any DHCP services to the LAN.
MAC Address	This shows the LAN Ethernet adapter MAC (Media Access Control) Address of your VMG.
WLAN 2.4G Information	
MAC Address	This shows the wireless adapter MAC (Media Access Control) Address of the wireless interface.
Status	This displays whether the WLAN is activated.
SSID	This is the descriptive name used to identify the VMG in a wireless LAN.
Channel	This is the channel number used by the wireless interface now.
Security	This displays the type of security mode the wireless interface is using in the wireless LAN.
802.11 Mode	This displays the type of 802.11 mode the wireless interface is using in the wireless LAN.
WPS	This displays whether WPS is activated on the wireless interface.
Security	
Firewall	This displays the firewall's current security level.
System Status	
System Up Time	This field displays how long the VMG has been running since it last started up. The VMG starts up when you plug it in, when you restart it (Maintenance > Reboot), or when you reset it.
Current Date/Time	This field displays the current date and time in the VMG. You can change this in Maintenance > Time Setting.
System Resource	
CPU Usage	This field displays what percentage of the VMG's processing ability is currently used. When this percentage is close to 100%, the VMG is running at full load, and the throughput is not going to improve anymore. If you want some applications to have more throughput, you should turn off other applications (for example, using QoS; see Chapter 10 on page 142).
Memory Usage	This field displays what percentage of the VMG's memory is currently used. Usually, this percentage should not increase much. If memory usage does get close to 100%, the VMG is probably becoming unstable, and you should restart the device. See Section 39.2 on page 285 , or turn off the device (unplug the power) for a few seconds.

Table 5 Status Screen (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
NAT Session Usage	This field displays what percentage of the VMG supported NAT sessions are currently being used. This field also displays the number of active NAT sessions and the maximum number of NAT sessions the VMG can support.
Interface Status	
Interface	This column displays each interface the VMG has.
Status	<p>This field indicates the interface's use status.</p> <p>For the LAN and Ethernet WAN interfaces, this field displays Up when using the interface and NoLink when not using the interface.</p> <p>For a WLAN interface, this field displays the enabled (Up) or disabled (Disable) state of the interface.</p> <p>For the DSL interface, this field displays Down (line down), Up (line up or connected), Drop (dropping a call) if you're using PPPoE encapsulation, and NoLink when not using the interface.</p> <p>For the 3G interface, this field displays Up when using the interface and NoDevice when no device is detected in any USB slot.</p>
Rate	<p>For the Ethernet WAN and LAN interface, this displays the port speed and duplex setting.</p> <p>For the DSL interface, it displays the downstream and upstream transmission rate.</p> <p>For the WLAN interface, it displays the maximum transmission rate or N/A with WLAN disabled.</p> <p>For the 3G interface, this field displays Up when a 3G device is installed in a USB slot and N/A when no device is detected in any USB slot.</p>
Registration Status	
Account	This column displays each SIP account in the VMG.
Action	<p>If the SIP account is already registered with the SIP server, the Account Status field displays Registered.</p> <p>Click Unregister to delete the SIP account's registration in the SIP server. This does not cancel your SIP account, but it deletes the mapping between your SIP identity and your IP address or domain name.</p> <p>If the SIP account is not registered with the SIP server, the Account Status field displays Not Registered.</p> <p>Click Register to have the VMG attempt to register the SIP account with the SIP server.</p> <p>The button is grayed out if the SIP account is disabled.</p>
Account Status	<p>This field displays the current registration status of the SIP account. You have to register SIP accounts with a SIP server to use VoIP.</p> <p>Inactive - The SIP account is not active. You can activate it in VoIP > SIP > SIP Account.</p> <p>Not Registered - The last time the VMG tried to register the SIP account with the SIP server, the attempt failed. Use the Register button to register the account again. The VMG automatically tries to register the SIP account when you turn on the VMG or when you activate it.</p> <p>Registered - The SIP account is already registered with the SIP server. You can use it to make a VoIP call.</p>
Service Provider	This column displays the service provider name and SIP number for each SIP account.
URI	This field displays the account number and service domain of the SIP account. You can change these in the VoIP > SIP screens.

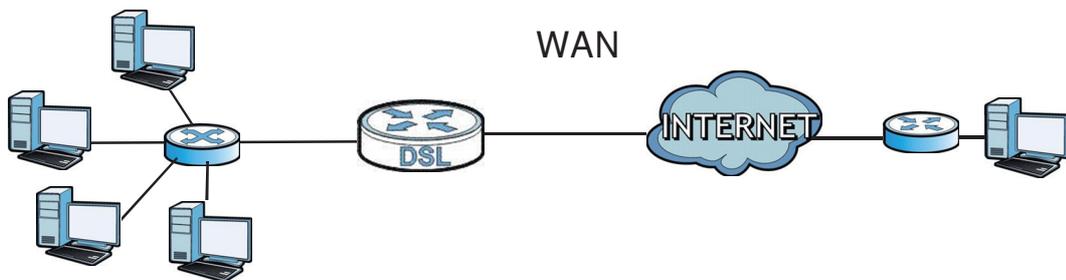
Broadband

6.1 Overview

This chapter discusses the VMG's Broadband screens. Use these screens to configure your VMG for Internet access.

A WAN (Wide Area Network) connection is an outside connection to another network or the Internet. It connects your private networks, such as a LAN (Local Area Network) and other networks, so that a computer in one location can communicate with computers in other locations.

Figure 16 LAN and WAN



6.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- Use the Broadband screen to view, remove or add a WAN interface. You can also configure the WAN settings on the VMG for Internet access ([Section 6.2 on page 66](#)).
- Use the 3G Backup screen to configure 3G WAN connection ([Section 6.3 on page 76](#)).
- Use the Advanced screen to enable or disable PTM over ADSL, Annex M/Annex J, and DSL PhyR functions ([Section 6.4 on page 80](#)).
- Use the Ethernet WAN screen to enable the fourth Ethernet LAN port to be an Ethernet WAN port ([Section 6.5 on page 82](#)).
- Use the 802.1x screen to view and configure the IEEE 802.1X settings on the VMG ([Section 6.6 on page 83](#)).

Table 6 WAN Setup Overview

LAYER-2 INTERFACE		INTERNET CONNECTION		
CONNECTION	DSL LINK TYPE	MODE	ENCAPSULATION	CONNECTION SETTINGS
ADSL/VDSL over PTM	N/A	Routing	PPPoE	PPP information, IPv4/IPv6 IP address, routing feature, DNS server, VLAN, QoS, and MTU
			IPoE	IPv4/IPv6 IP address, routing feature, DNS server, VLAN, QoS, and MTU
		Bridge	N/A	VLAN and QoS
ADSL over ATM	EoA	Routing	PPPoE/PPPoA	ATM PVC configuration, PPP information, IPv4/IPv6 IP address, routing feature, DNS server, VLAN, QoS, and MTU
			IPoE/IPoA	ATM PVC configuration, IPv4/IPv6 IP address, routing feature, DNS server, VLAN, QoS, and MTU
		Bridge	N/A	ATM PVC configuration, and QoS
Ethernet	N/A	Routing	PPPoE	PPP user name and password, WAN IPv4/IPv6 IP address, routing feature, DNS server, VLAN, QoS, and MTU
			IPoE	WAN IPv4/IPv6 IP address, NAT, DNS server and routing feature
		Bridge	N/A	VLAN and QoS

6.1.2 What You Need to Know

The following terms and concepts may help as you read this chapter.

WAN IP Address

The WAN IP address is an IP address for the VMG, which makes it accessible from an outside network. It is used by the VMG to communicate with other devices in other networks. It can be static (fixed) or dynamically assigned by the ISP each time the VMG tries to access the Internet.

If your ISP assigns you a static WAN IP address, they should also assign you the subnet mask and DNS server IP address(es).

ATM

Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM) is a WAN networking technology that provides high-speed data transfer. ATM uses fixed-size packets of information called cells. With ATM, a high QoS (Quality of Service) can be guaranteed. ATM uses a connection-oriented model and establishes a virtual circuit (VC) between Finding Out More

PTM

Packet Transfer Mode (PTM) is packet-oriented and supported by the VDSL2 standard. In PTM, packets are encapsulated directly in the High-level Data Link Control (HDLC) frames. It is designed to provide a low-overhead, transparent way of transporting packets over DSL links, as an alternative to ATM.

IPv6 Introduction

IPv6 (Internet Protocol version 6), is designed to enhance IP address size and features. The increase in IPv6 address size to 128 bits (from the 32-bit IPv4 address) allows up to 3.4×10^{38} IP addresses. The VMG can use IPv4/IPv6 dual stack to connect to IPv4 and IPv6 networks, and supports IPv6 rapid deployment (6RD).

IPv6 Addressing

The 128-bit IPv6 address is written as eight 16-bit hexadecimal blocks separated by colons (:). This is an example IPv6 address 2001:0db8:1a2b:0015:0000:0000:1a2f:0000.

IPv6 addresses can be abbreviated in two ways:

- Leading zeros in a block can be omitted. So 2001:0db8:1a2b:0015:0000:0000:1a2f:0000 can be written as 2001:db8:1a2b:15:0:0:1a2f:0.
- Any number of consecutive blocks of zeros can be replaced by a double colon. A double colon can only appear once in an IPv6 address. So 2001:0db8:0000:0000:1a2f:0000:0000:0015 can be written as 2001:0db8::1a2f:0000:0000:0015, 2001:db8::1a2f:0:0:15 or 2001:db8:0:0:1a2f::15.

IPv6 Prefix and Prefix Length

Similar to an IPv4 subnet mask, IPv6 uses an address prefix to represent the network address. An IPv6 prefix length specifies how many most significant bits (start from the left) in the address compose the network address. The prefix length is written as "/x" where x is a number. For example,

2001:db8:1a2b:15::1a2f:0/32

means that the first 32 bits (2001:db8) is the subnet prefix.

IPv6 Subnet Masking

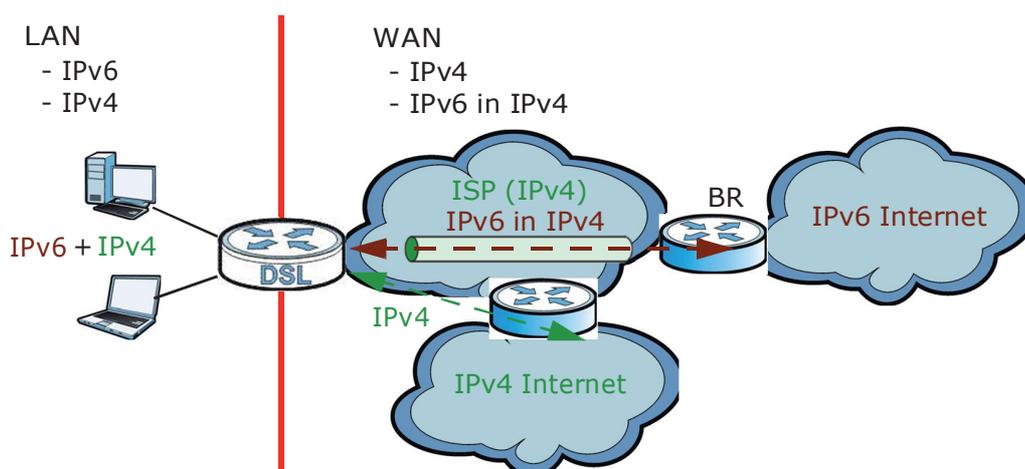
Both an IPv6 address and IPv6 subnet mask compose of 128-bit binary digits, which are divided into eight 16-bit blocks and written in hexadecimal notation. Hexadecimal uses four bits for each character (1 ~ 10, A ~ F). Each block's 16 bits are then represented by four hexadecimal characters. For example, FFFF:FFFF:FFFF:FFFF:FC00:0000:0000:0000.

IPv6 Rapid Deployment

Use IPv6 Rapid Deployment (6rd) when the local network uses IPv6 and the ISP has an IPv4 network. When the VMG has an IPv4 WAN address and you set IPv6/IPv4 Mode to IPv4 Only, you can enable 6rd to encapsulate IPv6 packets in IPv4 packets to cross the ISP's IPv4 network.

The VMG generates a global IPv6 prefix from its IPv4 WAN address and tunnels IPv6 traffic to the ISP's Border Relay router (BR in the figure) to connect to the native IPv6 Internet. The local network can also use IPv4 services. The VMG uses its configured IPv4 WAN IP to route IPv4 traffic to the IPv4 Internet.

Figure 17 IPv6 Rapid Deployment

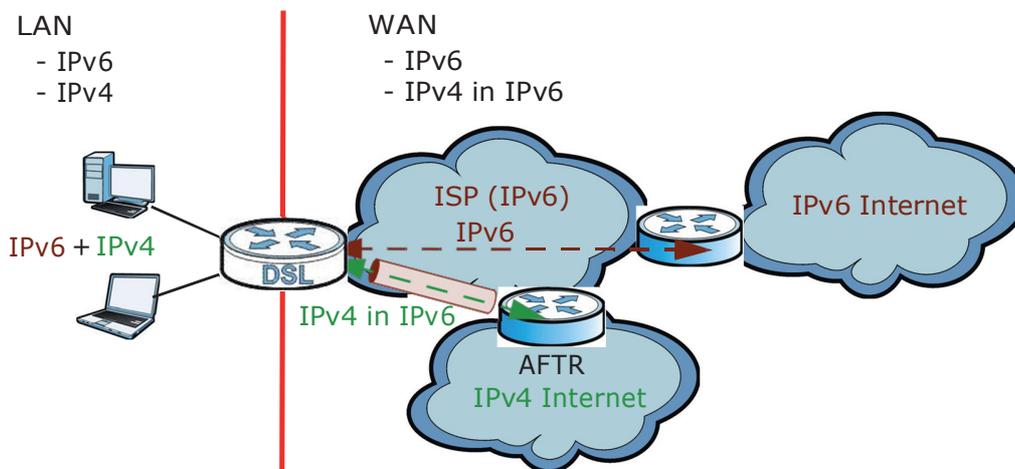


Dual Stack Lite

Use Dual Stack Lite when local network computers use IPv4 and the ISP has an IPv6 network. When the VMG has an IPv6 WAN address and you set IPv6/IPv4 Mode to IPv6 Only, you can enable Dual Stack Lite to use IPv4 computers and services.

The VMG tunnels IPv4 packets inside IPv6 encapsulation packets to the ISP's Address Family Transition Router (AFTR in the graphic) to connect to the IPv4 Internet. The local network can also use IPv6 services. The VMG uses its configured IPv6 WAN IP to route IPv6 traffic to the IPv6 Internet.

Figure 18 Dual Stack Lite



6.1.3 Before You Begin

You need to know your Internet access settings such as encapsulation and WAN IP address. Get this information from your ISP.

6.2 The Broadband Screen

Use this screen to change your VMG's Internet access settings. Click Network Setting > Broadband from the menu. The summary table shows you the configured WAN services (connections) on the VMG.

Figure 19 Network Setting > Broadband

Add New WAN Interface												
#	Name	Type	Mode	Encaps...	802.1p	802.1q	ICMP Proxy	NAT	Default Gateway	IPv6	MLD Proxy	Modify
1	ADSL	ATM	Routing	IPoE	N/A	N/A	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	
2	VDSL	PTM	Routing	IPoE	N/A	N/A	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	
3	ETHWAN	Ethernet	Routing	IPoE	N/A	N/A	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 7 Network Setting > Broadband

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add New WAN Interface	Click this button to create a new connection.
#	This is the index number of the entry.
Name	This is the service name of the connection.
Type	This shows whether it is an ATM, Ethernet or a PTM connection.
Mode	This shows whether the connection is in routing or bridge mode.
Encapsulation	This is the method of encapsulation used by this connection.
802.1p	This indicates the 802.1p priority level assigned to traffic sent through this connection. This displays N/A when there is no priority level assigned.

Table 7 Network Setting > Broadband (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
802.1q	This indicates the VLAN ID number assigned to traffic sent through this connection. This displays N/A when there is no VLAN ID number assigned.
IGMP Proxy	This shows whether the VMG act as an IGMP proxy on this connection.
NAT	This shows whether NAT is activated or not for this connection.
Default Gateway	This shows whether the VMG use the WAN interface of this connection as the system default gateway.
IPv6	This shows whether IPv6 is activated or not for this connection. IPv6 is not available when the connection uses the bridging service.
MLD Proxy	This shows whether Multicast Listener Discovery (MLD) is activated or not for this connection. MLD is not available when the connection uses the bridging service.
Modify	Click the Edit icon to configure the WAN connection. Click the Delete icon to remove the WAN connection.

6.2.1 Add/Edit Internet Connection

Click Add New WAN Interface in the Broadband screen or the Edit icon next to an existing WAN interface to configure a WAN connection. The screen varies depending on the interface type, mode, encapsulation, and IPv6/IPv4 mode you select.

6.2.1.1 Routing Mode

Use Routing mode if your ISP give you one IP address only and you want multiple computers to share an Internet account.

The following example screen displays when you select the ADSL/VDSL over ATM connection type, Routing mode, and PPPoE encapsulation. The screen varies when you select other interface type, encapsulation, and IPv6/IPv4 mode.

Figure 20 Network Setting > Broadband > Add New WAN Interface/Edit (Routing Mode)

WAN Configuration

General

Active:

Name:

Type:

Mode:

Encapsulation:

IPv6/IPv4 Mode:

PPP Information

PPP User Name:

PPP Password: password unmask

PPP Trigger Type: Auto Connect Connect on Demand Manual

Authentication Method:

Idle Timeout [minutes]:

PPPoE Service Name:

PPPoE Passthrough:

IP Address

Obtain an IP Address Automatically

Static IP Address

IP Address:

Subnet Mask:

Gateway IP Address:

Routing Feature

NAT Enable:

IGMP Proxy Enable:

Apply as Default Gateway:

DNS server

DNS: Dynamic Static

DNS Server 1:

DNS Server 2:

Tunnel

Enable 6RD: Enable Disable

6RD Type: DHCP Static

IPv4 Mask Length:

6RD Border Relay Server IP:

6RD IPv6 Prefix:

VLAN

Active:

802.1p:

802.1q: (0-4094)

QoS

Rate Limit: (kbps)

WAN Outgoing Default Tag: Enable Disable

DSCP: (0-63)

MTU

MTU Size: MTU [68-1492]

Apply | Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 8 Network Setting > Broadband > Add New WAN Interface/Edit (Routing Mode)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
General	
Active	Select this to enable the interface.
Name	Specify a descriptive name for this connection.
Type	Select whether it is an ADSL/VDSL over PTM, ADSL over ATM connection or Ethernet.
Mode	Select Routing if your ISP give you one IP address only and you want multiple computers to share an Internet account.
Encapsulation	Select the method of encapsulation used by your ISP from the drop-down list box. This option is available only when you select Routing in the Mode field. The choices depend on the connection type you selected. If your connection type is ADSL/VDSL over PTM, the choices are PPPoE and IPoE. If your connection type is ADSL over ATM, the choices are PPPoE, PPPoA, IPoE and IPoA.
IPv6/IPv4 Mode	Select IPv4 Only if you want the VMG to run IPv4 only. Select IPv6/IPv4 DualStack to allow the VMG to run IPv4 and IPv6 at the same time. Select IPv6 Only if you want the VMG to run IPv6 only.
ATM PVC Configuration (These fields appear when the Type is set to ADSL over ATM.)	
VPI	The valid range for the VPI is 0 to 255. Enter the VPI assigned to you.
VCI	The valid range for the VCI is 32 to 65535 (0 to 31 is reserved for local management of ATM traffic). Enter the VCI assigned to you.
DSL Link Type	The choices in this field change according to the Encapsulation method chosen above. This field is not editable. PPPoA and IPoA encapsulation use the same named DSL Link Type. Ethernet-over-ATM (EoA) is used for PPPoE, and IPoE encapsulation. EoA a protocol for data transfer between Ethernet LAN and WAN over the ATM protocol. It creates a bridged connection between the VMG and the ISP. It uses an Ethernet header in the packet, so that you can have multiple services/connections over one PVC. You can set each connection to have its own MAC address or all connections share one MAC address but use different VLAN IDs for different services. EoA supports ENET ENCAP (IPoE), PPPoE and RFC1483/2684 bridging encapsulation methods. PPPoA (PPP over ATM) allows just one PPPoA connection over a PVC. IPoA (IP over ATM) allows just one RFC 1483 routing connection over a PVC.
Encapsulation Mode	Select the method of multiplexing used by your ISP from the drop-down list box. Choices are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • LLC/SNAP-BRIDGING: In LCC encapsulation, bridged PDUs are encapsulated by identifying the type of the bridged media in the SNAP header. This is available only when you select IPoE or PPPoE in the Select DSL Link Type field. • VC/MUX: In VC multiplexing, each protocol is carried on a single ATM virtual circuit (VC). To transport multiple protocols, the VMG needs separate VCs. There is a binding between a VC and the type of the network protocol carried on the VC. This reduces payload overhead since there is no need to carry protocol information in each Protocol Data Unit (PDU) payload. • LLC/ENCAPSULATION: More than one protocol can be carried over the same VC. This is available only when you select PPPoA in the Encapsulation field. • LLC/SNAP-ROUTING: In LCC encapsulation, an IEEE 802.2 Logical Link Control (LLC) header is prefixed to each routed PDU to identify the PDUs. The LCC header can be followed by an IEEE 802.1a SubNetwork Attachment Point (SNAP) header. This is available only when you select IPoA in the Encapsulation field.

Table 8 Network Setting > Broadband > Add New WAN Interface/Edit (Routing Mode) (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Service Category	<p>Select UBR Without PCR or UBR With PCR for applications that are non-time sensitive, such as e-mail.</p> <p>Select CBR (Continuous Bit Rate) to specify fixed (always-on) bandwidth for voice or data traffic.</p> <p>Select Non Realtime VBR (non real-time Variable Bit Rate) for connections that do not require closely controlled delay and delay variation.</p> <p>Select Realtime VBR (real-time Variable Bit Rate) for applications with bursty connections that require closely controlled delay and delay variation.</p>
PPP Information (This is available only when you select PPPoE or PPPoA in the Mode field.)	
PPP User Name	Enter the user name exactly as your ISP assigned. If assigned a name in the form user@domain where domain identifies a service name, then enter both components exactly as given.
PPP Password	Enter the password associated with the user name above. Select password unmask to show your entered password in plain text.
PPP Trigger Type	<p>Select when to have the VMG establish the PPP connection.</p> <p>Auto Connect - select this to not let the connection time out.</p> <p>Connect on Demand - select this to automatically bring up the connection when the VMG receives packets destined for the Internet.</p> <p>Manual - select this if you want to manually trigger the connection up.</p>
Authentication Method	<p>Select an authentication protocol for outgoing connection requests through this WAN interface.</p> <p>PAP - Password Authentication Protocol (PAP) authentication sends user name and password in clear text without using encryption. Select this if your VMG accepts PAP only.</p> <p>CHAP - Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP) provides authentication through a shared secret key and uses a three way handshake. Select this if your VMG accepts CHAP only.</p> <p>MSCHAP - Microsoft CHAP provides authentication through a shared secret key and uses a three way handshake. It provides improved usability with Microsoft products. Select this if your VMG accepts MSCHAP only.</p> <p>AUTO - Select this if your VMG accepts either PAP, CHAP, or MSCHAP authentication method.</p>
Idle Timeout	<p>This value specifies the time in minutes that elapses before the router automatically disconnects from the PPPoE server.</p> <p>This field is not configurable if you select Auto Connect in the PPP Trigger Type field.</p>
PPPoE Service Name	Enter the name of your PPPoE service here.
PPPoE Passthrough	<p>This field is available when you select PPPoE encapsulation.</p> <p>In addition to the VMG's built-in PPPoE client, you can enable PPPoE pass through to allow up to ten hosts on the LAN to use PPPoE client software on their computers to connect to the ISP via the VMG. Each host can have a separate account and a public WAN IP address.</p> <p>PPPoE pass through is an alternative to NAT for application where NAT is not appropriate.</p> <p>Disable PPPoE pass through if you do not need to allow hosts on the LAN to use PPPoE client software on their computers to connect to the ISP.</p>
IP Address (This is available only when you select IPv4 Only or IPv6/IPv4 DualStack in the IPv6/IPv4 Mode field.)	

Table 8 Network Setting > Broadband > Add New WAN Interface/Edit (Routing Mode) (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Obtain an IP Address Automatically	A static IP address is a fixed IP that your ISP gives you. A dynamic IP address is not fixed; the ISP assigns you a different one each time you connect to the Internet. Select this if you have a dynamic IP address.
DHCP option 60/ Vendor ID	This field displays when editing an existing WAN interface. Type the class vendor ID you want the VMG to add in the DHCP Discovery packets that go to the DHCP server.
DHCP option 61 IAD	This field displays when editing an existing WAN interface. Type the Identity Association Identifier (IAD) you want the VMG to add in the DHCP Discovery packets that go to the DHCP server.
DHCP option 61 DUID	This field displays when editing an existing WAN interface. Type the DHCP Unique Identifier (DUID) you want the VMG to add in the DHCP Discovery packets that go to the DHCP server.
DHCP option 43 Enable	This field displays when editing an existing WAN interface. Type the vendor specific information you want the VMG to add in the DHCP Offer packets. The information is used, for example, for configuring an ACS's (Auto Configuration Server) URL.
Static IP Address	Select this option If the ISP assigned a fixed IP address.
IP Address	Enter the static IP address provided by your ISP.
Subnet Mask	Enter the subnet mask provided by your ISP.
Gateway IP Address	Enter the gateway IP address provided by your ISP.
Routing Feature (This is available only when you select IPv4 Only or IPv6/IPv4 DualStack in the IPv6/IPv4 Mode field.)	
NAT Enable	Select this option to activate NAT on this connection.
Fullcone NAT Enable	Select this option to enable full cone NAT on this connection. This field is available only when you activate NAT. In full cone NAT, the VMG maps all outgoing packets from an internal IP address and port to a single IP address and port on the external network. The VMG also maps packets coming to that external IP address and port to the internal IP address and port.
IGMP Proxy Enable	Internet Group Multicast Protocol (IGMP) is a network-layer protocol used to establish membership in a Multicast group - it is not used to carry user data. Select this option to have the VMG act as an IGMP proxy on this connection. This allows the VMG to get subscribing information and maintain a joined member list for each multicast group. It can reduce multicast traffic significantly.
Apply as Default Gateway	Select this option to have the VMG use the WAN interface of this connection as the system default gateway.
DNS Server (This is available only when you select IPv4 Only or IPv6/IPv4 DualStack in the IPv6/IPv4 Mode field.)	
DNS	Select Obtain DNS Info Automatically if you want the VMG to use the DNS server addresses assigned by your ISP. Select Use Following Static DNS Address if you want the VMG to use the DNS server addresses you configure manually.
DNS Server1	Enter the first DNS server address assigned by the ISP.
DNS Server 2	Enter the second DNS server address assigned by the ISP.

Table 8 Network Setting > Broadband > Add New WAN Interface/Edit (Routing Mode) (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
	<p>Tunnel (This is available only when you select IPv4 Only or IPv6 Only in the IPv6/IPv4 Mode field.)</p> <p>The DS-Lite (Dual Stack Lite) fields display when you set the IPv6/IPv4 Mode field to IPv6 Only. Enable Dual Stack Lite to let local computers use IPv4 through an ISP's IPv6 network. See Dual Stack Lite on page 65 for more information.</p> <p>The 6RD (IPv6 rapid deployment) fields display when you set the IPv6/IPv4 Mode field to IPv4 Only. See IPv6 Rapid Deployment on page 65 for more information.</p>
Enable DS-Lite	This is available only when you select IPv6 Only in the IPv6/IPv4 Mode field. Select Enable to let local computers use IPv4 through an ISP's IPv6 network.
DS-Lite Relay Server IP	Specify the transition router's IPv6 address.
Enable 6RD	This is available only when you select IPv4 Only in the IPv6/IPv4 Mode field. Select Enable to tunnel IPv6 traffic from the local network through the ISP's IPv4 network.
6RD Type	Select Static if you have the IPv4 address of the relay server, otherwise select DHCP to have the VMG detect it automatically through DHCP.
IPv4 Mask Length	Enter the subnet mask number (1~32) for the IPv4 network.
6RD Border Relay Server IP	When you set the 6RD Type to Static, specify the relay server's IPv4 address in this field.
6RD IPv6 Prefix	Enter an IPv6 prefix for tunneling IPv6 traffic to the ISP's border relay router and connecting to the native IPv6 Internet.
	IPv6 Address (This is available only when you select IPv6/IPv4 DualStack or IPv6 Only in the IPv6/IPv4 Mode field.)
IPv6 Address	<p>Select Automatic if you want to have the VMG use the IPv6 prefix from the connected router's Router Advertisement (RA) to generate an IPv6 address.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select Get IPv6 Address From DHCPv6 Server (IA_NA) if you want to obtain an IPv6 address from a DHCPv6 server. The IP address assigned by a DHCPv6 server has priority over the IP address automatically generated by the VMG using the IPv6 prefix from an RA. This option is available only when you choose to get your IPv6 address automatically. Select Prefix Delegation (IA_PD) to use DHCP PD (Prefix Delegation) which enables the VMG to pass the IPv6 prefix information to its LAN hosts. The hosts can then use the prefix to generate their IPv6 addresses. <p>Select Static if you have a fixed IPv6 address assigned by your ISP.</p> <p>Select None to not assign any IPv6 address to this WAN connection.</p>
Prefix Length	Enter the address prefix length to specify how many most significant bits in an IPv6 address compose the network address.
Next Hop	Enter the IP address of the next-hop gateway. The gateway is a router or switch on the same segment as your VMG's interface(s). The gateway helps forward packets to their destinations.
	IPv6 Routing Feature (This is available only when you select IPv6/IPv4 DualStack or IPv6 Only in the IPv6/IPv4 Mode field. You can enable IPv6 routing features in the following section.)
MLD Proxy Enable	Select this checkbox to have the VMG act as an MLD proxy on this connection. This allows the VMG to get subscription information and maintain a joined member list for each multicast group. It can reduce multicast traffic significantly.
Apply as Default Gateway	Select this option to have the VMG use the WAN interface of this connection as the system default gateway.
IPv6 DNS Server	Configure the IPv6 DNS server in the following section.

Table 8 Network Setting > Broadband > Add New WAN Interface/Edit (Routing Mode) (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IPv6 DNS	Select Dynamic to have the VMG get the IPv6 DNS server addresses from the ISP automatically. Select Static to have the VMG use the IPv6 DNS server addresses you configure manually.
IPv6 DNS Server 1	Enter the first IPv6 DNS server address assigned by the ISP.
IPv6 DNS Server 2	Enter the second IPv6 DNS server address assigned by the ISP.
VLAN (These fields appear when the Type is set to ADSL/VDSL over PTM.)	
Active	Select this to enable VLAN on this WAN interface.
802.1p	IEEE 802.1p defines up to 8 separate traffic types by inserting a tag into a MAC-layer frame that contains bits to define class of service. Select the IEEE 802.1p priority level (from 0 to 7) to add to traffic through this connection. The greater the number, the higher the priority level.
802.1q	Type the VLAN ID number (from 1 to 4094) for traffic through this connection.
QoS	
Rate Limit	Enter the rate limit for the connection. This is the maximum transmission rate allowed for traffic on this connection.
WAN Outgoing Default Tag	Select Enable and enter a DSCP (DiffServ Code Point) value to have the VMG add it in the packets sent by this WAN interface.
802.1p	This field displays if you activate VLAN for this WAN interface. Enter a priority level (from 0 to 7) to have the VMG add it to traffic through this connection.
DSCP	If you enable Select WAN Outgoing Default Tag , enter a DSCP (DiffServ Code Point) value to have the VMG add it in the packets sent by this WAN interface.
MTU	
MTU Size	Enter the MTU (Maximum Transfer Unit) size for this traffic.
Bridging and Routing in the same WAN	Use this feature to bridge a LAN port(s) with the WAN interface. Traffic to/from LAN ports not in the bridge is routed from the WAN interface. ADSL use same VPI/VCI in Bridge and Route modes. VDSL use same VLAN in Bridge and Route modes.
Enable Concurrent WAN	Enable this if you want to use the same VPI/VCI settings in different WAN interfaces. Select this and then choose the ports to bridge with the WAN interface. \ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ADSL concurrent WAN uses the same VCI/PVI in both routing and bridge modes. VDSL concurrent WAN uses same VLAN in both routing and bridge mode.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the VMG.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.

6.2.1.2 Bridge Mode

Click the **Add new WAN Interface** in the **Network Setting > Broadband** screen or the **Edit** icon next to the connection you want to configure. Select **Bridge** as the encapsulation mode. The screen varies depending on the interface type you select.

If you select **ADSL/VDSL over PTM** as the interface type, the following screen appears.

Figure 21 Network Setting > Broadband > Add New WAN Interface/Edit (ADSL/VDSL over PTM - Bridge Mode)

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 9 Network Setting > Broadband > Add New WAN Interface/Edit (ADSL/VDSL over PTM - Bridge Mode)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
General	
Active	Select this to enable the interface.
Name	Enter a service name of the connection.
Type	Select ADSL/VDSL over PTM as the interface that you want to configure. The VMG uses the VDSL technology for data transmission over the DSL port.
Mode	Select Bridge when your ISP provides you more than one IP address and you want the connected computers to get individual IP address from ISP's DHCP server directly. If you select Bridge, you cannot use routing functions, such as QoS, Firewall, DHCP server and NAT on traffic from the selected LAN port(s).
VLAN	
Active	Select Enable to enable VLAN on this WAN interface.
802.1p	IEEE 802.1p defines up to 8 separate traffic types by inserting a tag into a MAC-layer frame that contains bits to define class of service. Select the IEEE 802.1p priority level (from 0 to 7) to add to traffic through this connection. The greater the number, the higher the priority level.
802.1q	Type the VLAN ID number (from 0 to 4094) for traffic through this connection.
OK	Click OK to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.

If you select ADSL over ATM as the interface type, the following screen appears.

Figure 22 Network Setting > Broadband > Add New WAN Interface/Edit (ADSL over ATM-Bridge Mode)

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 10 Network Setting > Broadband > Add New WAN Interface/Edit (ADSL over ATM-Bridge Mode)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
General	
Name	Enter a service name of the connection.
Type	Select ADSL over ATM as the interface that you want to configure. The VMG uses the ADSL technology for data transmission over the DSL port.
Mode	Select Bridge when your ISP provides you more than one IP address and you want the connected computers to get individual IP address from ISP's DHCP server directly. If you select Bridge, you cannot use routing functions, such as QoS, Firewall, DHCP server and NAT on traffic from the selected LAN port(s).
ATM PVC Configuration (These fields appear when the Type is set to ADSL over ATM.)	
VPI	The valid range for the VPI is 0 to 255. Enter the VPI assigned to you.
VCI	The valid range for the VCI is 32 to 65535 (0 to 31 is reserved for local management of ATM traffic). Enter the VCI assigned to you.
Encapsulation	Select the method of multiplexing used by your ISP from the drop-down list box. Choices are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • LLC/SNAP-BRIDGING: In LCC encapsulation, bridged PDUs are encapsulated by identifying the type of the bridged media in the SNAP header. This is available only when you select IPoE or PPPoE in the Encapsulation field. • VC/MUX: In VC multiplexing, each protocol is carried on a single ATM virtual circuit (VC). To transport multiple protocols, the VMG needs separate VCs. There is a binding between a VC and the type of the network protocol carried on the VC. This reduces payload overhead since there is no need to carry protocol information in each Protocol Data Unit (PDU) payload.

Table 10 Network Setting > Broadband > Add New WAN Interface/Edit (ADSL over ATM-Bridge Mode) (continued)

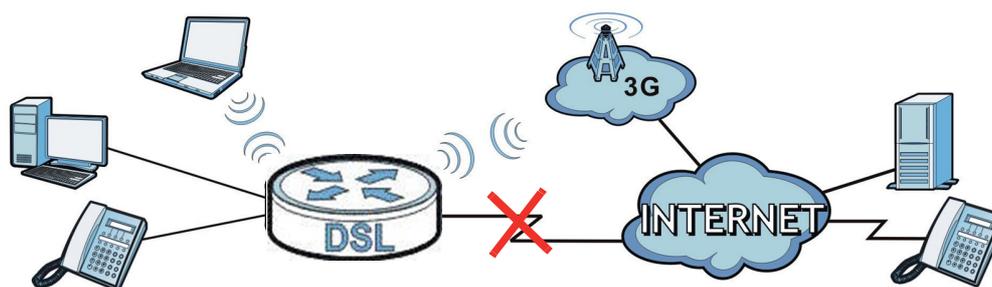
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Service Category	Select UBR Without PCR for applications that are non-time sensitive, such as e-mail. Select CBR (Continuous Bit Rate) to specify fixed (always-on) bandwidth for voice or data traffic. Select Non Realtime VBR (non real-time Variable Bit Rate) for connections that do not require closely controlled delay and delay variation. Select Realtime VBR (real-time Variable Bit Rate) for applications with bursty connections that require closely controlled delay and delay variation.
VLAN	This section is available only when you select ADSL/VDSL over PTM in the Type field.
Active	Select Enable to enable VLAN on this WAN interface.
802.1p	IEEE 802.1p defines up to 8 separate traffic types by inserting a tag into a MAC-layer frame that contains bits to define class of service. Select the IEEE 802.1p priority level (from 0 to 7) to add to traffic through this connection. The greater the number, the higher the priority level.
802.1q	Type the VLAN ID number (from 0 to 4094) for traffic through this connection.
OK	Click OK to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.

6.3 The 3G Backup Screen

The USB ports (at the left side panel of the VMG) allow you to attach a 3G dongle to wirelessly connect to a 3G network for Internet access. You can have the VMG use the 3G WAN connection as a backup. Disconnect the DSL and Ethernet WAN ports to use the 3G dongle as your primary WAN connection. The VMG automatically uses a wired WAN connection when available.

Note: This VMG supports connecting one 3G dongle at a time.

Figure 23 Internet Access Application: 3G WAN



Use this screen to configure your 3G settings. Click Network Setting > Broadband > 3G Backup.

Note: The actual data rate you obtain varies depending the 3G card you use, the signal strength to the service provider's base station, and so on.

Figure 24 Network Setting > Broadband > 3G Backup

General	Budget Setup
3G Backup <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable (settings are invalid when disabled) Trigger by ETHER WAN Down (trigger 3G backup when physical link of primary WAN is down) Ping Check <input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable Check Cycle : Every <input type="text" value="30"/> (5~30 Second) Consecutive PING Fail : <input type="text" value="2"/> (2~5 times) <input checked="" type="radio"/> Ping Default Gateway <input type="radio"/> Ping the Host <input type="text"/> (Host Name or IP address) Note: Primary WAN is not in service when ping failed after consecutive times.	Enable Budget Control <input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="checkbox"/> Time Budget: <input type="text" value="0"/> hours per month <input type="checkbox"/> Data Budget: <input type="text" value="0"/> Mbytes <input type="text" value="Download/Upload"/> per month <input type="checkbox"/> Data Budget: <input type="text" value="0"/> kPackets <input type="text" value="Download/Upload"/> per month Reset all budget counters on <input type="text" value="last"/> day of month <input type="button" value="Reset time and data budget counters"/> Actions before over budget: <input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="text" value="0"/> % of time budget <input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="text" value="0"/> % of data budget (Mbytes) <input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="text" value="0"/> % of data budget (Packets) Actions when over budget: Current 3G connection <input type="text" value="Keep"/> Actions: <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Email Notification Mail Server: <input type="text"/> Over Budget Email Title: <input type="text"/> Send Notification to Email: <input type="text" value="false"/> Interval: <input type="text" value="0"/> minutes <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Log: Interval <input type="text" value="0"/> minutes Note: Budget Control is an approximate value.
3G Connection Settings Card description : N/A Username : <input type="text"/> (Optional) Password : <input type="text"/> (Optional) PIN : <input type="text"/> (Optional) (Only for unlock PIN next time) (PIN remaining authentication times: N/A) Dial string : *99# APN : <input type="text" value="internet"/> Connection : <input type="text" value="Nailed UP"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> Obtain an IP Address Automatically <input type="radio"/> Use the following static IP address IP Address : <input type="text"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> Obtain DNS info dynamically <input type="radio"/> Use the following static DNS IP address Primary DNS server : <input type="text"/> Secondary DNS server : <input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Email Notification Mail Server: <input type="text"/> 3G backup Send Email Title: <input type="text"/> Send Notification to Email: <input type="text"/> Note: Entering the wrong PIN code 3 times will lock SIM card.	<input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 11 Network Setting > Broadband > 3G Backup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
General	
3G Backup	Select Enable to have the VMG use the 3G connection as your WAN or a backup when the wired WAN connection fails.
Ping Check	Select Enable if you want the VMG to ping check the connection status of your WAN. You can configure the frequency of the ping check and number of consecutive failures before triggering 3G backup.
Check Cycle	Enter the frequency of the ping check in this field.
Consecutive PING Fail	Enter how many consecutive failures are required before 3G backup is triggered.
Ping Default Gateway	Select this to have the VMG ping the WAN interface's default gateway IP address.
Ping the Host	Select this to have the VMG ping the particular host name or IP address you typed in this field.
3G Connection Settings	
Card description	This field displays the manufacturer and model name of your 3G card if you inserted one in the VMG. Otherwise, it displays N/A.

Table 11 Network Setting > Broadband > 3G Backup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Username	Type the user name (of up to 64 ASCII printable characters) given to you by your service provider.
Password	Type the password (of up to 64 ASCII printable characters) associated with the user name above.
PIN	A PIN (Personal Identification Number) code is a key to a 3G card. Without the PIN code, you cannot use the 3G card. If your ISP enabled PIN code authentication, enter the 4-digit PIN code (0000 for example) provided by your ISP. If you enter the PIN code incorrectly, the 3G card may be blocked by your ISP and you cannot use the account to access the Internet. If your ISP disabled PIN code authentication, leave this field blank.
Dial string	Enter the phone number (dial string) used to dial up a connection to your service provider's base station. Your ISP should provide the phone number. For example, *99# is the dial string to establish a GPRS or 3G connection in Taiwan.
APN	Enter the APN (Access Point Name) provided by your service provider. Connections with different APNs may provide different services (such as Internet access or MMS (Multi-Media Messaging Service)) and charge method. You can enter up to 32 ASCII printable characters. Spaces are allowed.
Connection	Select Nailed UP if you do not want the connection to time out. Select on Demand if you do not want the connection up all the time and specify an idle time-out in the Max Idle Timeout field.
Max Idle Timeout	This value specifies the time in minutes that elapses before the VMG automatically disconnects from the ISP.
Obtain an IP Address Automatically	Select this option if your ISP did not assign you a fixed IP address.
Use the following static IP address	Select this option if the ISP assigned a fixed IP address.
IP Address	Enter your WAN IP address in this field if you selected Use the following static IP address .
Obtain DNS info dynamically	Select this to have the VMG get the DNS server addresses from the ISP automatically.
Use the following static DNS IP address	Select this to have the VMG use the DNS server addresses you configure manually.
Primary DNS server	Enter the first DNS server address assigned by the ISP.
Secondary DNS server	Enter the second DNS server address assigned by the ISP.
Enable Email Notification	Select this to enable the e-mail notification function. The VMG will e-mail you a notification when the 3G connection is up.
Mail Server	Select a mail server for the e-mail address specified below. If you do not select a mail server, e-mail notifications cannot be sent via e-mail. You must have configured a mail server already in the Maintenance > Email Notification screen.
3G backup Send Email Title	Type a title that you want to be in the subject line of the e-mail notifications that the VMG sends.

Table 11 Network Setting > Broadband > 3G Backup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Send Notification to Email	Notifications are sent to the e-mail address specified in this field. If this field is left blank, notifications cannot be sent via e-mail.
Advanced	Click this to show the advanced 3G backup settings.
Budget Setup	
Enable Budget Control	Select Enable to set a monthly limit for the user account of the installed 3G card. You can set a limit on the total traffic and/or call time. The VMG takes the actions you specified when a limit is exceeded during the month.
Time Budget	Select this and specify the amount of time (in hours) that the 3G connection can be used within one month. If you change the value after you configure and enable budget control, the VMG resets the statistics.
Data Budget (Mbytes)	Select this and specify how much downstream and/or upstream data (in Mega bytes) can be transmitted via the 3G connection within one month. Select Download/Upload to set a limit on the total traffic in both directions. Select Download to set a limit on the downstream traffic (from the ISP to the VMG). Select Upload to set a limit on the upstream traffic (from the VMG to the ISP). If you change the value after you configure and enable budget control, the VMG resets the statistics.
Data Budget (kPackets)	Select this and specify how much downstream and/or upstream data (in k Packets) can be transmitted via the 3G connection within one month. Select Download/Upload to set a limit on the total traffic in both directions. Select Download to set a limit on the downstream traffic (from the ISP to the VMG). Select Upload to set a limit on the upstream traffic (from the VMG to the ISP). If you change the value after you configure and enable budget control, the VMG resets the statistics.
Reset all budget counters on	Select the date on which the VMG resets the budget every month. Select last if you want the VMG to reset the budget on the last day of the month. Select specific and enter the number of the date you want the VMG to reset the budget
Reset time and data budget counters	Click this button to reset the time and data budgets immediately. The count starts over with the 3G connection's full configured monthly time and data budgets. This does not affect the normal monthly budget restart; so if you configured the time and data budget counters to reset on the second day of the month and you use this button on the first, the time and data budget counters will still reset on the second.
Actions before over budget	Specify the actions the VMG takes before the time or data limit exceeds.
Enable % of time budget/data budget (Mbytes)/data budget (kPackets)	Select Enable and enter a number from 1 to 99 in the percentage fields. If you change the value after you configure and enable budget control, the VMG resets the statistics.
Actions when over budget	Specify the actions the VMG takes when the time or data limit is exceeded.
Current 3G connection	Select Keep to maintain an existing 3G connection or Drop to disconnect it.
Actions	
Enable Email Notification	Select this to enable the e-mail notification function. The VMG will e-mail you a notification when there over budget occurs.

Table 11 Network Setting > Broadband > 3G Backup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Mail Server	Select a mail server for the e-mail address specified below. If you do not select a mail server, e-mail notifications cannot be sent via e-mail. You must have configured a mail server already in the Maintenance > Email Notification screen.
Over Budget Email Title	Type a title that you want to be in the subject line of the e-mail notifications that the VMG sends.
Send Notification to Email	Notifications are sent to the e-mail address specified in this field. If this field is left blank, notifications cannot be sent via e-mail.
Interval	Enter the interval of how many minutes you want the VMG to e-mail you.
Enable Log	Select this to activate the logging function at the interval you set in this field.
Basic	Click this to hide the advanced settings of 3G backup.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the VMG.
Cancel	Click Cancel to return to the previous configuration.

6.4 The Advanced Screen

Use the Advanced screen to enable or disable ADSL over PTM, Annex M, DSL PhyR, and SRA (Seamless Rate Adaptation) functions. The VMG supports the PhyR retransmission scheme. PhyR is a retransmission scheme designed to provide protection against noise on the DSL line. It improves voice, video and data transmission resilience by utilizing a retransmission buffer.

ITU-T G.993.2 standard defines a wide range of settings for various parameters, some of which are encompassed in profiles as shown in the next table.

Table 12 VDSL Profiles

PROFILE	BANDWIDTH (MHZ)	NUMBER OF DOWNSTREAM CARRIERS	CARRIER BANDWIDTH (KHZ)	POWER (DBM)	MAX. DOWNSTREAM THROUGHPUT (MBIT/S)
8a	8.832	2048	4.3125	17.5	50
8b	8.832	2048	4.3125	20.5	50
8c	8.5	1972	4.3125	11.5	50
8d	8.832	2048	4.3125	14.5	50
12a	12	2783	4.3125	14.5	68
12b	12	2783	4.3125	14.5	68
17a	17.664	4096	4.3125	14.5	100
30a	30	3479	8.625	14.5	200

Click Network Setting > Broadband > Advanced to display the following screen.

Figure 25 Network Setting > Broadband > Advanced

DSL Capabilities	
PhyR US :	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
PhyR DS :	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable
Bitswap :	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable
SRA :	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable
ADSL Modulation	
PTM over ADSL :	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable
G.Dmt :	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable
G.lite :	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable
T1.413 :	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable
ADSL2 :	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable
AnnexL :	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable
ADSL2+ :	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable
AnnexM :	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
VDSL Profile	
8a Enabled	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable
8b Enabled	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable
8c Enabled	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable
8d Enabled	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable
12a Enabled	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable
12b Enabled	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable
17a Enabled	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable
US0	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable
<input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 13 Network Setting > Broadband > Advanced

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
PhyR US	Enable or disable PhyR US (upstream) for upstream transmission to the WAN. PhyR US should be enabled if data being transmitted upstream is sensitive to noise. However, enabling PhyR US can decrease the US line rate. Enabling or disabling PhyR will require the CPE to retrain. For PhyR to function, the DSLAM must also support PhyR and have it enabled.
PhyR DS	Enable or disable PhyR DS (downstream) for downstream transmission from the WAN. PhyR DS should be enabled if data being transmitted downstream is sensitive to noise. However, enabling PhyR DS can decrease the DS line rate. Enabling or disabling PhyR will require the CPE to retrain. For PhyR to function, the DSLAM must also support PhyR and have it enabled.
Bitswap	Select Enable to allow the VMG to adapt to line changes when you are using G.dmt. Bit-swapping is a way of keeping the line more stable by constantly monitoring and redistributing bits between channels.
SRA	Enable or disable Seamless Rate Adaption (SRA). Select Enable to have the VMG automatically adjust the connection's data rate according to line conditions without interrupting service.
ADSL Modulation	
PTM over ADSL:	Select Enable to use PTM over ADSL. Since PTM has less overhead than ATM, some ISPs use this for better performance.
G.Dmt:	ITU G.992.1 (better known as G.dmt) is an ITU standard for ADSL using discrete multitone modulation. G.dmt full-rate ADSL expands the usable bandwidth of existing copper telephone lines, delivering high-speed data communications at rates up to 8 Mbit/s downstream and 1.3 Mbit/s upstream.

Table 13 Network Setting > Broadband > Advanced (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
G.lite :	ITU G.992.2 (better known as G.lite) is an ITU standard for ADSL using discrete multitone modulation. G.lite does not strictly require the use of DSL filters, but like all variants of ADSL generally functions better with splitters.
T1.413 :	ANSI T1.413 is a technical standard that defines the requirements for the single asymmetric digital subscriber line (ADSL) for the interface between the telecommunications network and the customer installation in terms of their interaction and electrical characteristics.
ADSL2 :	It optionally extends the capability of basic ADSL in data rates to 12 Mbit/s downstream and, depending on Annex version, up to 3.5 Mbit/s upstream (with a mandatory capability of ADSL2 transceivers of 8 Mbit/s downstream and 800 kbit/s upstream).
AnnexL :	Annex L is an optional specification in the ITU-T ADSL2 recommendation G.992.3 titled Specific requirements for a Reach Extended ADSL2 (READSL2) system operating in the frequency band above POTS, therefore it is often referred to as Reach Extended ADSL2 or READSL2. The main difference between this specification and commonly deployed Annex A is the maximum distance that can be used. The power of the lower frequencies used for transmitting data is boosted up to increase the reach of this signal up to 7 kilometers (23,000 ft).
ADSL2+ :	ADSL2+ extends the capability of basic ADSL by doubling the number of downstream channels. The data rates can be as high as 24 Mbit/s downstream and up to 1.4 Mbit/s upstream depending on the distance from the DSLAM to the customer's premises.
AnnexM :	Annex M is an optional specification in ITU-T recommendations G.992.3 (ADSL2) and G.992.5 (ADSL2+), also referred to as ADSL2 M and ADSL2+ M. This specification extends the capability of commonly deployed Annex A by more than doubling the number of upstream bits. The data rates can be as high as 12 or 24 Mbit/s downstream and 3 Mbit/s upstream depending on the distance from the DSLAM to the customer's premises.
VDSL Profile	VDSL2 profiles differ in the width of the frequency band used to transmit the broadband signal. Profiles that use a wider frequency band can deliver higher maximum speeds.
8a, 8b, 8c, 8d, 12a, 12b, 17a, US0	The G.993.2 VDSL standard defines a wide range of profiles that can be used in different VDSL deployment settings, such as in a central office, a street cabinet or a building. The VMG must comply with at least one profile specified in G.993.2. but compliance with more than one profile is allowed.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the VMG.
Cancel	Click Cancel to return to the previous configuration.

6.5 The Ethernet WAN Screen

You can enable the fourth Ethernet LAN port to be an Ethernet WAN port in the Ethernet WAN screen. Click Network Setting > Broadband > Ethernet WAN to display the following screen.

Figure 26 Network Setting > Broadband > Ethernet WAN

You can convert your Ethernet LAN port 4 to be your Ethernet WAN port or convert your Ethernet WAN port to be the LAN port 5.

Active : Enable Disable

Notes:

1. Active Enable, the Ethernet Port is WAN Ethernet.
2. Active Disable, the Ethernet Port is LAN Ethernet.
3. Please don't connect Ethernet WAN cable and xDSL line at the same time.

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

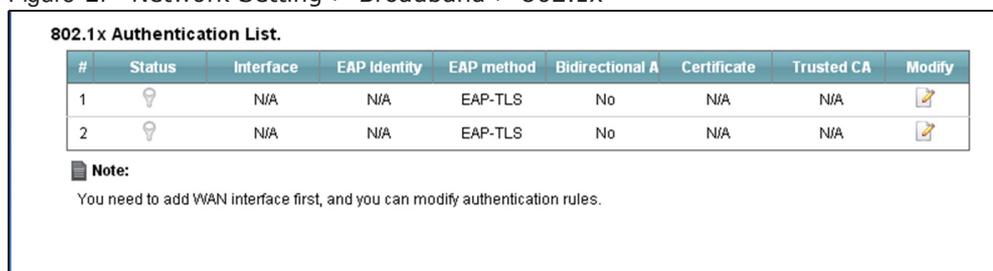
Table 14 Network Setting > Broadband > Ethernet WAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select Enable to convert the fourth Ethernet LAN port to the Ethernet WAN port. Otherwise, select Disable .
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the VMG.
Cancel	Click Cancel to return to the previous configuration.

6.6 The 802.1x Screen

You can view and configure the 802.1X authentication settings in the 802.1x screen. Click **Network Setting > Broadband > 802.1x** to display the following screen.

Figure 27 Network Setting > Broadband > 802.1x



802.1x Authentication List.								
#	Status	Interface	EAP Identity	EAP method	Bidirectional A	Certificate	Trusted CA	Modify
1		N/A	N/A	EAP-TLS	No	N/A	N/A	
2		N/A	N/A	EAP-TLS	No	N/A	N/A	

Note:
You need to add WAN interface first, and you can modify authentication rules.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 15 Network Setting > Broadband > 802.1x

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
#	This is the index number of the entry.
Status	This field displays whether the authentication is active or not. A yellow bulb signifies that this authentication is active. A gray bulb signifies that this authentication is not active.
Interface	This is the interface that uses the authentication. This displays N/A when there is no interface assigned.
EAP Identity	This shows the EAP identity of the authentication. This displays N/A when there is no EAP identity assigned.
EAP method	This shows the EAP method used in the authentication. This displays N/A when there is no EAP method assigned.
Bidirectional Authentication	This shows whether bidirectional authentication is allowed.
Certificate	This shows the certificate used for this authentication. This displays N/A when there is no certificate assigned.
Trusted CA	This shows the Trusted CA used for this authentication. This displays N/A when there is no Trusted CA assigned.
Modify	Click this icon to edit an item.

6.6.1 Modify 802.1X Settings

Use this screen to edit 802.1X authentication settings. Click the Edit icon next to the rule you want to edit. The screen shown next appears.

Figure 28 Network Setting > Broadband > 802.1x > Modify

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 16 Network Setting > Broadband > 802.1x: Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	This field allows you to activate/deactivate the authentication. Select this to enable the authentication. Clear this to disable this authentication without having to delete the entry.
Interface	Select an interface to which the authentication applies.
EAP Identity	Enter the EAP identity of the authentication.
EAP method	This is the EAP method used for this authentication.
Bidirectional Authentication	Select Enable to allow bidirectional authentication.
Certificate	Select the certificate you want to assign to the authentication. You need to import the certificate in the Security > Certificates > Local Certificates screen.
Trusted CA	Select the Trusted CA you want to assign to the authentication. You need to import the certificate in the Security > Certificates > Trusted CA screen.
OK	Click OK to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.

6.7 Technical Reference

The following section contains additional technical information about the VMG features described in this chapter.

Encapsulation

Be sure to use the encapsulation method required by your ISP. The VMG can work in bridge mode or routing mode. When the VMG is in routing mode, it supports the following methods.

IP over Ethernet

IP over Ethernet (IPoE) is an alternative to PPPoE. IP packets are being delivered across an Ethernet network, without using PPP encapsulation. They are routed between the Ethernet interface and the WAN interface and then formatted so that they can be understood in a bridged environment. For instance, it encapsulates routed Ethernet frames into bridged Ethernet cells.

PPP over ATM (PPPoA)

PPPoA stands for Point to Point Protocol over ATM Adaptation Layer 5 (AAL5). A PPPoA connection functions like a dial-up Internet connection. The VMG encapsulates the PPP session based on RFC1483 and sends it through an ATM PVC (Permanent Virtual Circuit) to the Internet Service Provider's (ISP) DSLAM (digital access multiplexer). Please refer to RFC 2364 for more information on PPPoA. Refer to RFC 1661 for more information on PPP.

PPP over Ethernet (PPPoE)

Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet (PPPoE) provides access control and billing functionality in a manner similar to dial-up services using PPP. PPPoE is an IETF standard (RFC 2516) specifying how a personal computer (PC) interacts with a broadband modem (DSL, cable, wireless, etc.) connection.

For the service provider, PPPoE offers an access and authentication method that works with existing access control systems (for example RADIUS).

One of the benefits of PPPoE is the ability to let you access one of multiple network services, a function known as dynamic service selection. This enables the service provider to easily create and offer new IP services for individuals.

Operationally, PPPoE saves significant effort for both you and the ISP or carrier, as it requires no specific configuration of the broadband modem at the customer site.

By implementing PPPoE directly on the VMG (rather than individual computers), the computers on the LAN do not need PPPoE software installed, since the VMG does that part of the task. Furthermore, with NAT, all of the LANs' computers will have access.

RFC 1483

RFC 1483 describes two methods for Multiprotocol Encapsulation over ATM Adaptation Layer 5 (AAL5). The first method allows multiplexing of multiple protocols over a single ATM virtual circuit (LLC-based multiplexing) and the second method assumes that each protocol is carried over a separate ATM virtual circuit (VC-based multiplexing). Please refer to RFC 1483 for more detailed information.

Multiplexing

There are two conventions to identify what protocols the virtual circuit (VC) is carrying. Be sure to use the multiplexing method required by your ISP.

VC-based Multiplexing

In this case, by prior mutual agreement, each protocol is assigned to a specific virtual circuit; for example, VC1 carries IP, etc. VC-based multiplexing may be dominant in environments where dynamic creation of large numbers of ATM VCs is fast and economical.

LLC-based Multiplexing

In this case one VC carries multiple protocols with protocol identifying information being contained in each packet header. Despite the extra bandwidth and processing overhead, this method may be advantageous if it is not practical to have a separate VC for each carried protocol, for example, if charging heavily depends on the number of simultaneous VCs.

Traffic Shaping

Traffic Shaping is an agreement between the carrier and the subscriber to regulate the average rate and fluctuations of data transmission over an ATM network. This agreement helps eliminate congestion, which is important for transmission of real time data such as audio and video connections.

Peak Cell Rate (PCR) is the maximum rate at which the sender can send cells. This parameter may be lower (but not higher) than the maximum line speed. 1 ATM cell is 53 bytes (424 bits), so a maximum speed of 832Kbps gives a maximum PCR of 1962 cells/sec. This rate is not guaranteed because it is dependent on the line speed.

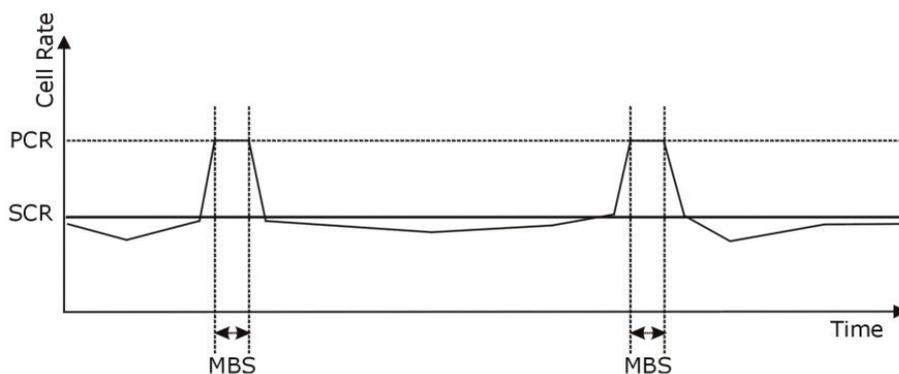
Sustained Cell Rate (SCR) is the mean cell rate of each bursty traffic source. It specifies the maximum average rate at which cells can be sent over the virtual connection. SCR may not be greater than the PCR.

Maximum Burst Size (MBS) is the maximum number of cells that can be sent at the PCR. After MBS is reached, cell rates fall below SCR until cell rate averages to the SCR again. At this time, more cells (up to the MBS) can be sent at the PCR again.

If the PCR, SCR or MBS is set to the default of "0", the system will assign a maximum value that correlates to your upstream line rate.

The following figure illustrates the relationship between PCR, SCR and MBS.

Figure 29 Example of Traffic Shaping



ATM Traffic Classes

These are the basic ATM traffic classes defined by the ATM Forum Traffic Management 4.0 Specification.

Constant Bit Rate (CBR)

Constant Bit Rate (CBR) provides fixed bandwidth that is always available even if no data is being sent. CBR traffic is generally time-sensitive (doesn't tolerate delay). CBR is used for connections that continuously require a specific amount of bandwidth. A PCR is specified and if traffic exceeds this rate, cells may be dropped. Examples of connections that need CBR would be high-resolution video and voice.

Variable Bit Rate (VBR)

The Variable Bit Rate (VBR) ATM traffic class is used with bursty connections. Connections that use the Variable Bit Rate (VBR) traffic class can be grouped into real time (VBR-RT) or non-real time (VBR-nRT) connections.

The VBR-RT (real-time Variable Bit Rate) type is used with bursty connections that require closely controlled delay and delay variation. It also provides a fixed amount of bandwidth (a PCR is specified) but is only available when data is being sent. An example of an VBR-RT connection would be video conferencing. Video conferencing requires real-time data transfers and the bandwidth requirement varies in proportion to the video image's changing dynamics.

The VBR-nRT (non real-time Variable Bit Rate) type is used with bursty connections that do not require closely controlled delay and delay variation. It is commonly used for "bursty" traffic typical on LANs. PCR and MBS define the burst levels, SCR defines the minimum level. An example of an VBR-nRT connection would be non-time sensitive data file transfers.

Unspecified Bit Rate (UBR)

The Unspecified Bit Rate (UBR) ATM traffic class is for bursty data transfers. However, UBR doesn't guarantee any bandwidth and only delivers traffic when the network has spare bandwidth. An example application is background file transfer.

IP Address Assignment

A static IP is a fixed IP that your ISP gives you. A dynamic IP is not fixed; the ISP assigns you a different one each time. The Single User Account feature can be enabled or disabled if you have either a dynamic or static IP. However the encapsulation method assigned influences your choices for IP address and default gateway.

Introduction to VLANs

A Virtual Local Area Network (VLAN) allows a physical network to be partitioned into multiple logical networks. Devices on a logical network belong to one group. A device can belong to more than one group. With VLAN, a device cannot directly talk to or hear from devices that are not in the same group(s); the traffic must first go through a router.

In Multi-Tenant Unit (MTU) applications, VLAN is vital in providing isolation and security among the subscribers. When properly configured, VLAN prevents one subscriber from accessing the network resources of another on the same LAN, thus a user will not see the printers and hard disks of another user in the same building.

VLAN also increases network performance by limiting broadcasts to a smaller and more manageable logical broadcast domain. In traditional switched environments, all broadcast packets go to each and every individual port. With VLAN, all broadcasts are confined to a specific broadcast domain.

Introduction to IEEE 802.1Q Tagged VLAN

A tagged VLAN uses an explicit tag (VLAN ID) in the MAC header to identify the VLAN membership of a frame across bridges - they are not confined to the switch on which they were created. The VLANs can be created statically by hand or dynamically through GVRP. The VLAN ID associates a frame with a specific VLAN and provides the information that switches need to process the frame across the network. A tagged frame is four bytes longer than an untagged frame and contains two bytes of TPID (Tag Protocol Identifier), residing within the type/length field of the Ethernet frame) and two bytes of TCI (Tag Control Information), starts after the source address field of the Ethernet frame).

The CFI (Canonical Format Indicator) is a single-bit flag, always set to zero for Ethernet switches. If a frame received at an Ethernet port has a CFI set to 1, then that frame should not be forwarded as it is to an untagged port. The remaining twelve bits define the VLAN ID, giving a possible maximum number of 4,096 VLANs. Note that user priority and VLAN ID are independent of each other. A frame with VID (VLAN Identifier) of null (0) is called a priority frame, meaning that only the priority level is significant and the default VID of the ingress port is given as the VID of the frame. Of the 4096 possible VIDs, a VID of 0 is used to identify priority frames and value 4095 (FFF) is reserved, so the maximum possible VLAN configurations are 4,094.

TPID	User Priority	CFI	VLAN ID
2 Bytes	3 Bits	1 Bit	12 Bits

Multicast

IP packets are transmitted in either one of two ways - Unicast (1 sender - 1 recipient) or Broadcast (1 sender - everybody on the network). Multicast delivers IP packets to a group of hosts on the network - not everybody and not just 1.

Internet Group Multicast Protocol (IGMP) is a network-layer protocol used to establish membership in a Multicast group - it is not used to carry user data. IGMP version 2 (RFC 2236) is an improvement over version 1 (RFC 1112) but IGMP version 1 is still in wide use. If you would like to read more detailed information about interoperability between IGMP version 2 and version 1, please see sections 4 and 5 of RFC 2236. The class D IP address is used to identify host groups and can be in the range 224.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.255. The address 224.0.0.0 is not assigned to any group and is used by IP multicast computers. The address 224.0.0.1 is used for query messages and is assigned to the permanent group of all IP hosts (including gateways). All hosts must join the 224.0.0.1 group in order to participate in IGMP. The address 224.0.0.2 is assigned to the multicast routers group.

At start up, the VMG queries all directly connected networks to gather group membership. After that, the VMG periodically updates this information.

DNS Server Address Assignment

Use Domain Name System (DNS) to map a domain name to its corresponding IP address and vice versa, for instance, the IP address of www.zyxel.com is 204.217.0.2. The DNS server is extremely

important because without it, you must know the IP address of a computer before you can access it.

The VMG can get the DNS server addresses in the following ways.

- 1 The ISP tells you the DNS server addresses, usually in the form of an information sheet, when you sign up. If your ISP gives you DNS server addresses, manually enter them in the DNS server fields.
- 2 If your ISP dynamically assigns the DNS server IP addresses (along with the VMG's WAN IP address), set the DNS server fields to get the DNS server address from the ISP.

IPv6 Addressing

The 128-bit IPv6 address is written as eight 16-bit hexadecimal blocks separated by colons (:). This is an example IPv6 address 2001:0db8:1a2b:0015:0000:0000:1a2f:0000.

IPv6 addresses can be abbreviated in two ways:

- Leading zeros in a block can be omitted. So 2001:0db8:1a2b:0015:0000:0000:1a2f:0000 can be written as 2001:db8:1a2b:15:0:0:1a2f:0.
- Any number of consecutive blocks of zeros can be replaced by a double colon. A double colon can only appear once in an IPv6 address. So 2001:0db8:0000:0000:1a2f:0000:0000:0015 can be written as 2001:0db8::1a2f:0000:0000:0015, 2001:0db8:0000:0000:1a2f::0015, 2001:db8::1a2f:0:0:15 or 2001:db8:0:0:1a2f::15.

IPv6 Prefix and Prefix Length

Similar to an IPv4 subnet mask, IPv6 uses an address prefix to represent the network address. An IPv6 prefix length specifies how many most significant bits (start from the left) in the address compose the network address. The prefix length is written as "/x" where x is a number. For example,

2001:db8:1a2b:15::1a2f:0/32

means that the first 32 bits (2001:db8) is the subnet prefix.

Wireless

7.1 Overview

This chapter describes the VMG's Network Setting > Wireless screens. Use these screens to set up your VMG's wireless connection.

7.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

This section describes the VMG's Wireless screens. Use these screens to set up your VMG's wireless connection.

- Use the General screen to enable the Wireless LAN, enter the SSID and select the wireless security mode ([Section 7.2 on page 91](#)).
- Use the Guest/More AP screen to set up multiple wireless networks on your VMG ([Section 7.3 on page 95](#)).
- Use the MAC Authentication screen to allow or deny wireless clients based on their MAC addresses from connecting to the VMG ([Section 7.4 on page 98](#)).
- Use the WPS screen to enable or disable WPS, view or generate a security PIN (Personal Identification Number) ([Section 7.5 on page 99](#)).
- Use the WMM screen to enable Wi-Fi MultiMedia (WMM) to ensure quality of service in wireless networks for multimedia applications ([Section 7.6 on page 101](#)).
- Use the WDS screen to set up a Wireless Distribution System, in which the VMG acts as a bridge with other ZyXEL access points ([Section 7.7 on page 102](#)).
- Use the Others screen to configure wireless advanced features, such as the RTS/CTS Threshold ([Section 7.8 on page 104](#)).
- Use the Channel Status screen to scan wireless LAN channel noises and view the results ([Section 7.9 on page 105](#)).

7.1.2 What You Need to Know

Wireless Basics

“Wireless” is essentially radio communication. In the same way that walkie-talkie radios send and receive information over the airwaves, wireless networking devices exchange information with one another. A wireless networking device is just like a radio that lets your computer exchange information with radios attached to other computers. Like walkie-talkies, most wireless networking devices operate at radio frequency bands that are open to the public and do not require a license to use. However, wireless networking is different from that of most traditional radio communications in that there are a number of wireless networking standards available with different methods of data encryption.

Finding Out More

See [Section 7.10 on page 106](#) for advanced technical information on wireless networks.

7.2 The General Screen

Use this screen to enable the Wireless LAN, enter the SSID and select the wireless security mode.

Note: If you are configuring the VMG from a computer connected to the wireless LAN and you change the VMG's SSID, channel or security settings, you will lose your wireless connection when you press **Apply** to confirm. You must then change the wireless settings of your computer to match the VMG's new settings.

Click **Network Setting > Wireless** to open the General screen.

Figure 30 Network Setting > Wireless > General

Wireless Network Setup

Band: 2.4GHz ▾

Wireless: Enable Disable (settings are invalid when disabled)

Channel: Auto ▾ Current: 8

Bandwidth: 40MHz ▾

Control Sideband: Lower ▾

(Lower = channels 1-9; Upper = channels 5-13; Choose the sideband of least interference for the best connection.)

Passphrase Type: None ▾

Wireless Network Settings

Wireless Network Name(SSID): ZyXEL_94E1

Max Clients: 32

Hide SSID

Multicast Forwarding

Max. Upstream Bandwidth: Kbps

Max. Downstream Bandwidth: Kbps

Note:

1. Max. Upstream Bandwidth: This field allow user configure the maximum bandwidth of this SSID to WAN.
2. Max. Downstream Bandwidth: This field allow user configure the maximum bandwidth of WAN to this SSID.
3. If Max. Upstream/Downstream Bandwidth is empty, the CPE sets the value automatically.

BSSID: 90:EF:68:D5:94:E1

Security Level



No Security

Basic

More Secure
(Recommended)



The following table describes the general wireless LAN labels in this screen.

Table 17 Network Setting > Wireless > General

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Wireless Network Setup	
Band	This shows the wireless band which this radio profile is using. 2.4GHz is the frequency used by IEEE 802.11b/g/n wireless clients while 5GHz is used by IEEE 802.11a/ac wireless clients.
Wireless	You can Enable or Disable the wireless LAN in this field.
Channel	Use Auto to have the VMG automatically determine a channel to use.
Bandwidth	Select whether the VMG uses a wireless channel width of 20MHz, 40MHz or 80MHz. A standard 20MHz channel offers transfer speeds of up to 150Mbps whereas a 40MHz channel uses two standard channels and offers speeds of up to 300 Mbps. 40MHz (channel bonding or dual channel) bonds two adjacent radio channels to increase throughput. The wireless clients must also support 40 MHz. It is often better to use the 20 MHz setting in a location where the environment hinders the wireless signal. An 80MHz channel groups adjacent 40MHz channels into pairs to increase bandwidth even higher. Select 20MHz if you want to lessen radio interference with other wireless devices in your neighborhood or the wireless clients do not support channel bonding.
Control Sideband	This is available for some regions when you select a specific channel and set the Bandwidth field to 40MHz. Set whether the control channel (set in the Channel field) should be in the Lower or Upper range of channel bands.
Passphrase Type	If you set security for the wireless LAN and have the VMG generate a password, the setting in this field determines how the VMG generates the password. Select None to set the VMG's password generation to not be based on a passphrase. Select Fixed to use a 16 character passphrase for generating a password. Select Variable to use a 16 to 63 character passphrase for generating a password.
Passphrase Key	For a fixed type passphrase enter 16 alphanumeric characters (0-9, A-Z, with no spaces). It must contain both letters and numbers and is case-sensitive. For a variable type passphrase enter 16 to 63 alphanumeric characters (0-9, A-Z, with no spaces). It must contain both letters and numbers and is case-sensitive.
Wireless Network Settings	
Wireless Network Name (SSID)	The SSID (Service Set IDentity) identifies the service set with which a wireless device is associated. Wireless devices associating to the access point (AP) must have the same SSID. Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 English keyboard characters) for the wireless LAN.
Max Clients	Specify the maximum number of clients that can connect to this network at the same time.
Hide SSID	Select this check box to hide the SSID in the outgoing beacon frame so a station cannot obtain the SSID through scanning using a site survey tool.
Multicast Forwarding	Select this check box to allow the VMG to convert wireless multicast traffic into wireless unicast traffic.
Max. Upstream Bandwidth	Specify the maximum rate for upstream wireless traffic to the WAN from this WLAN in kilobits per second (Kbps).
Max. Downstream Bandwidth	Specify the maximum rate for downstream wireless traffic to this WLAN from the WAN in kilobits per second (Kbps).
BSSID	This shows the MAC address of the wireless interface on the VMG when wireless LAN is enabled.
Security Level	

Table 17 Network Setting > Wireless > General (continued)

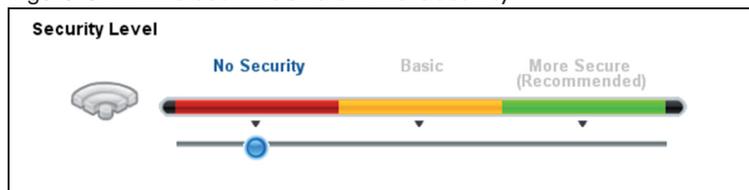
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Security Mode	Select Basic (WEP, 802.1X) or More Secure (WPA(2)-PSK) to add security on this wireless network. The wireless clients which want to associate to this network must have same wireless security settings as the VMG. When you select to use a security, additional options appears in this screen. Or you can select No Security to allow any client to associate this network without any data encryption or authentication. See the following sections for more details about this field.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to restore your previously saved settings.

7.2.1 No Security

Select No Security to allow wireless stations to communicate with the access points without any data encryption or authentication.

Note: If you do not enable any wireless security on your VMG, your network is accessible to any wireless networking device that is within range.

Figure 31 Wireless > General: No Security



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 18 Wireless > General: No Security

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Security Level	Choose No Security to allow all wireless connections without data encryption or authentication.

7.2.2 Basic (WEP Encryption)

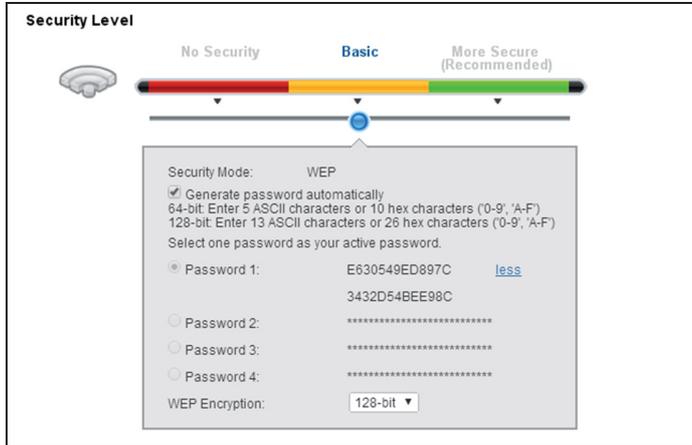
WEP encryption scrambles the data transmitted between the wireless stations and the access points (AP) to keep network communications private. Both the wireless stations and the access points must use the same WEP key.

Note: WEP is extremely insecure. Its encryption can be broken by an attacker, using widely-available software. It is strongly recommended that you use a more effective security mechanism. Use the strongest security mechanism that all the wireless devices in your network support. For example, use WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK if all your wireless devices support it, or use WPA or WPA2 if your wireless devices support it and you have a RADIUS server. If your wireless devices support nothing stronger than WEP, use the highest encryption level available.

Your VMG allows you to configure up to four 64-bit or 128-bit WEP keys but only one key can be enabled at any one time.

In order to configure and enable WEP encryption, click Network Setting > Wireless to display the General screen, then select Basic as the security level.

Figure 32 Wireless > General: Basic (WEP)



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 19 Wireless > General: Basic (WEP)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Security Level	Select Basic to enable WEP data encryption.
Generate password automatically	Select this option to have the VMG automatically generate a password. The password field will not be configurable when you select this option.
Password 1~4	The password (WEP keys) are used to encrypt data. Both the VMG and the wireless stations must use the same password (WEP key) for data transmission. If you chose 64-bit WEP, then enter any 5 ASCII characters or 10 hexadecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F"). If you chose 128-bit WEP, then enter 13 ASCII characters or 26 hexadecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F"). You must configure at least one password, only one password can be activated at any one time.
more.../less	Click more... to show more fields in this section. Click less to hide them.
WEP Encryption	Select 64-bits or 128-bits. This dictates the length of the security key that the network is going to use.

7.2.3 More Secure (WPA(2)-PSK)

The WPA-PSK security mode provides both improved data encryption and user authentication over WEP. Using a Pre-Shared Key (PSK), both the VMG and the connecting client share a common password in order to validate the connection. This type of encryption, while robust, is not as strong as WPA, WPA2 or even WPA2-PSK. The WPA2-PSK security mode is a newer, more robust version of the WPA encryption standard. It offers slightly better security, although the use of PSK makes it less robust than it could be.

Click Network Setting > Wireless to display the General screen. Select More Secure as the security level. Then select WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK from the Security Mode list.

Figure 33 Wireless > General: More Secure: WPA(2)-PSK

Security Level

No Security Basic **More Secure (Recommended)**

Security Mode: WPA2-PSK

Generate password automatically

Enter 8-63 characters (a-z, A-Z, 0-9, '-', '_' and '.'), other characters are not allowed.

Password: 432D54BEE9 [less](#)

8C

WPA-PSK Compatible: Enable Disable

Encryption: TKIP+AES

Group Key Update Timer: 1800 sec

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 20 Wireless > General: More Secure: WPA(2)-PSK

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Security Level	Select More Secure to enable WPA(2)-PSK data encryption.
Security Mode	Select WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK from the drop-down list box.
Generate password automatically	Select this option to have the VMG automatically generate a password. The password field will not be configurable when you select this option.
Password	The encryption mechanisms used for WPA(2) and WPA(2)-PSK are the same. The only difference between the two is that WPA(2)-PSK uses a simple common password, instead of user-specific credentials. If you did not select Generate password automatically, you can manually type a pre-shared key from 8 to 64 case-sensitive keyboard characters.
more.../less	Click more... to show more fields in this section. Click less to hide them.
WPA-PSK Compatible	This field appears when you choose WPA-PSK2 as the Security Mode. Check this field to allow wireless devices using WPA-PSK security mode to connect to your VMG. The VMG supports WPA-PSK and WPA2-PSK simultaneously.
Encryption	Select the encryption type (TKIP, AES or TKIP+AES) for data encryption. Select TKIP if your wireless clients can all use TKIP. Select AES if your wireless clients can all use AES. Select TKIP+AES to allow the wireless clients to use either TKIP or AES.
Group Key Update Timer	The Group Key Update Timer is the rate at which the RADIUS server sends a new group key out to all clients.

7.3 The Guest/More AP Screen

This screen allows you to enable and configure multiple Basic Service Sets (BSSs) on the VMG.

Click Network Setting > Wireless > Guest/More AP. The following screen displays.

Figure 34 Network Setting > Wireless > Guest/More AP

#	Status	SSID	Security	Guest WLAN	Modify
2		ZyXEL_Guest	WPA2-Personal	External Guest	
3		ZyXEL_Guest	WPA2-Personal	External Guest	
4		ZyXEL_Guest	WPA2-Personal	External Guest	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 21 Network Setting > Wireless > Guest/More AP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
#	This is the index number of the entry.
Status	This field indicates whether this SSID is active. A yellow bulb signifies that this SSID is active. A gray bulb signifies that this SSID is not active.
SSID	An SSID profile is the set of parameters relating to one of the VMG's BSSs. The SSID (Service Set IDentifier) identifies the Service Set with which a wireless device is associated. This field displays the name of the wireless profile on the network. When a wireless client scans for an AP to associate with, this is the name that is broadcast and seen in the wireless client utility.
Security	This field indicates the security mode of the SSID profile.
Guest WLAN	This displays if the guest WLAN function has been enabled for this WLAN. If Home Guest displays, clients can connect to each other directly. If External Guest displays, clients are blocked from connecting to each other directly. N/A displays if guest WLAN is disabled.
Modify	Click the Edit icon to configure the SSID profile.

7.3.1 Edit Guest/More AP

Use this screen to edit an SSID profile. Click the Edit icon next to an SSID in the Guest/More AP screen. The following screen displays.

Figure 35 Network Setting > Wireless > Guest/More AP > Edit

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 22 Network Setting > Wireless > Guest/More AP > Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Wireless Network Setup	
Wireless	You can Enable or Disable the wireless LAN in this field.
Passphrase Type	Passphrase type cannot be changed. The default is None.
Wireless Network Settings	
Wireless Network Name (SSID)	The SSID (Service Set Identity) identifies the service set with which a wireless device is associated. Wireless devices associating to the access point (AP) must have the same SSID. Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 English keyboard characters) for the wireless LAN.
Max clients	Specify the maximum number of clients that can connect to this network at the same time.
Hide SSID	Select this check box to hide the SSID in the outgoing beacon frame so a station cannot obtain the SSID through scanning using a site survey tool.
Enhanced Multicast Forwarding	Select this check box to allow the VMG to convert wireless multicast traffic into wireless unicast traffic.
Guest WLAN	Select this to create Guest WLANs for home and external clients. Select the WLAN type in the Access Scenario field.

Table 22 Network Setting > Wireless > Guest/More AP > Edit (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Access Scenario	If you select Home Guest, clients can connect to each other directly. If you select External Guest, clients are blocked from connecting to each other directly.
Max. Upstream Bandwidth	Specify the maximum rate for upstream wireless traffic to the WAN from this WLAN in kilobits per second (Kbps).
Max. Downstream Bandwidth	Specify the maximum rate for downstream wireless traffic to this WLAN from the WAN in kilobits per second (Kbps).
Security Level	
Security Mode	Select Basic (WEP, 802.1X) or More Secure (WPA(2)-PSK) to add security on this wireless network. The wireless clients which want to associate to this network must have same wireless security settings as the VMG. After you select to use a security, additional options appears in this screen. Or you can select No Security to allow any client to associate this network without any data encryption or authentication. See Section 7.2.1 on page 93 for more details about this field.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.

7.4 MAC Authentication

This screen allows you to configure the ZyXEL Device to give exclusive access to specific devices (Allow) or exclude specific devices from accessing the ZyXEL Device (Deny). Every Ethernet device has a unique MAC (Media Access Control) address. The MAC address is assigned at the factory and consists of six pairs of hexadecimal characters, for example, 00:A0:C5:00:00:02. You need to know the MAC addresses of the devices to configure this screen.

Use this screen to view your VMG's MAC filter settings and add new MAC filter rules. Click Network Setting > Wireless > MAC Authentication. The screen appears as shown.

Figure 36 Wireless > MAC Authentication

MAC Authentication can allow or block the access of the device(s) to your wireless network. Edit the list in the table to decide the rule of the access on device(s).

General

SSID: ZyXEL_A06F

MAC Restrict Mode: Allow

MAC address List

#	MAC Address	Modify
1	00-AC-AA-AD-00-AB	

Add new MAC address

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 23 Wireless > MAC Authentication

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
SSID	Select the SSID for which you want to configure MAC filter settings.
MAC Restrict Mode	Define the filter action for the list of MAC addresses in the MAC Address table. Select Disable to turn off MAC filtering. Select Deny to block access to the VMG. MAC addresses not listed will be allowed to access the VMG. Select Allow to permit access to the VMG. MAC addresses not listed will be denied access to the VMG.
Add new MAC address	Click this if you want to add a new MAC address entry to the MAC filter list below. Enter the MAC addresses of the wireless devices that are allowed or denied access to the VMG in these address fields. Enter the MAC addresses in a valid MAC address format, that is, six hexadecimal character pairs, for example, 12:34:56:78:9a:bc.
#	This is the index number of the entry.
MAC Address	This is the MAC addresses of the wireless devices that are allowed or denied access to the VMG.
Modify	Click the Edit icon and type the MAC address of the peer device in a valid MAC address format (six hexadecimal character pairs, for example 12:34:56:78:9a:bc). Click the Delete icon to delete the entry.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.

7.5 The WPS Screen

Use this screen to configure WiFi Protected Setup (WPS) on your VMG.

WPS allows you to quickly set up a wireless network with strong security, without having to configure security settings manually. Set up each WPS connection between two devices. Both devices must support WPS. See [Section 7.10.9.3 on page 115](#) for more information about WPS.

Note: The VMG applies the security settings of the SSID1 profile (see [Section 7.2 on page 91](#)). If you want to use the WPS feature, make sure you have set the security mode of SSID1 to WPA2-PSK or No Security.

Click Network Setting > Wireless > WPS. The following screen displays. Select Enable and click Apply to activate the WPS function. Then you can configure the WPS settings in this screen.

Figure 37 Network Setting > Wireless > WPS

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 24 Network Setting > Wireless > WPS

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
General	
WPS	Select Enable to activate WPS on this VMG.
Add a new device with WPS Method	
Method 1	Use this section to set up a WPS wireless network using Push Button Configuration (PBC). Select Enable and click Apply to activate WPS method 1 on the VMG.
WPS	Click this button to add another WPS-enabled wireless device (within wireless range of the VMG) to your wireless network. This button may either be a physical button on the outside of device, or a menu button similar to the WPS button on this screen. Note: You must press the other wireless device's WPS button within two minutes of pressing this button.
Method 2	Use this section to set up a WPS wireless network by entering the PIN of the client into the VMG. Select Enable and click Apply to activate WPS method 2 on the VMG.
Register	Enter the PIN of the device that you are setting up a WPS connection with and click Register to authenticate and add the wireless device to your wireless network. You can find the PIN either on the outside of the device, or by checking the device's settings. Note: You must also activate WPS on that device within two minutes to have it present its PIN to the VMG.
Method 3	Use this section to set up a WPS wireless network by entering the PIN of the VMG into the client. Select Enable and click Apply to activate WPS method 3 on the VMG.
Release Configuration	The default WPS status is configured. Click this button to remove all configured wireless and wireless security settings for WPS connections on the VMG.

Table 24 Network Setting > Wireless > WPS (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Generate New PIN Number	If this method has been enabled, the PIN (Personal Identification Number) of the VMG is shown here. Enter this PIN in the configuration utility of the device you want to connect to using WPS. The PIN is not necessary when you use WPS push-button method. Click the Generate New PIN button to have the VMG create a new PIN.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to restore your previously saved settings.

7.6 The WMM Screen

Use this screen to enable Wi-Fi MultiMedia (WMM) and WMM Power Save in wireless networks for multimedia applications.

Click Network Setting > Wireless > WMM. The following screen displays.

Figure 38 Network Setting > Wireless > WMM

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 25 Network Setting > Wireless > WMM

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
2.4GHz WMM Setup / 5GHz WMM Setup	
WMM of SSID1~4	Select On to have the VMG automatically give the wireless network (SSIDx) a priority level according to the ToS value in the IP header of packets it sends. WMM QoS (Wifi MultiMedia Quality of Service) gives high priority to voice and video, which makes them run more smoothly.
WMM Automatic Power Save Delivery (APSD)	Select this option to extend the battery life of your mobile devices (especially useful for small devices that are running multimedia applications). The VMG goes to sleep mode to save power when it is not transmitting data. The AP buffers the packets sent to the VMG until the VMG "wakes up". The VMG wakes up periodically to check for incoming data. Note: This works only if the wireless device to which the VMG is connected also supports this feature.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to restore your previously saved settings.

7.7 The WDS Screen

An AP using the Wireless Distribution System (WDS) can function as a wireless network bridge allowing you to wirelessly connect two wired network segments. The WDS screen allows you to configure the VMG to connect to two or more APs wirelessly when WDS is enabled.

Use this screen to set up your WDS (Wireless Distribution System) links between the VMG and other wireless APs. You need to know the MAC address of the peer device. Once the security settings of peer sides match one another, the connection between devices is made.

Note: WDS security is independent of the security settings between the VMG and any wireless clients.

Note: At the time of writing, WDS is compatible with other ZyXEL APs only. Not all models support WDS links. Check your other AP's documentation.

Click Network Setting > Wireless > WDS. The following screen displays.

Figure 39 Network Setting > Wireless > WDS

2.4GHz Wireless Bridge Setup

AP Mode: ▼

Bridge Restrict: Enable Disable

Remote Bridges MAC Address

#	MAC Address	Modify	Scan
1			
2			
3			
4			

Note:

1. The WDS function only works when the security mode is set to No Security, WEP, WPA-PSK and WPA2-PSK.
2. The WDS connection security mode is based on the settings configured in the Wireless > General screen.
3. The WDS function only works with the first SSID.
4. If the AP mode is Wireless Bridge, WPS will be disabled.
5. The SSID should be the same in both WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK security modes.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 26 Network Setting > Wireless > WDS

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
2.4GHz Wireless Bridge Setup	
AP Mode	Select the operating mode for your VMG. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Access Point - The VMG functions as a bridge and access point simultaneously. • Wireless Bridge - The VMG acts as a wireless network bridge and establishes wireless links with other APs. In this mode, clients cannot connect to the VMG wirelessly.
Bridge Restrict	This field is available only when you set operating mode to Access Point. Select Enabled to turn on WDS and enter the peer device's MAC address manually in the table below. Select Disable to turn off WDS.
Remote Bridge MAC Address	You can enter the MAC address of the peer device by clicking the Edit icon under Modify.
#	This is the index number of the entry.

Table 26 Network Setting > Wireless > WDS (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
MAC Address	This shows the MAC address of the peer device. You can connect to up to 4 peer devices.
Modify	Click the Edit icon and type the MAC address of the peer device in a valid MAC address format (six hexadecimal character pairs, for example 12:34:56:78:9a:bc). Click the Delete icon to remove this entry.
Scan	Click the Scan icon to search and display the available APs within range.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to restore your previously saved settings.

7.7.1 WDS Scan

You can click the Scan icon in Wireless > WDS to have the VMG automatically search and display the available APs within range. Select an AP and click Apply to have the VMG establish a wireless link with the selected wireless device.

Figure 40 WDS: Scan



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 27 WDS: Scan

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Wireless Bridge Scan Setup	
Refresh	Click Refresh to update the table.
#	This is the index number of the entry.
SSID	This shows the SSID of the available wireless device within range.
BSSID	This shows the MAC address of the available wireless device within range.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to restore your previously saved settings.

7.8 The Others Screen

Use this screen to configure advanced wireless settings. Click Network Setting > Wireless > Others. The screen appears as shown.

See [Section 7.10.2 on page 108](#) for detailed definitions of the terms listed in this screen.

Figure 41 Network Setting > Wireless > Others

RTS/CTS Threshold :	<input type="text" value="2347"/>
Fragmentation Threshold :	<input type="text" value="2346"/>
Auto Channel Timer :	<input type="text" value="0"/> min
Output Power :	<input type="text" value="100%"/> ▼
Beacon Interval :	<input type="text" value="100"/> ms
DTIM Interval :DTIM Interval :	<input type="text" value="1"/> ms
802.11 Mode :	<input type="text" value="802.11b/g/n Mixed"/> ▼
802.11 Protection :	<input type="text" value="Off"/> ▼
RIFS Advertisement	<input type="text" value="Auto"/> ▼
Preamble :	<input type="text" value="Long"/> ▼
RX Chain Power Save	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable
OBSS Coexistence	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
XPress™ Technology :	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable
WPS 2.0 :	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable
<input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 28 Network Setting > Wireless > Others

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
RTS/CTS Threshold	Data with its frame size larger than this value will perform the RTS (Request To Send)/CTS (Clear To Send) handshake. Enter a value between 0 and 2347.
Fragmentation Threshold	This is the maximum data fragment size that can be sent. Enter a value between 256 and 2346.
Auto Channel Timer	If you set the channel to Auto in the Network Setting > Wireless > General screen, specify the interval in minutes for how often the VMG scans for the best channel. Enter 0 to disable the periodical scan.
Output Power	Set the output power of the VMG. If there is a high density of APs in an area, decrease the output power to reduce interference with other APs. Select one of the following: 20%, 40%, 60%, 80% or 100%.
Beacon Interval	When a wirelessly networked device sends a beacon, it includes with it a beacon interval. This specifies the time period before the device sends the beacon again. The interval tells receiving devices on the network how long they can wait in low power mode before waking up to handle the beacon. This value can be set from 50ms to 1000ms. A high value helps save current consumption of the access point.
DTIM Interval	Delivery Traffic Indication Message (DTIM) is the time period after which broadcast and multicast packets are transmitted to mobile clients in the Power Saving mode. A high DTIM value can cause clients to lose connectivity with the network. This value can be set from 1 to 255.

Table 28 Network Setting > Wireless > Others (continued)

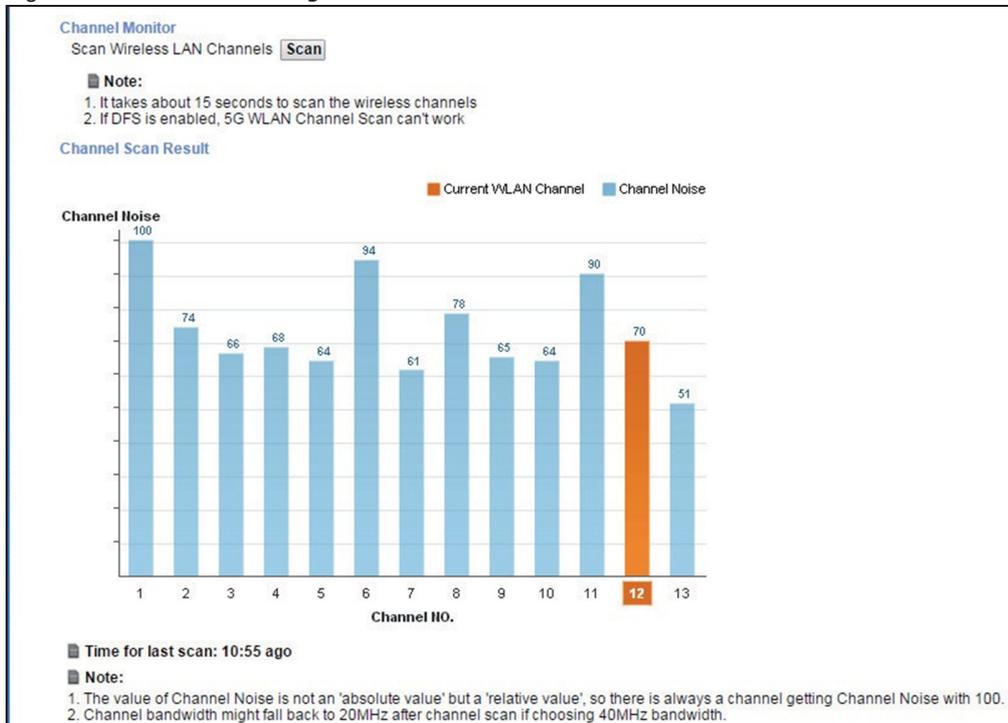
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
802.11 Mode	<p>Select 802.11b Only to allow only IEEE 802.11b compliant WLAN devices to associate with the VMG.</p> <p>Select 802.11g Only to allow only IEEE 802.11g compliant WLAN devices to associate with the VMG.</p> <p>Select 802.11n Only to allow only IEEE 802.11n compliant WLAN devices to associate with the VMG.</p> <p>Select 802.11b/g Mixed to allow either IEEE 802.11b or IEEE 802.11g compliant WLAN devices to associate with the VMG. The transmission rate of your VMG might be reduced.</p> <p>Select 802.11b/g/n Mixed to allow IEEE 802.11b, IEEE 802.11g or IEEE802.11n compliant WLAN devices to associate with the VMG. The transmission rate of your VMG might be reduced.</p>
802.11 Protection	<p>Enabling this feature can help prevent collisions in mixed-mode networks (networks with both IEEE 802.11b and IEEE 802.11g traffic).</p> <p>Select Auto to have the wireless devices transmit data after a RTS/CTS handshake. This helps improve IEEE 802.11g performance.</p> <p>Select Off to disable 802.11 protection. The transmission rate of your VMG might be reduced in a mixed-mode network.</p> <p>This field displays Off and is not configurable when you set 802.11 Mode to 802.11b Only.</p>
RIFS Advertisement	Select Auto to enable the Reduced Inter-frame Spacing (RIFS) feature. It improves the Device's performance by reducing the amount of dead time required between OFDM transmissions. Select Off to disable the feature.
Preamble	<p>Select a preamble type from the drop-down list box. Choices are Long or Short. See Section 7.10.7 on page 112 for more information.</p> <p>This field is configurable only when you set 802.11 Mode to 802.11b.</p>
RX Chain Power Save	Select Enable to activate the RX Chain Power Save feature. It turns off one of the Receive chains to save power when it is not in use. Select Disabled to disable this feature.
OBSS Coexistence	Select Enable to allow the coexistence of 20 MHz and 40 MHz Overlapping Basic Service Sets (OBSS) in wireless local area networks. Select Disabled to disable this feature.
XPress™ Technology	Select Enable for higher speeds, especially if you have both IEEE 802.11b and IEEE 802.11g wireless clients. The wireless clients do not have to support XPress™ Technology, although the performance enhancement is greater if they do. Select Disabled to disable this feature.
WPS 2.0	Select Enable to support WPS 2.0 which enhances WPS security and flexibility on configuration. Select Disabled to disable this feature.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to restore your previously saved settings.

7.9 The Channel Status Screen

Use the **Channel Status** screen to scan wireless LAN channel noises and view the results. Click **Network Setting > Wireless > Channel Status**. The screen appears as shown. Click **Scan** to scan the wireless LAN channels. You can view the results in the **Channel Scan Result** section.

Note: The Scan button only works when the VMG uses 20MHz for the wireless channel width. You can go to the Network Setting > Wireless > General screen, click the more link, and then change the channel width setting in the Bandwidth field.

Figure 42 Network Setting > Wireless > Channel Status



7.10 Technical Reference

This section discusses wireless LANs in depth. For more information, see [Appendix B on page 308](#).

7.10.1 Wireless Network Overview

Wireless networks consist of wireless clients, access points and bridges.

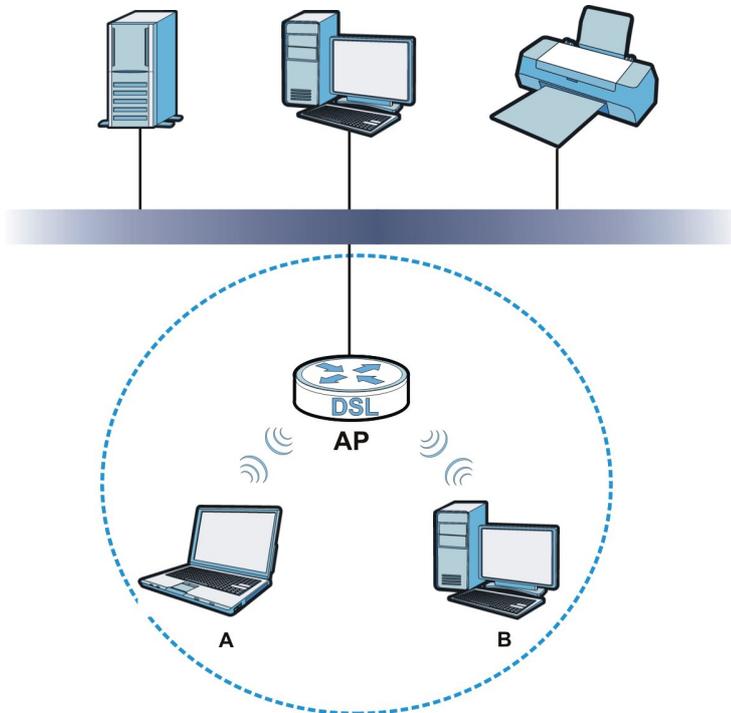
- A wireless client is a radio connected to a user's computer.
- An access point is a radio with a wired connection to a network, which can connect with numerous wireless clients and let them access the network.
- A bridge is a radio that relays communications between access points and wireless clients, extending a network's range.

Traditionally, a wireless network operates in one of two ways.

- An "infrastructure" type of network has one or more access points and one or more wireless clients. The wireless clients connect to the access points.
- An "ad-hoc" type of network is one in which there is no access point. Wireless clients connect to one another in order to exchange information.

The following figure provides an example of a wireless network.

Figure 43 Example of a Wireless Network



The wireless network is the part in the blue circle. In this wireless network, devices A and B use the access point (AP) to interact with the other devices (such as the printer) or with the Internet. Your VMG is the AP.

Every wireless network must follow these basic guidelines.

- Every device in the same wireless network must use the same SSID.
The SSID is the name of the wireless network. It stands for Service Set Identifier.
- If two wireless networks overlap, they should use a different channel.
Like radio stations or television channels, each wireless network uses a specific channel, or frequency, to send and receive information.
- Every device in the same wireless network must use security compatible with the AP.
Security stops unauthorized devices from using the wireless network. It can also protect the information that is sent in the wireless network.

Radio Channels

In the radio spectrum, there are certain frequency bands allocated for unlicensed, civilian use. For the purposes of wireless networking, these bands are divided into numerous channels. This allows a variety of networks to exist in the same place without interfering with one another. When you create a network, you must select a channel to use.

Since the available unlicensed spectrum varies from one country to another, the number of available channels also varies.

7.10.2 Additional Wireless Terms

The following table describes some wireless network terms and acronyms used in the VMG's Web Configurator.

Table 29 Additional Wireless Terms

TERM	DESCRIPTION
RTS/CTS Threshold	<p>In a wireless network which covers a large area, wireless devices are sometimes not aware of each other's presence. This may cause them to send information to the AP at the same time and result in information colliding and not getting through.</p> <p>By setting this value lower than the default value, the wireless devices must sometimes get permission to send information to the VMG. The lower the value, the more often the devices must get permission.</p> <p>If this value is greater than the fragmentation threshold value (see below), then wireless devices never have to get permission to send information to the VMG.</p>
Preamble	A preamble affects the timing in your wireless network. There are two preamble modes: long and short. If a device uses a different preamble mode than the VMG does, it cannot communicate with the VMG.
Authentication	The process of verifying whether a wireless device is allowed to use the wireless network.
Fragmentation Threshold	A small fragmentation threshold is recommended for busy networks, while a larger threshold provides faster performance if the network is not very busy.

7.10.3 Wireless Security Overview

By their nature, radio communications are simple to intercept. For wireless data networks, this means that anyone within range of a wireless network without security can not only read the data passing over the airwaves, but also join the network. Once an unauthorized person has access to the network, he or she can steal information or introduce malware (malicious software) intended to compromise the network. For these reasons, a variety of security systems have been developed to ensure that only authorized people can use a wireless data network, or understand the data carried on it.

These security standards do two things. First, they authenticate. This means that only people presenting the right credentials (often a username and password, or a "key" phrase) can access the network. Second, they encrypt. This means that the information sent over the air is encoded. Only people with the code key can understand the information, and only people who have been authenticated are given the code key.

These security standards vary in effectiveness. Some can be broken, such as the old Wired Equivalent Protocol (WEP). Using WEP is better than using no security at all, but it will not keep a determined attacker out. Other security standards are secure in themselves but can be broken if a user does not use them properly. For example, the WPA-PSK security standard is very secure if you use a long key which is difficult for an attacker's software to guess - for example, a twenty-letter long string of apparently random numbers and letters - but it is not very secure if you use a short key which is very easy to guess - for example, a three-letter word from the dictionary.

Because of the damage that can be done by a malicious attacker, it's not just people who have sensitive information on their network who should use security. Everybody who uses any wireless network should ensure that effective security is in place.

A good way to come up with effective security keys, passwords and so on is to use obscure information that you personally will easily remember, and to enter it in a way that appears random

and does not include real words. For example, if your mother owns a 1970 Dodge Challenger and her favorite movie is Vanishing Point (which you know was made in 1971) you could use "70dodchal71vanpoi" as your security key.

The following sections introduce different types of wireless security you can set up in the wireless network.

7.10.3.1 SSID

Normally, the VMG acts like a beacon and regularly broadcasts the SSID in the area. You can hide the SSID instead, in which case the VMG does not broadcast the SSID. In addition, you should change the default SSID to something that is difficult to guess.

This type of security is fairly weak, however, because there are ways for unauthorized wireless devices to get the SSID. In addition, unauthorized wireless devices can still see the information that is sent in the wireless network.

7.10.3.2 MAC Address Filter

Every device that can use a wireless network has a unique identification number, called a MAC address.¹ A MAC address is usually written using twelve hexadecimal characters²; for example, 00A0C5000002 or 00:A0:C5:00:00:02. To get the MAC address for each device in the wireless network, see the device's User's Guide or other documentation.

You can use the MAC address filter to tell the VMG which devices are allowed or not allowed to use the wireless network. If a device is allowed to use the wireless network, it still has to have the correct information (SSID, channel, and security). If a device is not allowed to use the wireless network, it does not matter if it has the correct information.

This type of security does not protect the information that is sent in the wireless network. Furthermore, there are ways for unauthorized wireless devices to get the MAC address of an authorized device. Then, they can use that MAC address to use the wireless network.

7.10.3.3 User Authentication

Authentication is the process of verifying whether a wireless device is allowed to use the wireless network. You can make every user log in to the wireless network before using it. However, every device in the wireless network has to support IEEE 802.1x to do this.

For wireless networks, you can store the user names and passwords for each user in a RADIUS server. This is a server used in businesses more than in homes. If you do not have a RADIUS server, you cannot set up user names and passwords for your users.

Unauthorized wireless devices can still see the information that is sent in the wireless network, even if they cannot use the wireless network. Furthermore, there are ways for unauthorized wireless users to get a valid user name and password. Then, they can use that user name and password to use the wireless network.

1. Some wireless devices, such as scanners, can detect wireless networks but cannot use wireless networks. These kinds of wireless devices might not have MAC addresses.

2. Hexadecimal characters are 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, A, B, C, D, E, and F.

7.10.3.4 Encryption

Wireless networks can use encryption to protect the information that is sent in the wireless network. Encryption is like a secret code. If you do not know the secret code, you cannot understand the message.

The types of encryption you can choose depend on the type of authentication. (See [Section 7.10.3.3 on page 109](#) for information about this.)

Table 30 Types of Encryption for Each Type of Authentication

	NO AUTHENTICATION	RADIUS SERVER
Weakest	No Security	WPA
	Static WEP	
	WPA-PSK	
Strongest	WPA2-PSK	WPA2

For example, if the wireless network has a RADIUS server, you can choose WPA or WPA2. If users do not log in to the wireless network, you can choose no encryption, Static WEP, WPA-PSK, or WPA2-PSK.

Usually, you should set up the strongest encryption that every device in the wireless network supports. For example, suppose you have a wireless network with the VMG and you do not have a RADIUS server. Therefore, there is no authentication. Suppose the wireless network has two devices. Device A only supports WEP, and device B supports WEP and WPA. Therefore, you should set up Static WEP in the wireless network.

Note: It is recommended that wireless networks use WPA-PSK, WPA, or stronger encryption. The other types of encryption are better than none at all, but it is still possible for unauthorized wireless devices to figure out the original information pretty quickly.

When you select WPA2 or WPA2-PSK in your VMG, you can also select an option (WPA compatible) to support WPA as well. In this case, if some of the devices support WPA and some support WPA2, you should set up WPA2-PSK or WPA2 (depending on the type of wireless network login) and select the WPA compatible option in the VMG.

Many types of encryption use a key to protect the information in the wireless network. The longer the key, the stronger the encryption. Every device in the wireless network must have the same key.

7.10.4 Signal Problems

Because wireless networks are radio networks, their signals are subject to limitations of distance, interference and absorption.

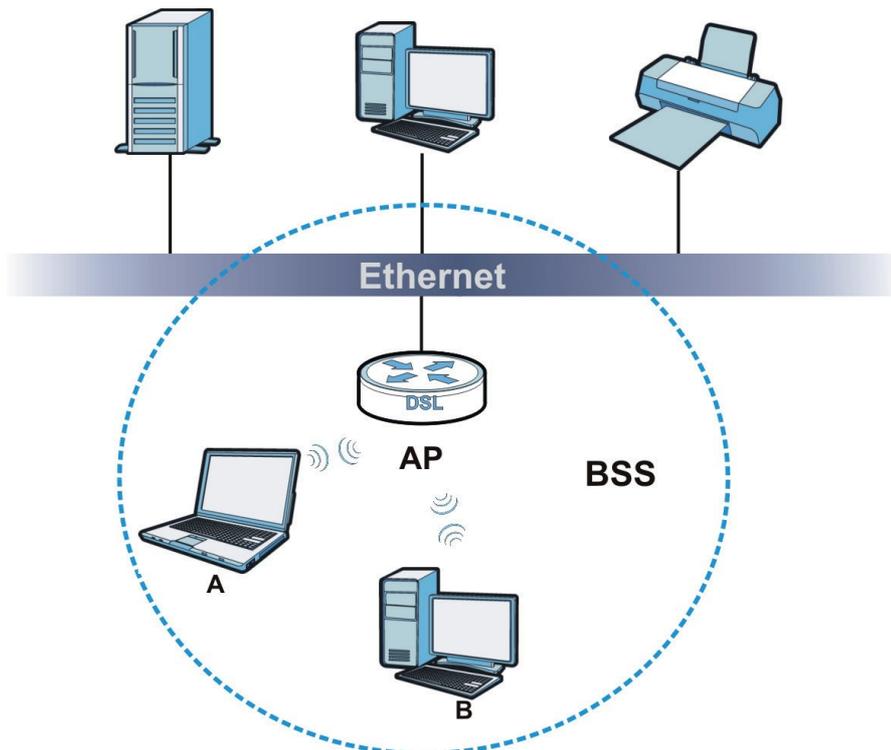
Problems with distance occur when the two radios are too far apart. Problems with interference occur when other radio waves interrupt the data signal. Interference may come from other radio transmissions, such as military or air traffic control communications, or from machines that are coincidental emitters such as electric motors or microwaves. Problems with absorption occur when physical objects (such as thick walls) are between the two radios, muffling the signal.

7.10.5 BSS

A Basic Service Set (BSS) exists when all communications between wireless stations or between a wireless station and a wired network client go through one access point (AP).

Intra-BSS traffic is traffic between wireless stations in the BSS. When Intra-BSS traffic blocking is disabled, wireless station A and B can access the wired network and communicate with each other. When Intra-BSS traffic blocking is enabled, wireless station A and B can still access the wired network but cannot communicate with each other.

Figure 44 Basic Service set



7.10.6 MBSSID

Traditionally, you need to use different APs to configure different Basic Service Sets (BSSs). As well as the cost of buying extra APs, there is also the possibility of channel interference. The VMG's MBSSID (Multiple Basic Service Set Identifier) function allows you to use one access point to provide several BSSs simultaneously. You can then assign varying QoS priorities and/or security modes to different SSIDs.

Wireless devices can use different BSSIDs to associate with the same AP.

7.10.6.1 Notes on Multiple BSSs

- A maximum of eight BSSs are allowed on one AP simultaneously.
- You must use different keys for different BSSs. If two wireless devices have different BSSIDs (they are in different BSSs), but have the same keys, they may hear each other's communications (but not communicate with each other).

- MBSSID should not replace but rather be used in conjunction with 802.1x security.

7.10.7 Preamble Type

Preamble is used to signal that data is coming to the receiver. Short and long refer to the length of the synchronization field in a packet.

Short preamble increases performance as less time sending preamble means more time for sending data. All IEEE 802.11 compliant wireless adapters support long preamble, but not all support short preamble.

Use long preamble if you are unsure what preamble mode other wireless devices on the network support, and to provide more reliable communications in busy wireless networks.

Use short preamble if you are sure all wireless devices on the network support it, and to provide more efficient communications.

Use the dynamic setting to automatically use short preamble when all wireless devices on the network support it, otherwise the VMG uses long preamble.

Note: The wireless devices MUST use the same preamble mode in order to communicate.

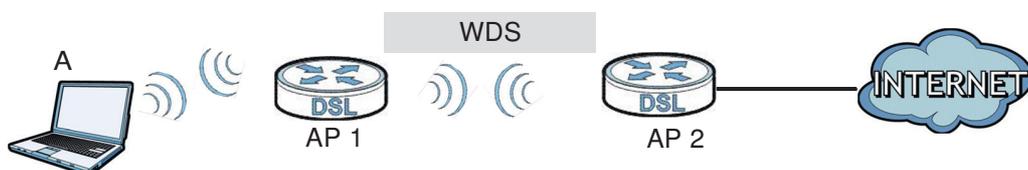
7.10.8 Wireless Distribution System (WDS)

The VMG can act as a wireless network bridge and establish WDS (Wireless Distribution System) links with other APs. You need to know the MAC addresses of the APs you want to link to. Once the security settings of peer sides match one another, the connection between devices is made.

At the time of writing, WDS security is compatible with other ZyXEL access points only. Refer to your other access point's documentation for details.

The following figure illustrates how WDS link works between APs. Notebook computer A is a wireless client connecting to access point AP 1. AP 1 has no wired Internet connection, but it can establish a WDS link with access point AP 2, which has a wired Internet connection. When AP 1 has a WDS link with AP 2, the notebook computer can access the Internet through AP 2.

Figure 45 WDS Link Example



7.10.9 WiFi Protected Setup (WPS)

Your VMG supports WiFi Protected Setup (WPS), which is an easy way to set up a secure wireless network. WPS is an industry standard specification, defined by the WiFi Alliance.

WPS allows you to quickly set up a wireless network with strong security, without having to configure security settings manually. Each WPS connection works between two devices. Both devices must support WPS (check each device's documentation to make sure).

Depending on the devices you have, you can either press a button (on the device itself, or in its configuration utility) or enter a PIN (a unique Personal Identification Number that allows one device to authenticate the other) in each of the two devices. When WPS is activated on a device, it has two minutes to find another device that also has WPS activated. Then, the two devices connect and set up a secure network by themselves.

7.10.9.1 Push Button Configuration

WPS Push Button Configuration (PBC) is initiated by pressing a button on each WPS-enabled device, and allowing them to connect automatically. You do not need to enter any information.

Not every WPS-enabled device has a physical WPS button. Some may have a WPS PBC button in their configuration utilities instead of or in addition to the physical button.

Take the following steps to set up WPS using the button.

- 1 Ensure that the two devices you want to set up are within wireless range of one another.
- 2 Look for a WPS button on each device. If the device does not have one, log into its configuration utility and locate the button (see the device's User's Guide for how to do this - for the VMG, see [Section 7.6 on page 101](#)).
- 3 Press the button on one of the devices (it doesn't matter which). For the VMG you must press the WPS button for more than three seconds.
- 4 Within two minutes, press the button on the other device. The registrar sends the network name (SSID) and security key through an secure connection to the enrollee.

If you need to make sure that WPS worked, check the list of associated wireless clients in the AP's configuration utility. If you see the wireless client in the list, WPS was successful.

7.10.9.2 PIN Configuration

Each WPS-enabled device has its own PIN (Personal Identification Number). This may either be static (it cannot be changed) or dynamic (in some devices you can generate a new PIN by clicking on a button in the configuration interface).

Use the PIN method instead of the push-button configuration (PBC) method if you want to ensure that the connection is established between the devices you specify, not just the first two devices to activate WPS in range of each other. However, you need to log into the configuration interfaces of both devices to use the PIN method.

When you use the PIN method, you must enter the PIN from one device (usually the wireless client) into the second device (usually the Access Point or wireless router). Then, when WPS is activated on the first device, it presents its PIN to the second device. If the PIN matches, one device sends the network and security information to the other, allowing it to join the network.

Take the following steps to set up a WPS connection between an access point or wireless router (referred to here as the AP) and a client device using the PIN method.

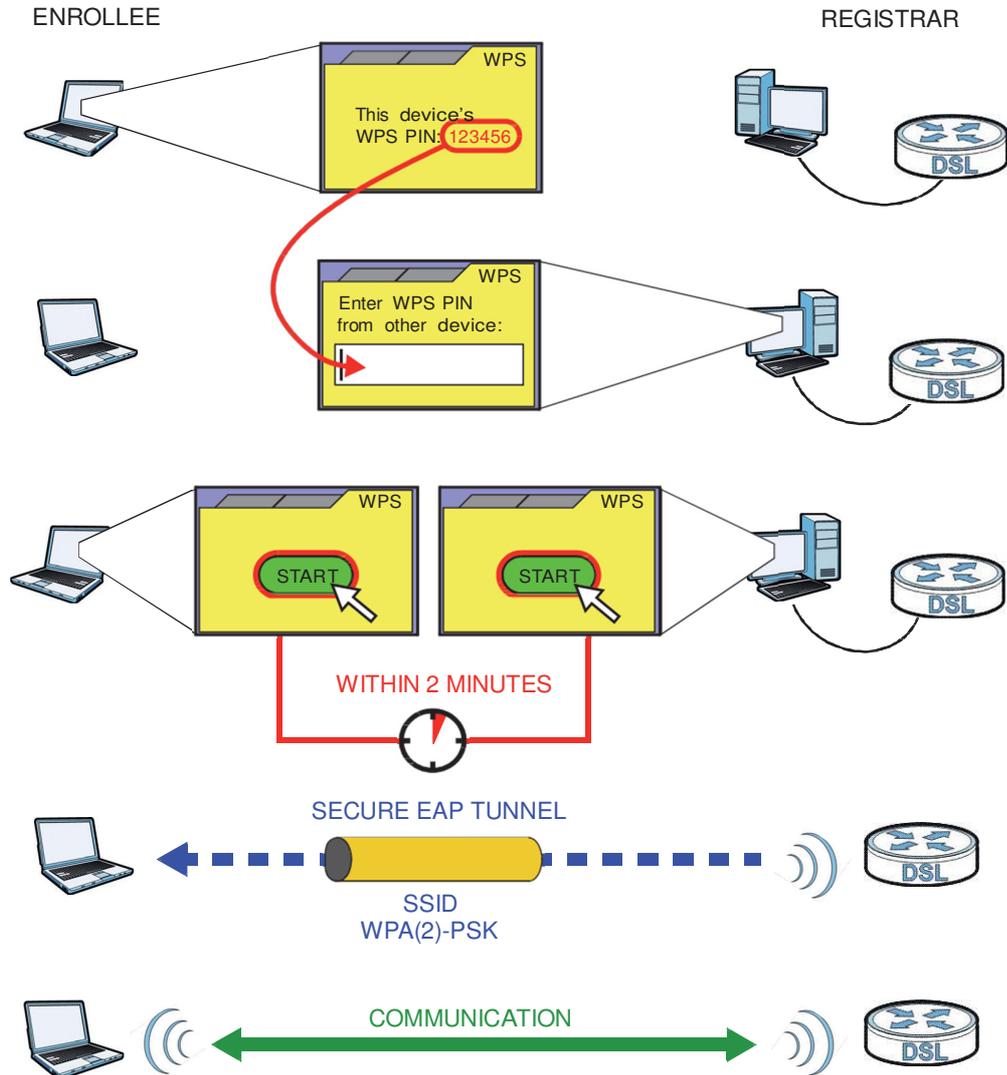
- 1 Ensure WPS is enabled on both devices.
- 2 Access the WPS section of the AP's configuration interface. See the device's User's Guide for how to do this.

- 3 Look for the client's WPS PIN; it will be displayed either on the device, or in the WPS section of the client's configuration interface (see the device's User's Guide for how to find the WPS PIN - for the VMG, see [Section 7.5 on page 99](#)).
- 4 Enter the client's PIN in the AP's configuration interface.
- 5 If the client device's configuration interface has an area for entering another device's PIN, you can either enter the client's PIN in the AP, or enter the AP's PIN in the client - it does not matter which.
- 6 Start WPS on both devices within two minutes.
- 7 Use the configuration utility to activate WPS, not the push-button on the device itself.
- 8 On a computer connected to the wireless client, try to connect to the Internet. If you can connect, WPS was successful.

If you cannot connect, check the list of associated wireless clients in the AP's configuration utility. If you see the wireless client in the list, WPS was successful.

The following figure shows a WPS-enabled wireless client (installed in a notebook computer) connecting to the WPS-enabled AP via the PIN method.

Figure 46 Example WPS Process: PIN Method

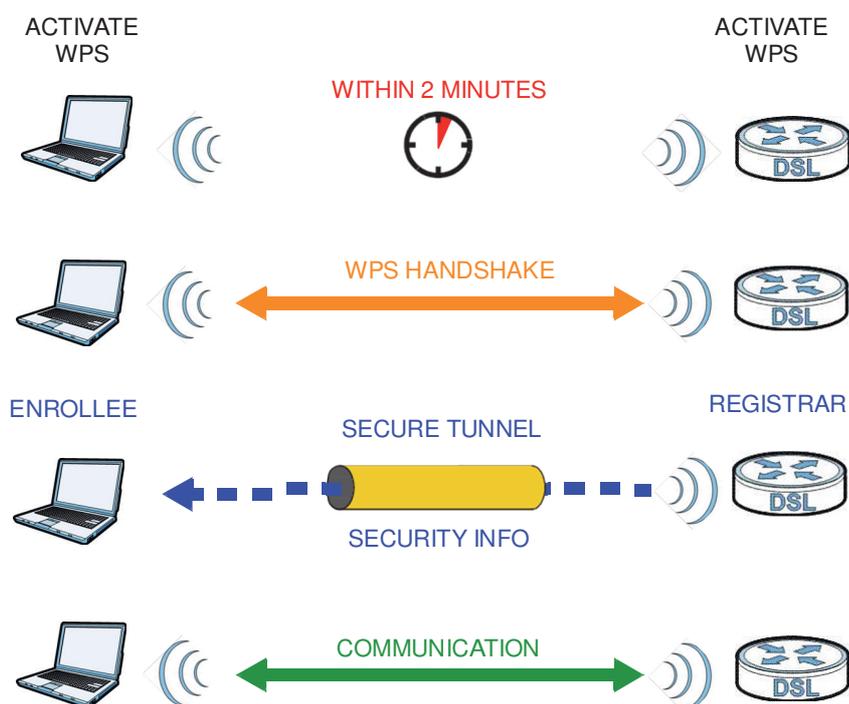


7.10.9.3 How WPS Works

When two WPS-enabled devices connect, each device must assume a specific role. One device acts as the registrar (the device that supplies network and security settings) and the other device acts as the enrollee (the device that receives network and security settings). The registrar creates a secure EAP (Extensible Authentication Protocol) tunnel and sends the network name (SSID) and the WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK pre-shared key to the enrollee. Whether WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK is used depends on the standards supported by the devices. If the registrar is already part of a network, it sends the existing information. If not, it generates the SSID and WPA(2)-PSK randomly.

The following figure shows a WPS-enabled client (installed in a notebook computer) connecting to a WPS-enabled access point.

Figure 47 How WPS works



The roles of registrar and enrollee last only as long as the WPS setup process is active (two minutes). The next time you use WPS, a different device can be the registrar if necessary.

The WPS connection process is like a handshake; only two devices participate in each WPS transaction. If you want to add more devices you should repeat the process with one of the existing networked devices and the new device.

Note that the access point (AP) is not always the registrar, and the wireless client is not always the enrollee. All WPS-certified APs can be a registrar, and so can some WPS-enabled wireless clients.

By default, a WPS device is "unconfigured". This means that it is not part of an existing network and can act as either enrollee or registrar (if it supports both functions). If the registrar is unconfigured, the security settings it transmits to the enrollee are randomly-generated. Once a WPS-enabled device has connected to another device using WPS, it becomes "configured". A configured wireless client can still act as enrollee or registrar in subsequent WPS connections, but a configured access point can no longer act as enrollee. It will be the registrar in all subsequent WPS connections in which it is involved. If you want a configured AP to act as an enrollee, you must reset it to its factory defaults.

7.10.9.4 Example WPS Network Setup

This section shows how security settings are distributed in an example WPS setup.

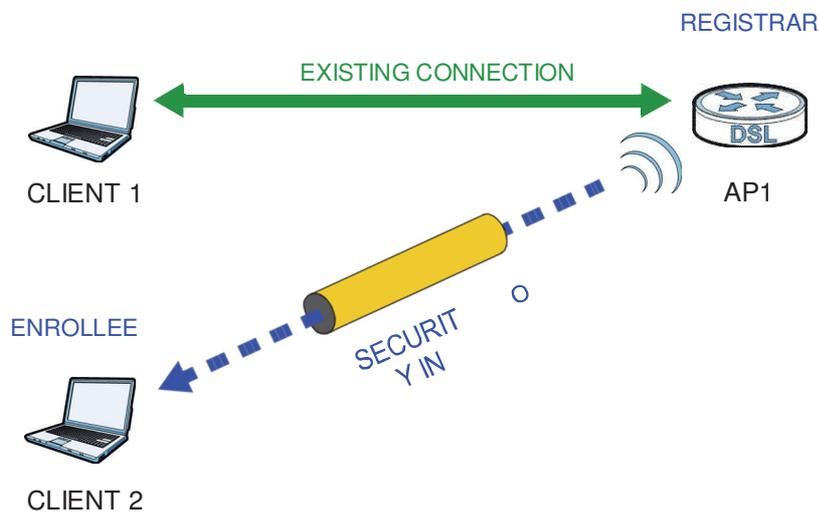
The following figure shows an example network. In step 1, both AP1 and Client 1 are unconfigured. When WPS is activated on both, they perform the handshake. In this example, AP1 is the registrar, and Client 1 is the enrollee. The registrar randomly generates the security information to set up the network, since it is unconfigured and has no existing information.

Figure 48 WPS: Example Network Step 1



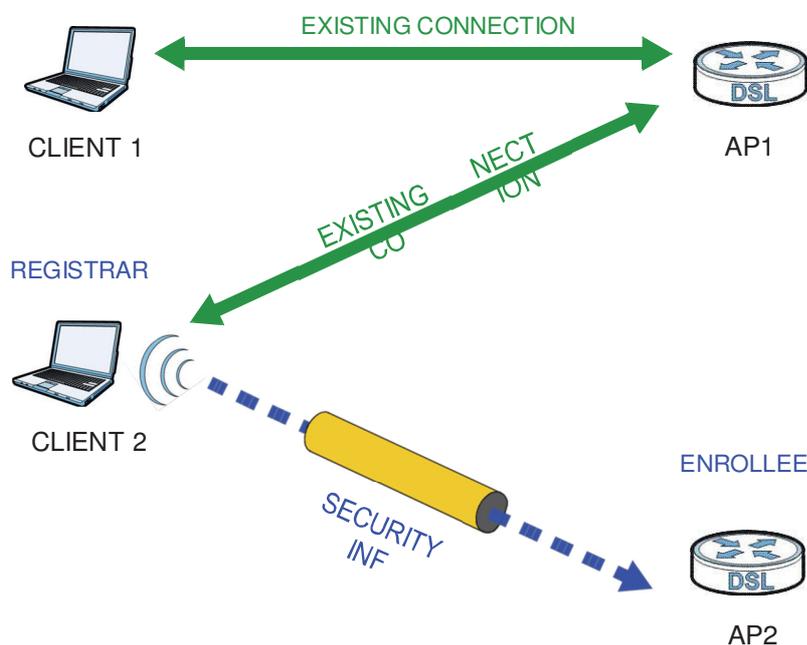
In step 2, you add another wireless client to the network. You know that Client 1 supports registrar mode, but it is better to use AP1 for the WPS handshake with the new client since you must connect to the access point anyway in order to use the network. In this case, AP1 must be the registrar, since it is configured (it already has security information for the network). AP1 supplies the existing security information to Client 2.

Figure 49 WPS: Example Network Step 2



In step 3, you add another access point (AP2) to your network. AP2 is out of range of AP1, so you cannot use AP1 for the WPS handshake with the new access point. However, you know that Client 2 supports the registrar function, so you use it to perform the WPS handshake instead.

Figure 50 WPS: Example Network Step 3



7.10.9.5 Limitations of WPS

WPS has some limitations of which you should be aware.

- WPS works in Infrastructure networks only (where an AP and a wireless client communicate). It does not work in Ad-Hoc networks (where there is no AP).
- When you use WPS, it works between two devices only. You cannot enroll multiple devices simultaneously, you must enroll one after the other.

For instance, if you have two enrollees and one registrar you must set up the first enrollee (by pressing the WPS button on the registrar and the first enrollee, for example), then check that it successfully enrolled, then set up the second device in the same way.

- WPS works only with other WPS-enabled devices. However, you can still add non-WPS devices to a network you already set up using WPS.

WPS works by automatically issuing a randomly-generated WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK pre-shared key from the registrar device to the enrollee devices. Whether the network uses WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK depends on the device. You can check the configuration interface of the registrar device to discover the key the network is using (if the device supports this feature). Then, you can enter the key into the non-WPS device and join the network as normal (the non-WPS device must also support WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK).

- When you use the PBC method, there is a short period (from the moment you press the button on one device to the moment you press the button on the other device) when any WPS-enabled device could join the network. This is because the registrar has no way of identifying the "correct" enrollee, and cannot differentiate between your enrollee and a rogue device. This is a possible way for a hacker to gain access to a network.

You can easily check to see if this has happened. WPS works between only two devices simultaneously, so if another device has enrolled your device will be unable to enroll, and will not have access to the network. If this happens, open the access point's configuration interface and look at the list of associated clients (usually displayed by MAC address). It does not matter if the

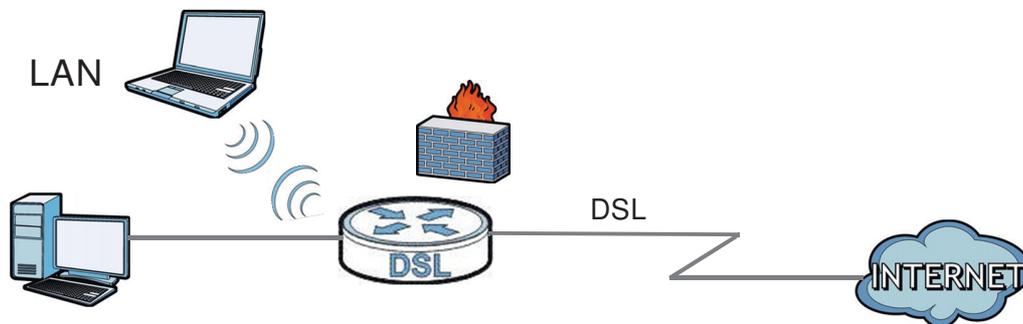
access point is the WPS registrar, the enrollee, or was not involved in the WPS handshake; a rogue device must still associate with the access point to gain access to the network. Check the MAC addresses of your wireless clients (usually printed on a label on the bottom of the device). If there is an unknown MAC address you can remove it or reset the AP.

Home Networking

8.1 Overview

A Local Area Network (LAN) is a shared communication system to which many networking devices are connected. It is usually located in one immediate area such as a building or floor of a building.

Use the LAN screens to help you configure a LAN DHCP server and manage IP addresses.



8.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- Use the LAN Setup screen to set the LAN IP address, subnet mask, and DHCP settings of your VMG ([Section 8.2 on page 122](#)).
- Use the Static DHCP screen to assign IP addresses on the LAN to specific individual computers based on their MAC Addresses ([Section 8.3 on page 126](#)).
- Use the UPnP screen to enable UPnP and UPnP NAT traversal on the VMG ([Section 8.4 on page 127](#)).
- Use the Additional Subnet screen to configure IP alias and public static IP ([Section 8.5 on page 129](#)).
- Use the STB Vendor ID screen to configure the Vendor IDs of the connected Set Top Box (STB) devices, which have the VMG automatically create static DHCP entries for the STB devices when they request IP addresses ([Section 8.6 on page 131](#)).
- Use the Wake on Lan screen to remotely turn on a device on the network. ([Section 8.7 on page 131](#)).
- Use the TFTP Server Name screen to identify a TFTP server for configuration file download using DHCP option 66. ([Section 8.8 on page 132](#)).

8.1.2 What You Need To Know

8.1.2.1 About LAN

IP Address

IP addresses identify individual devices on a network. Every networking device (including computers, servers, routers, printers, etc.) needs an IP address to communicate across the network. These networking devices are also known as hosts.

Subnet Mask

Subnet masks determine the maximum number of possible hosts on a network. You can also use subnet masks to divide one network into multiple sub-networks.

DHCP

A DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) server can assign your VMG an IP address, subnet mask, DNS and other routing information when it's turned on.

DNS

DNS (Domain Name System) is for mapping a domain name to its corresponding IP address and vice versa. The DNS server is extremely important because without it, you must know the IP address of a networking device before you can access it.

RADVD (Router Advertisement Daemon)

When an IPv6 host sends a Router Solicitation (RS) request to discover the available routers, RADVD with Router Advertisement (RA) messages in response to the request. It specifies the minimum and maximum intervals of RA broadcasts. RA messages containing the address prefix. IPv6 hosts can be generated with the IPv6 prefix an IPv6 address.

8.1.2.2 About UPnP

Identifying UPnP Devices

UPnP hardware is identified as an icon in the Network Connections folder (Windows XP). Each UPnP compatible device installed on your network will appear as a separate icon. Selecting the icon of a UPnP device will allow you to access the information and properties of that device.

NAT Traversal

UPnP NAT traversal automates the process of allowing an application to operate through NAT. UPnP network devices can automatically configure network addressing, announce their presence in the network to other UPnP devices and enable exchange of simple product and service descriptions. NAT traversal allows the following:

- Dynamic port mapping
- Learning public IP addresses

- Assigning lease times to mappings

Windows Messenger is an example of an application that supports NAT traversal and UPnP.

See the [Chapter 11 on page 160](#) for more information on NAT.

Cautions with UPnP

The automated nature of NAT traversal applications in establishing their own services and opening firewall ports may present network security issues. Network information and configuration may also be obtained and modified by users in some network environments.

When a UPnP device joins a network, it announces its presence with a multicast message. For security reasons, the VMG allows multicast messages on the LAN only.

All UPnP-enabled devices may communicate freely with each other without additional configuration. Disable UPnP if this is not your intention.

UPnP and ZyXEL

ZyXEL has achieved UPnP certification from the Universal Plug and Play Forum UPnP™ Implementers Corp. (UIC). ZyXEL's UPnP implementation supports Internet Gateway Device (IGD) 1.0.

See [Section 8.4.1 on page 128](#) for examples of installing and using UPnP.

Finding Out More

See [Section 8.9 on page 132](#) for technical background information on LANs.

8.1.3 Before You Begin

Find out the MAC addresses of your network devices if you intend to add them to the DHCP Client List screen.

8.2 The LAN Setup Screen

Use this screen to set the Local Area Network IP address and subnet mask of your VMG. Click **Network Setting > Home Networking** to open the LAN Setup screen.

Follow these steps to configure your LAN settings.

- 1 Enter an IP address into the **IP Address** field. The IP address must be in dotted decimal notation. This will become the IP address of your VMG.
- 2 Enter the IP subnet mask into the **IP Subnet Mask** field. Unless instructed otherwise it is best to leave this alone, the configurator will automatically compute a subnet mask based upon the IP address you entered.

- 3 Click **Apply** to save your settings.

Figure 51 Network Setting > Home Networking > LAN Setup

The screenshot shows the LAN Setup configuration page with the following settings:

- Interface Group:** Group Name: Default
- LAN IP Setup:** IP Address: 192.168.1.1, Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0
- IGMP Snooping:** Status: Enable IGMP Snooping, IGMP Mode: Standard Mode, Blocking Mode
- DHCP Server State:** DHCP: Enable, Disable, DHCP Relay
- IP Addressing Values:** Beginning IP Address: 192.168.1.2, Ending IP Address: 192.168.1.254, Auto reserve IP for the same host: Enable
- DHCP Server Lease Time:** 1 Days, 0 Hours, 0 Minutes
- DNS Values:** DNS: DNS Proxy, Static, From ISP
- LAN IPv6 Mode Setup:** IPv6 State: Enable, Disable
- Link Local Address Type:** EUJ64, Manual
- Lan Global Identifier Type:** EUJ64, Manual
- LAN IPv6 Address Setup:** Delegate prefix from WAN, Static
- MLD Snooping:** Status: Enable MLD Snooping
- LAN IPv6 Address Assign Setup:** Stateless
- LAN IPv6 DNS Assign Setup:** From DHCPv6 Server
- DHCPv6 Configuration:** DHCPv6 State: DHCPv6 Server
- IPv6 Router Advertisement State:** RADVD State: Disable
- IPv6 DNS Values:** IPv6 DNS Server 1: From ISP, IPv6 DNS Server 2: From ISP, IPv6 DNS Server 3: From ISP
- DNS Query Scenario:** IPv4/IPv6 DNS Server

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 31 Network Setting > Home Networking > LAN Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Interface Group	
Group Name	Select the interface group name for which you want to configure LAN settings. See Chapter 15 on page 184 for how to create a new interface group.
LAN IP Setup	
IPv4 Address	Enter the LAN IPv4 IP address you want to assign to your VMG in dotted decimal notation, for example, 192.168.1.1 (factory default).
Subnet Mask/ Prefix Length	Type the subnet mask of your network in dotted decimal notation, for example 255.255.255.0 (factory default). Your VMG automatically computes the subnet mask based on the IP Address you enter, so do not change this field unless you are instructed to do so.
IGMP Snooping	
Status	Select the Enable IGMP Snooping checkbox to allows the VMG to passively learn multicast group.

Table 31 Network Setting > Home Networking > LAN Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IGMP Mode	Select Standard Mode to have the VMG forward multicast packets to a port that joins the multicast group and broadcast unknown multicast packets from the WAN to all LAN ports. Select Blocking Mode to have the VMG block all unknown multicast packets from the WAN.
DHCP Server State	
DHCP	Select Enable to have the VMG act as a DHCP server or DHCP relay agent. Select Disable to stop the DHCP server on the VMG. Select DHCP Relay to have the VMG forward DHCP request to the DHCP server.
DHCP Relay Server Address	This field is only available when you select DHCP Relay in the DHCP field.
IPv4 Address	Enter the IPv4 IP address of the actual remote DHCP server in this field.
IP Addressing Values	This field is only available when you select Enable in the DHCP field.
Beginning IP Address	This field specifies the first of the contiguous addresses in the IP address pool.
Ending IP Address	This field specifies the last of the contiguous addresses in the IP address pool.
Auto reserve IP for the same host	Select Enable to have the VMG record DHCP IP addresses with the MAC addresses the IP addresses are assigned to. The VMG assigns the same IP address to the same MAC address when the host requests an IP address again through DHCP.
DHCP Server Lease Time	This is the period of time DHCP-assigned addresses is used. DHCP automatically assigns IP addresses to clients when they log in. DHCP centralizes IP address management on central computers that run the DHCP server program. DHCP leases addresses, for a period of time, which means that past addresses are "recycled" and made available for future reassignment to other systems. This field is only available when you select Enable in the DHCP field.
Days/Hours/Minutes	Enter the lease time of the DHCP server.
DNS Values	This field is only available when you select Enable in the DHCP field.
DNS	Select the type of service that you are registered for from your DNS service provider (From ISP). Select DNS Proxy if you have the DNS proxy service. The VMG redirects clients' DNS queries to a DNS server for resolving domain names. Select Static if you have the Static DNS service.
LAN IPv6 Mode Setup	
IPv6 State	Select Enable to activate the IPv6 mode and configure IPv6 settings on the VMG.
Link Local Address Type	
EUI64	Select this to have the VMG generate an interface ID for the LAN interface's link-local address using the EUI-64 format.
Manual	Select this to manually enter an interface ID for the LAN interface's link-local address.
Lan Global Identifier Type	
EUI64	Select this to have the VMG generate an interface ID using the EUI-64 format for its global address .
Manual	Select this to manually enter an interface ID for the LAN interface's global IPv6 address.
LAN IPv6 Address Setup	
Delegate prefix from WAN	Select this option to automatically obtain an IPv6 network prefix from the service provider or an uplink router.

Table 31 Network Setting > Home Networking > LAN Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Static	Select this option to configure a fixed IPv6 address for the VMG's LAN IPv6 address.
MLD Snooping	Multicast Listener Discovery (MLD) allows an IPv6 switch or router to discover the presence of MLD hosts who wish to receive multicast packets and the IP addresses of multicast groups the hosts want to join on its network. Select Enable MLD Snooping to activate MLD Snooping on the VMG. This allows the VMG to check MLD packets passing through it and learn the multicast group membership. It helps reduce multicast traffic.
LAN IPv6 Address Assign Setup	Select how you want to obtain an IPv6 address: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stateless: The VMG uses IPv6 stateless autoconfiguration. RADVD (Router Advertisement Daemon) is enabled to have the VMG send IPv6 prefix information in router advertisements periodically and in response to router solicitations. DHCPv6 server is disabled. Stateful: The VMG uses IPv6 stateful autoconfiguration. The DHCPv6 server is enabled to have the VMG act as a DHCPv6 server and pass IPv6 addresses to DHCPv6 clients. Stateless and Stateful: The VMG uses both IPv6 stateless and stateful autoconfiguration. The LAN IPv6 clients can obtain IPv6 addresses either through router advertisements or through DHCPv6.
LAN IPv6 DNS Assign Setup	Select how the VMG provide DNS server and domain name information to the clients: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> From Router Advertisement: The VMG provides DNS information through router advertisements. From DHCPv6 Server: The VMG provides DNS information through DHCPv6. From RA & DHCPv6 Server: The VMG provides DNS information through both router advertisements and DHCPv6.
DHCPv6 Configuration	
DHCPv6 State	This shows the status of the DHCPv6. DHCP Server displays if you configured the VMG to act as a DHCPv6 server which assigns IPv6 addresses and/or DNS information to clients.
IPv6 Router Advertisement State	
RADVD State	This shows whether RADVD is enabled or not.
IPv6 DNS Values	
IPv6 DNS Server 1-3	Select From ISP if your ISP dynamically assigns IPv6 DNS server information. Select User-Defined if you have the IPv6 address of a DNS server. Enter the DNS server IPv6 addresses the VMG passes to the DHCP clients. Select None if you do not want to configure IPv6 DNS servers.
DNS Query Scenario	Select how the VMG handles clients' DNS information requests. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> IPv4/IPv6 DNS Server: The VMG forwards the requests to both the IPv4 and IPv6 DNS servers and sends clients the first DNS information it receives. IPv6 DNS Server Only: The VMG forwards the requests to the IPv6 DNS server and sends clients the DNS information it receives. IPv4 DNS Server Only: The VMG forwards the requests to the IPv4 DNS server and sends clients the DNS information it receives. IPv6 DNS Server First: The VMG forwards the requests to the IPv6 DNS server first and then the IPv4 DNS server. Then it sends clients the first DNS information it receives. IPv4 DNS Server First: The VMG forwards the requests to the IPv4 DNS server first and then the IPv6 DNS server. Then it sends clients the first DNS information it receives.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to restore your previously saved settings.

8.3 The Static DHCP Screen

This table allows you to assign IP addresses on the LAN to specific individual computers based on their MAC Addresses.

Every Ethernet device has a unique MAC (Media Access Control) address. The MAC address is assigned at the factory and consists of six pairs of hexadecimal characters, for example, 00:A0:C5:00:00:02.

Use this screen to change your VMG's static DHCP settings. Click Network Setting > Home Networking > Static DHCP to open the following screen.

Figure 52 Network Setting > Home Networking > Static DHCP

Static DHCP Configuration				
#	Status	MAC Address	IP Address	Modify

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 32 Network Setting > Home Networking > Static DHCP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Static DHCP Configuration	Click this to add a new static DHCP entry.
#	This is the index number of the entry.
Status	This field displays whether the client is connected to the VMG.
MAC Address	The MAC (Media Access Control) or Ethernet address on a LAN (Local Area Network) is unique to your computer (six pairs of hexadecimal notation). A network interface card such as an Ethernet adapter has a hardwired address that is assigned at the factory. This address follows an industry standard that ensures no other adapter has a similar address.
IP Address	This field displays the IP address relative to the # field listed above.
Modify	Click the Edit icon to have the IP address field editable and change it. Click the Delete icon to delete a static DHCP entry. A window displays asking you to confirm that you want to delete the selected entry.

If you click Static DHCP Configuration in the Static DHCP screen or the Edit icon next to a static DHCP entry, the following screen displays.

Figure 53 Static DHCP: Static DHCP Configuration/Edit

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 33 Static DHCP: Static DHCP Configuration/Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this to activate the connection between the client and the VMG.
Group Name	Select the interface group name for which you want to configure static DHCP settings. See Chapter 15 on page 184 for how to create a new interface group.
IP Type	This field displays IPv4 for the type of the DHCP IP address. At the time of writing, it is not allowed to select other type.
Select Device Info	Select a device or computer from the drop-down list or select Manual Input to manually enter a device's MAC address and IP address in the following fields.
MAC Address	If you select Manual Input, enter the MAC address of a computer on your LAN.
IP Address	If you select Manual Input, enter the IP address that you want to assign to the computer on your LAN with the MAC address that you will also specify.
OK	Click OK to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.

8.4 The UPnP Screen

Universal Plug and Play (UPnP) is a distributed, open networking standard that uses TCP/IP for simple peer-to-peer network connectivity between devices. A UPnP device can dynamically join a network, obtain an IP address, convey its capabilities and learn about other devices on the network. In turn, a device can leave a network smoothly and automatically when it is no longer in use.

See [page 121](#) for more information on UPnP.

Use the following screen to configure the UPnP settings on your VMG. Click **Network Setting > Home Networking > UPnP** to display the screen shown next.

Figure 54 Network Setting > Home Networking > UPnP

UPnP State
 UPnP: Enable Disable

UPnP NAT-T State
 UPnP NAT-T: Enable Disable

Note:
 UPnP NAT-T only work when NAT is enable

#	Description	Destination IP Address	External Port	Internal Port	Protocol

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 34 Network Setting > Home Networking > UPnP

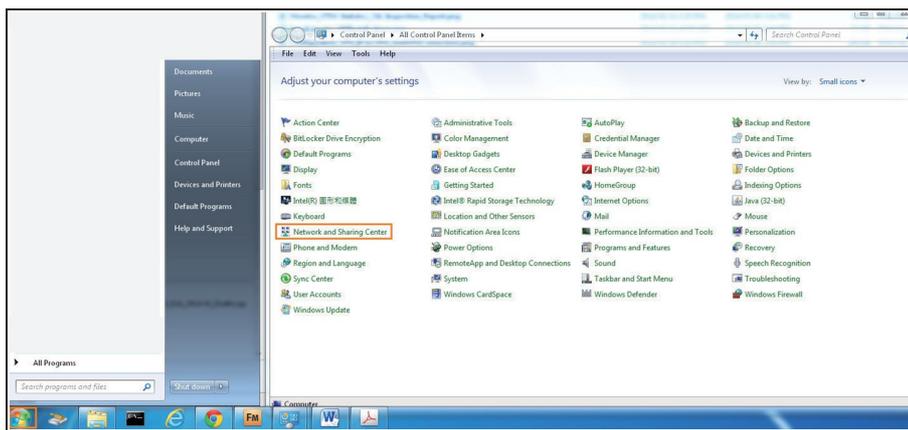
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
UPnP	Select Enable to activate UPnP. Be aware that anyone could use a UPnP application to open the web configurator's login screen without entering the VMG's IP address (although you must still enter the password to access the web configurator).
UPnP NAT-T	Select Enable to allow UPnP-enabled applications to automatically configure the VMG so that they can communicate through the VMG by using NAT traversal. UPnP applications automatically reserve a NAT forwarding port in order to communicate with another UPnP enabled device; this eliminates the need to manually configure port forwarding for the UPnP enabled application. The table below displays the NAT port forwarding rules added automatically by UPnP NAT-T.
#	This is the index number of the UPnP NAT-T connection.
Description	This is the description of the UPnP NAT-T connection.
Destination IP Address	This is the IP address of the other connected UPnP-enabled device.
External Port	This is the external port number that identifies the service.
Internal Port	This is the internal port number that identifies the service.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.

8.4.1 Turning On UPnP in Windows 7 Example

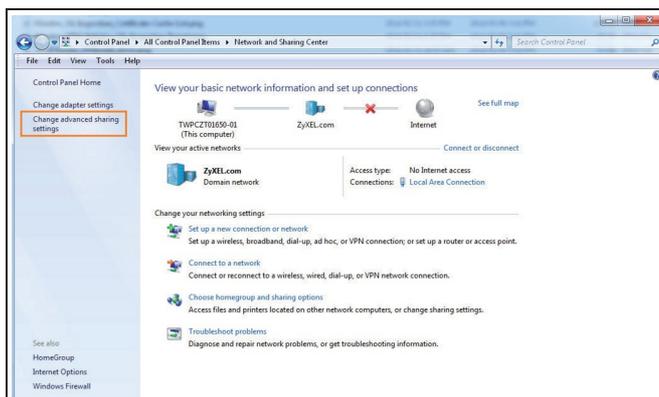
This section shows you how to use the UPnP feature in Windows 7. UPnP server is installed in Windows 7. Activate UPnP on the VMG.

Make sure the computer is connected to a LAN port of the VMG. Turn on your computer and the VMG.

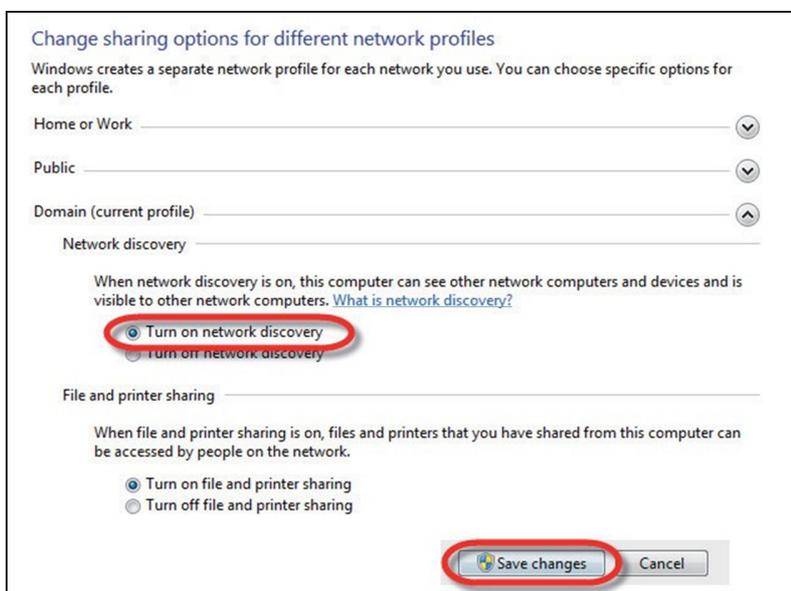
- 1 Click the start icon, **Control Panel** and then the **Network and Sharing Center**.



- 2 Click **Change Advanced Sharing Settings**.



- 3 Select Turn on network discovery and click Save Changes. Network discovery allows your computer to find other computers and devices on the network and other computers on the network to find your computer. This makes it easier to share files and printers.



8.5 The Additional Subnet Screen

Use the Additional Subnet screen to configure IP alias and public static IP.

IP alias allows you to partition a physical network into different logical networks over the same Ethernet interface. The VMG supports multiple logical LAN interfaces via its physical Ethernet

interface with the VMG itself as the gateway for the LAN network. When you use IP alias, you can also configure firewall rules to control access to the LAN's logical network (subnet).

If your ISP provides the Public LAN service, the VMG may use an LAN IP address that can be accessed from the WAN.

Click Network Setting > Home Networking > Additional Subnet to display the screen shown next.

Figure 55 Network Setting > Home Networking > Additional Subnet

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 35 Network Setting > Home Networking > Additional Subnet

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IP Alias Setup	
Group Name	Select the interface group name for which you want to configure the IP alias settings. See Chapter 15 on page 184 for how to create a new interface group.
Active	Select Enable to configure a LAN network for the VMG.
IPv4 Address	Enter the IP address of your VMG in dotted decimal notation.
Subnet Mask	Your VMG will automatically calculate the subnet mask based on the IPv4 address that you assign. Unless you are implementing subnetting, use this value computed by the VMG.
Public LAN	
Active	Select Enable to enable the Public LAN feature. Your ISP must support Public LAN and Static IP.
IPv4 Address	Enter the public IP address provided by your ISP.
Subnet Mask	Enter the public IPv4 subnet mask provided by your ISP.
Offer Public IP by DHCP	Select Enable to enable the VMG to provide public IP addresses by DHCP server.
Enable ARP Proxy	Select Enable to enable the ARP (Address Resolution Protocol) proxy.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.

8.6 The STB Vendor ID Screen

Set Top Box (STB) devices with dynamic IP addresses sometimes don't renew their IP addresses before the lease time expires. This could lead to IP address conflicts if the STB continues to use an IP address that gets assigned to another device. Use this screen to configure the Vendor IDs of connected STBs, which have the VMG automatically created static DHCP entries for them when they request IP addresses.

Click **Network Setting > Home Networking > STB Vendor ID** to open this screen.

Figure 56 Network Setting > Home Networking > STB Vendor ID

Please enter Vendor ID for STB.

Vendor ID 1:

Vendor ID 2:

Vendor ID 3:

Vendor ID 4:

Vendor ID 5:

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 36 Network Setting > Home Networking > STB Vendor ID

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Vendor ID 1~5	These are STB's Vendor Class Identifiers (DHCP option 60). A Vendor Class Identifier is usually used to inform the DHCP server a DHCP client's vendor and functionality.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.

8.7 The Wake on LAN Screen

Use this screen to turn on a device on the LAN network. To use this feature, the remote device must also support Wake On LAN.

You need to know the MAC address of the LAN device. It may be on a label on the device or in its documentation.

Click **Network Setting > Home Networking > Wake on Lan** to open this screen.

Figure 57 Network Setting > Home Networking > Wake on Lan

Wake by Address:

IP Address:

MAC Address : : : : : :

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 37 Network Setting > Home Networking > Wake on Lan

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Wake by Address	Select Manual and enter the IP address or MAC address of the device to turn it on remotely. The drop-down list also lists the IP addresses that can be found in the VMG's ARP table. Select an IP address and it will then automatically update the IP address and MAC address in the following fields.
IP Address	Enter the IPv4 IP address of the device to turn it on.
MAC Address	Enter the MAC address of the device to turn it on. A MAC address consists of six hexadecimal character pairs.
Wake up	Click this to send a wake up packet to wake up the specified device.

8.8 The TFTP Server Name Screen

Use the TFTP Server Name screen to identify a TFTP server for configuration file download using DHCP option 66. RFC 2132 defines the option 66 open standard. DHCP option 66 supports the IP address or the hostname of a single TFTP server.

Click Network Setting > Home Networking > TFTP Server Name to open this screen.

Figure 58 Network Setting > Home Networking > TFTP Server Name

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 38 Network Setting > Home Networking > TFTP Server Name

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
TFTP Server Name	Enter the the IP address or the hostname of a single TFTP server.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.

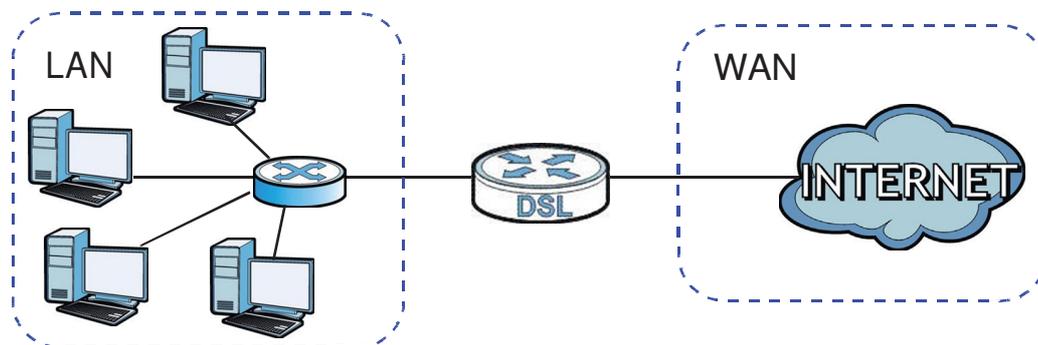
8.9 Technical Reference

This section provides some technical background information about the topics covered in this chapter.

8.9.1 LANs, WANs and the VMG

The actual physical connection determines whether the VMG ports are LAN or WAN ports. There are two separate IP networks, one inside the LAN network and the other outside the WAN network as shown next.

Figure 59 LAN and WAN IP Addresses



8.9.2 DHCP Setup

DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol, RFC 2131 and RFC 2132) allows individual clients to obtain TCP/IP configuration at start-up from a server. You can configure the VMG as a DHCP server or disable it. When configured as a server, the VMG provides the TCP/IP configuration for the clients. If you turn DHCP service off, you must have another DHCP server on your LAN, or else the computer must be manually configured.

IP Pool Setup

The VMG is pre-configured with a pool of IP addresses for the DHCP clients (DHCP Pool). See the product specifications in the appendices. Do not assign static IP addresses from the DHCP pool to your LAN computers.

8.9.3 DNS Server Addresses

DNS (Domain Name System) maps a domain name to its corresponding IP address and vice versa. The DNS server is extremely important because without it, you must know the IP address of a computer before you can access it. The DNS server addresses you enter when you set up DHCP are passed to the client machines along with the assigned IP address and subnet mask.

There are two ways that an ISP disseminates the DNS server addresses.

- The ISP tells you the DNS server addresses, usually in the form of an information sheet, when you sign up. If your ISP gives you DNS server addresses, enter them in the DNS Server fields in the DHCP Setup screen.
- Some ISPs choose to disseminate the DNS server addresses using the DNS server extensions of IPCP (IP Control Protocol) after the connection is up. If your ISP did not give you explicit DNS servers, chances are the DNS servers are conveyed through IPCP negotiation. The VMG supports the IPCP DNS server extensions through the DNS proxy feature.

Please note that DNS proxy works only when the ISP uses the IPCP DNS server extensions. It does not mean you can leave the DNS servers out of the DHCP setup under all circumstances. If your ISP gives you explicit DNS servers, make sure that you enter their IP addresses in the DHCP Setup screen.

8.9.4 LAN TCP/IP

The VMG has built-in DHCP server capability that assigns IP addresses and DNS servers to systems that support DHCP client capability.

IP Address and Subnet Mask

Similar to the way houses on a street share a common street name, so too do computers on a LAN share one common network number.

Where you obtain your network number depends on your particular situation. If the ISP or your network administrator assigns you a block of registered IP addresses, follow their instructions in selecting the IP addresses and the subnet mask.

If the ISP did not explicitly give you an IP network number, then most likely you have a single user account and the ISP will assign you a dynamic IP address when the connection is established. If this is the case, it is recommended that you select a network number from 192.168.0.0 to 192.168.255.0 and you must enable the Network Address Translation (NAT) feature of the VMG. The Internet Assigned Number Authority (IANA) reserved this block of addresses specifically for private use; please do not use any other number unless you are told otherwise. Let's say you select 192.168.1.0 as the network number; which covers 254 individual addresses, from 192.168.1.1 to 192.168.1.254 (zero and 255 are reserved). In other words, the first three numbers specify the network number while the last number identifies an individual computer on that network.

Once you have decided on the network number, pick an IP address that is easy to remember, for instance, 192.168.1.1, for your VMG, but make sure that no other device on your network is using that IP address.

The subnet mask specifies the network number portion of an IP address. Your VMG will compute the subnet mask automatically based on the IP address that you entered. You don't need to change the subnet mask computed by the VMG unless you are instructed to do otherwise.

Private IP Addresses

Every machine on the Internet must have a unique address. If your networks are isolated from the Internet, for example, only between your two branch offices, you can assign any IP addresses to the hosts without problems. However, the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA) has reserved the following three blocks of IP addresses specifically for private networks:

- 10.0.0.0 — 10.255.255.255
- 172.16.0.0 — 172.31.255.255
- 192.168.0.0 — 192.168.255.255

You can obtain your IP address from the IANA, from an ISP or it can be assigned from a private network. If you belong to a small organization and your Internet access is through an ISP, the ISP can provide you with the Internet addresses for your local networks. On the other hand, if you are part of a much larger organization, you should consult your network administrator for the appropriate IP addresses.

Note: Regardless of your particular situation, do not create an arbitrary IP address; always follow the guidelines above. For more information on address assignment, please refer to RFC 1597, "Address Allocation for Private Internets" and RFC 1466, "Guidelines for Management of IP Address Space".

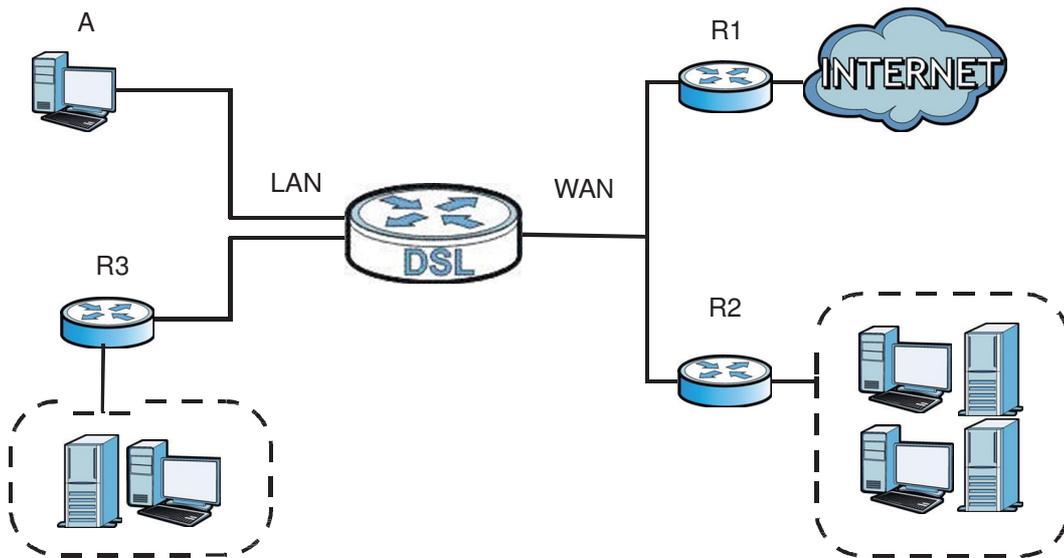
Routing

9.1 Overview

The VMG usually uses the default gateway to route outbound traffic from computers on the LAN to the Internet. To have the VMG send data to devices not reachable through the default gateway, use static routes.

For example, the next figure shows a computer (A) connected to the VMG's LAN interface. The VMG routes most traffic from A to the Internet through the VMG's default gateway (R1). You create one static route to connect to services offered by your ISP behind router R2. You create another static route to communicate with a separate network behind a router R3 connected to the LAN.

Figure 60 Example of Routing Topology



9.2 The Routing Screen

Use this screen to view and configure the static route rules on the VMG. Click [Network Setting > Routing > Static Route](#) to open the following screen.

Figure 61 Network Setting > Routing > Static Route

Add new Static Route							
#	Status	Name	Destination IP	Subnet Mask/Prefix Length	Gateway	Interface	Modify

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 39 Network Setting > Routing > Static Route

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add new static route	Click this to configure a new static route.
#	This is the index number of the entry.
Status	This field displays whether the static route is active or not. A yellow bulb signifies that this route is active. A gray bulb signifies that this route is not active.
Name	This is the name that describes or identifies this route.
Destination IP	This parameter specifies the IP network address of the final destination. Routing is always based on network number.
Subnet Mask	This parameter specifies the IP network subnet mask of the final destination.
Gateway	This is the IP address of the gateway. The gateway is a router or switch on the same network segment as the device's LAN or WAN port. The gateway helps forward packets to their destinations.
Interface	This is the WAN interface used for this static route.
Modify	Click the Edit icon to edit the static route on the VMG. Click the Delete icon to remove a static route from the VMG. A window displays asking you to confirm that you want to delete the route.

9.2.1 Add/Edit Static Route

Use this screen to add or edit a static route. Click Add new static route in the Routing screen or the Edit icon next to the static route you want to edit. The screen shown next appears.

Figure 62 Routing: Add/Edit

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 40 Routing: Add/Edit (Sheet 1 of 2)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	This field allows you to activate/deactivate this static route. Select this to enable the static route. Clear this to disable this static route without having to delete the entry.
Route Name	Enter a descriptive name for the static route.
IP Type	Select whether your IP type is IPv4 or IPv6.
Destination IP Address	Enter the IPv4 or IPv6 network address of the final destination.

Table 40 Routing: Add/Edit (Sheet 2 of 2)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IP Subnet Mask	If you are using IPv4 and need to specify a route to a single host, use a subnet mask of 255.255.255.255 in the subnet mask field to force the network number to be identical to the host ID. Enter the IP subnet mask here.
Use Gateway IP Address	The gateway is a router or switch on the same network segment as the device's LAN or WAN port. The gateway helps forward packets to their destinations. If you want to use the gateway IP address, select Enable.
Gateway IP Address	Enter the IP address of the gateway.
Use Interface	Select the WAN interface you want to use for this static route.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.

9.3 The DNS Route Screen

Use this screen to view and configure DNS routes on the VMG. Click **Network Setting > Routing > DNS Route** to open the following screen.

Figure 63 Network Setting > Routing > DNS Route



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 41 Network Setting > Routing > DNS Route

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add New DNS Route	Click this to add a new DNS route.
#	This is the index number of a DNS route.
Status	This field displays whether the DNS route is active or not. A yellow bulb signifies that this DNS route is active. A gray bulb signifies that this DNS route is not active.
Domain Name	This is the host name or domain name of the DNS route entry.
Interface	This is the WAN connection through which the VMG forwards DNS requests for this domain name.
Subnet Mask	This is the subnet mask of the DNS route entry.
Modify	Click the Edit icon to modify the DNS route. Click the Delete icon to delete the DNS route.

9.3.1 The DNS Route Add Screen

You can manually add the VMG's DNS route entry. Click **Add New DNS Route** in the **Network Setting > Routing > DNS Route** screen. The screen shown next appears.

Figure 64 DNS Route Add

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 42 DNS Route Add

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this to activate this DNS route.
Domain Name	Enter the domain name of the DNS route entry.
Subnet Mask	Enter the subnet mask of the DNS route entry.
WAN Interface	Select the WAN connection through which the VMG forwards DNS requests for this domain name. WWAN means the wireless 3G interface.
OK	Click this to save your changes.
Cancel	Click this to exit this screen without saving any changes.

9.4 The Policy Route Screen

Traditionally, routing is based on the destination address only and the VMG takes the shortest path to forward a packet. Policy route allows the VMG to override the default routing behavior and alter the packet forwarding based on the policy defined by the network administrator. Policy-based routing is applied to outgoing packets, prior to the normal routing.

You can use source-based policy forwarding to direct traffic from different users through different connections or distribute traffic among multiple paths for load sharing.

The Policy Route screen let you view and configure routing policies on the VMG. Click Network Setting > Routing > Policy Route to open the following screen.

Figure 65 Network Setting > Routing > Policy Route

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 43 Network Setting > Routing > Policy Route

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add New Policy Route	Click this to create a new policy forwarding rule.
#	This is the index number of the entry.

Table 43 Network Setting > Routing > Policy Route (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Status	This field displays whether the DNS route is active or not. A yellow bulb signifies that this DNS route is active. A gray bulb signifies that this DNS route is not active.
Name	This is the name of the rule.
Source IP	This is the source IP address.
Source Subnet Mask	This is the source subnet mask address.
Protocol	This is the transport layer protocol.
Source Port	This is the source port number.
Source MAC	This is the source MAC address.
Source Interface	This is the interface from which the matched traffic is sent.
WAN Interface	This is the WAN interface through which the traffic is routed.
Modify	Click the Edit icon to edit this policy. Click the Delete icon to remove a policy from the VMG. A window displays asking you to confirm that you want to delete the policy.

9.4.1 Add/Edit Policy Route

Click Add New Policy Route in the Policy Route screen or click the Edit icon next to a policy. Use this screen to configure the required information for a policy route.

Figure 66 Policy Route: Add/Edit

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 44 Policy Route: Add/Edit (Sheet 1 of 2)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this to activate this policy route.
Route Name	Enter a descriptive name of up to 8 printable English keyboard characters, not including spaces.
Source IP	Enter the source IP address.
Source Subnet Mask	Enter the source subnet mask address.
Protocol	Select the transport layer protocol (TCP or UDP).

Table 44 Policy Route: Add/Edit (Sheet 2 of 2)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Source Port	Enter the source port number.
Source MAC	Enter the source MAC address.
Source Interface	Type the name of the interface from which the matched traffic is sent.
WAN Interface	Select a WAN interface through which the traffic is sent. You must have the WAN interface(s) already configured in the Broadband screens.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.

9.5 RIP

Routing Information Protocol (RIP, RFC 1058 and RFC 1389) allows a device to exchange routing information with other routers.

9.5.1 The RIP Screen

Click Network Setting > Routing > RIP to open the RIP screen.

Figure 67 RIP

#	Interface	Version	Operation	Enable
<p>Note: RIP CANNOT BE CONFIGURED on the WAN interface which has NAT enabled (such as PPPoE).</p>				

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 45 RIP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
#	This is the index of the interface in which the RIP setting is used.
Interface	This is the name of the interface in which the RIP setting is used.
Version	The RIP version controls the format and the broadcasting method of the RIP packets that the VMG sends (it recognizes both formats when receiving). RIP version 1 is universally supported but RIP version 2 carries more information. RIP version 1 is probably adequate for most networks, unless you have an unusual network topology.
Operation	Select Passive to have the VMG update the routing table based on the RIP packets received from neighbors but not advertise its route information to other routers in this interface. Select Active to have the VMG advertise its route information and also listen for routing updates from neighboring routers.
Enabled	Select the check box to activate the settings.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the VMG.

Quality of Service (QoS)

10.1 Overview

Quality of Service (QoS) refers to both a network's ability to deliver data with minimum delay, and the networking methods used to control the use of bandwidth. Without QoS, all traffic data is equally likely to be dropped when the network is congested. This can cause a reduction in network performance and make the network inadequate for time-critical application such as video-on-demand.

Configure QoS on the VMG to group and prioritize application traffic and fine-tune network performance. Setting up QoS involves these steps:

- 1 Configure classifiers to sort traffic into different flows.
- 2 Assign priority and define actions to be performed for a classified traffic flow.

The VMG assigns each packet a priority and then queues the packet accordingly. Packets assigned a high priority are processed more quickly than those with low priority if there is congestion, allowing time-sensitive applications to flow more smoothly. Time-sensitive applications include both those that require a low level of latency (delay) and a low level of jitter (variations in delay) such as Voice over IP (VoIP) or Internet gaming, and those for which jitter alone is a problem such as Internet radio or streaming video.

This chapter contains information about configuring QoS and editing classifiers.

10.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- The **General** screen lets you enable or disable QoS and set the upstream bandwidth ([Section 10.3 on page 144](#)).
- The **Queue Setup** screen lets you configure QoS queue assignment ([Section 10.4 on page 145](#)).
- The **Classification Setup** screen lets you add, edit or delete QoS classifiers ([Section 10.5 on page 147](#)).
- The **Shaper Setup** screen limits outgoing traffic transmission rate on the selected interface ([Section 10.6 on page 152](#)).
- The **Policer Setup** screen to control incoming traffic transmission rate and bursts ([Section 10.7 on page 153](#)).

10.2 What You Need to Know

The following terms and concepts may help as you read through this chapter.

QoS versus Cos

QoS is used to prioritize source-to-destination traffic flows. All packets in the same flow are given the same priority. CoS (class of service) is a way of managing traffic in a network by grouping similar types of traffic together and treating each type as a class. You can use CoS to give different priorities to different packet types.

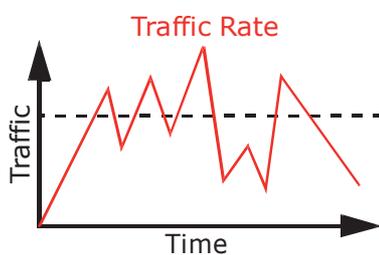
CoS technologies include IEEE 802.1p layer 2 tagging and DiffServ (Differentiated Services or DS). IEEE 802.1p tagging makes use of three bits in the packet header, while DiffServ is a new protocol and defines a new DS field, which replaces the eight-bit ToS (Type of Service) field in the IP header.

Tagging and Marking

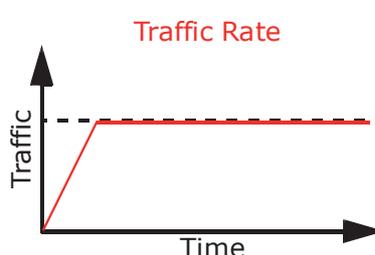
In a QoS class, you can configure whether to add or change the DSCP (DiffServ Code Point) value, IEEE 802.1p priority level and VLAN ID number in a matched packet. When the packet passes through a compatible network, the networking device, such as a backbone switch, can provide specific treatment or service based on the tag or marker.

Traffic Shaping

Bursty traffic may cause network congestion. Traffic shaping regulates packets to be transmitted with a pre-configured data transmission rate using buffers (or queues). Your VMG uses the Token Bucket algorithm to allow a certain amount of large bursts while keeping a limit at the average rate.



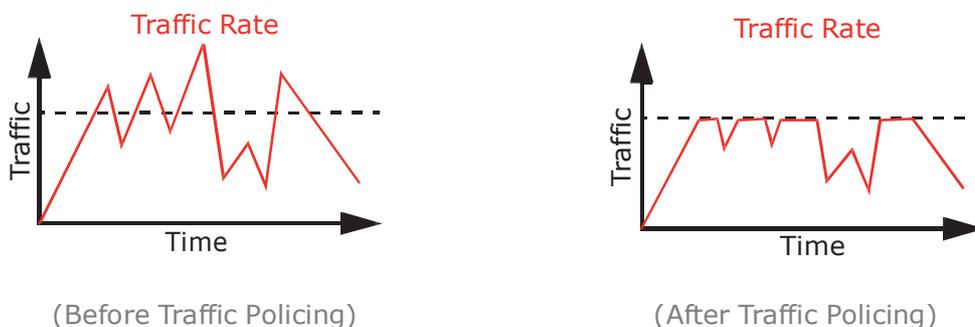
(Before Traffic Shaping)



(After Traffic Shaping)

Traffic Policing

Traffic policing is the limiting of the input or output transmission rate of a class of traffic on the basis of user-defined criteria. Traffic policing methods measure traffic flows against user-defined criteria and identify it as either conforming, exceeding or violating the criteria.



The VMG supports three incoming traffic metering algorithms: Token Bucket Filter (TBF), Single Rate Two Color Marker (srTCM), and Two Rate Two Color Marker (trTCM). You can specify actions which are performed on the colored packets. See [Section 10.8 on page 155](#) for more information on each metering algorithm.

10.3 The Quality of Service General Screen

Click Network Setting > QoS > General to open the screen as shown next.

Use this screen to enable or disable QoS and set the upstream bandwidth. See [Section 10.1 on page 142](#) for more information.

Figure 68 Network Settings > QoS > General

QoS		<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable (settings are invalid when disabled)
WAN Managed Upstream Bandwidth :	<input type="text"/>	(kbps)
LAN Managed Downstream Bandwidth :	<input type="text"/>	(kbps)
Upstream Traffic Priority Assigned by:	None ▼	
<p>Note</p> <p>You can assign the upstream bandwidth manually. If the field is empty, the CPE set the value automatically.</p> <p>If Upstream Auto-Priority mapping criteria is selected, 8 level strict priority QoS will be applied automatically according to the selected criteria. In this mode, user manually defined QoS will not be applied until Auto-Priority Mapping is disabled.</p> <p>If the setting of WAN managed upstream bandwidth is greater than current WAN interface linkup rate, then the WAN managed upstream bandwidth will become current WAN interface linkup rate.</p>		
		<input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 46 Network Setting > QoS > General

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
QoS	Select the Enable check box to turn on QoS to improve your network performance.
WAN Managed Upstream Bandwidth	<p>Enter the amount of upstream bandwidth for the WAN interfaces that you want to allocate using QoS.</p> <p>The recommendation is to set this speed to match the interfaces' actual transmission speed. For example, set the WAN interfaces' speed to 100000 kbps if your Internet connection has an upstream transmission speed of 100 Mbps.</p> <p>You can set this number higher than the interfaces' actual transmission speed. The VMG uses up to 95% of the DSL port's actual upstream transmission speed even if you set this number higher than the DSL port's actual transmission speed.</p> <p>You can also set this number lower than the interfaces' actual transmission speed. This will cause the VMG to not use some of the interfaces' available bandwidth.</p> <p>If you leave this field blank, the VMG automatically sets this number to be 95% of the WAN interfaces' actual upstream transmission speed.</p>
LAN Managed Downstream Bandwidth	<p>Enter the amount of downstream bandwidth for the LAN interfaces (including WLAN) that you want to allocate using QoS.</p> <p>The recommendation is to set this speed to match the WAN interfaces' actual transmission speed. For example, set the LAN managed downstream bandwidth to 100000 kbps if you use a 100 Mbps wired Ethernet WAN connection.</p> <p>You can also set this number lower than the WAN interfaces' actual transmission speed. This will cause the VMG to not use some of the interfaces' available bandwidth.</p> <p>If you leave this field blank, the VMG automatically sets this to the LAN interfaces' maximum supported connection speed.</p>
Upstream traffic priority Assigned by	<p>Select how the VMG assigns priorities to various upstream traffic flows.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None: Disables auto priority mapping and has the VMG put packets into the queues according to your classification rules. Traffic which does not match any of the classification rules is mapped into the default queue with the lowest priority. • Ethernet Priority: Automatically assign priority based on the IEEE 802.1p priority level. • IP Precedence: Automatically assign priority based on the first three bits of the TOS field in the IP header. • Packet Length: Automatically assign priority based on the packet size. Smaller packets get higher priority since control, signaling, VoIP, internet gaming, or other real-time packets are usually small while larger packets are usually best effort data packets like file transfers.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to restore your previously saved settings.

10.4 The Queue Setup Screen

Click Network Setting > QoS > Queue Setup to open the screen as shown next.

Use this screen to configure QoS queue assignment.

Figure 69 Network Setting > QoS > Queue Setup

Add New Queue									
#	Status	Name	Interface	Priority	Weight	Buffer Management	Rate Limit (kbps)	Modify	
1		default queue	WAN	8	1	DT			
2		default queue	WAN	1	1	DT			

Note
Maximum 8 configurable entries for WAN port.
Priority level 1 is the highest priority for QoS.
Rate limit 0 is max bandwidth.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 47 Network Setting > QoS > Queue Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add New Queue	Click this button to create a new queue entry.
#	This is the index number of the entry.
Status	This field displays whether the queue is active or not. A yellow bulb signifies that this queue is active. A gray bulb signifies that this queue is not active.
Name	This shows the descriptive name of this queue.
Interface	This shows the name of the VMG's interface through which traffic in this queue passes.
Priority	This shows the priority of this queue.
Weight	This shows the weight of this queue.
Buffer Management	This shows the queue management algorithm used for this queue. Queue management algorithms determine how the VMG should handle packets when it receives too many (network congestion).
Rate Limit	This shows the maximum transmission rate allowed for traffic on this queue.
Modify	Click the Edit icon to edit the queue. Click the Delete icon to delete an existing queue. Note that subsequent rules move up by one when you take this action.

10.4.1 Adding a QoS Queue

Click Add New Queue or the edit icon in the Queue Setup screen to configure a queue.

Figure 70 Queue Setup: Add

Add New Queue

Enable:

Name:

Interface:

Priority:

Weight:

Buffer Management:

Rate Limit (kbps): (kbps)

OK Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 48 Queue Setup: Add

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Enable	Select to enable or disable this queue.
Name	Enter the descriptive name of this queue.
Interface	Select the interface to which this queue is applied. This field is read-only if you are editing the queue.
Priority	Select the priority level (from 1 to 7) of this queue. The smaller the number, the higher the priority level. Traffic assigned to higher priority queues gets through faster while traffic in lower priority queues is dropped if the network is congested.
Weight	Select the weight (from 1 to 8) of this queue. If two queues have the same priority level, the VMG divides the bandwidth across the queues according to their weights. Queues with larger weights get more bandwidth than queues with smaller weights.
Buffer Management	This field displays Drop Tail (DT). Drop Tail (DT) is a simple queue management algorithm that allows the VMG buffer to accept as many packets as it can until it is full. Once the buffer is full, new packets that arrive are dropped until there is space in the buffer again (packets are transmitted out of it).
Rate Limit	Specify the maximum transmission rate (in Kbps) allowed for traffic on this queue.
OK	Click OK to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.

10.5 The Classification Setup Screen

Use this screen to add, edit or delete QoS classifiers. A classifier groups traffic into data flows according to specific criteria such as the source address, destination address, source port number, destination port number or incoming interface. For example, you can configure a classifier to select traffic from the same protocol port (such as Telnet) to form a flow.

You can give different priorities to traffic that the VMG forwards out through the WAN interface. Give high priority to voice and video to make them run more smoothly. Similarly, give low priority to many large file downloads so that they do not reduce the quality of other applications.

Click Network Setting > QoS > Classification Setup to open the following screen.

Figure 71 Network Setting > QoS > Classification Setup

Add New Classification								
Order	Status	Class Name	Classification Criteria	DSCP Mark	802.1P Mark	VLAN ID Tag	To Queue	Modify

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 49 Network Setting > QoS > Classification Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add New Classification	Click this to create a new classifier.
Order	This is the index number of the entry. The classifiers are applied in order of their numbering.
Status	This field displays whether the classifier is active or not. A yellow bulb signifies that this classifier is active. A gray bulb signifies that this classifier is not active.
Class Name	This is the name of the classifier.
Classification Criteria	This shows criteria specified in this classifier, for example the interface from which traffic of this class should come and the source MAC address of traffic that matches this classifier.
DSCP Mark	This is the DSCP number added to traffic of this classifier.
802.1P Mark	This is the IEEE 802.1p priority level assigned to traffic of this classifier.
VLAN ID Tag	This is the VLAN ID number assigned to traffic of this classifier.
To Queue	This is the name of the queue in which traffic of this classifier is put.
Modify	Click the Edit icon to edit the classifier. Click the Delete icon to delete an existing classifier. Note that subsequent rules move up by one when you take this action.

10.5.1 Add/Edit QoS Class

Click Add New Classification in the Classification Setup screen or the Edit icon next to a classifier to open the following screen.

Figure 72 Classification Setup: Add/Edit

Add New Classification

Please follow the guidance through step 1~5 to configure a QoS rule:

Step1: Class Configuration:

Enable:

Class Name:

Order: ▼

Step2: Criteria Configuration:
Use the configurations below to specify the characteristics of a data flow need to be managed by this QoS rule:

Basic:

From Interface: ▼

Ether Type: ▼

Source

Address Subnet Mask Exclude

Port Range ~ Exclude

MAC MAC Mask Exclude

Destination

Address Subnet Mask Exclude

Port Range ~ Exclude

MAC MAC Mask Exclude

Others

Service ▼ Exclude

Protocol ▼ Exclude

DHCP ▼ Exclude

Packet Length ~ Exclude

DSCP (0~63) Exclude

802.1P ▼ Exclude

VLAN ID (1~4095) Exclude

TCP ACK Exclude

Step3: Packet Modification
The content of the packet can be modified by applying the following settings:

DSCP Mark: ▼ (0~63)

802.1P Mark: ▼

VLAN ID Tag: ▼ (1~4095)

Step4: Class Routing
This module can route packet to certain interface according to the class setting:

Forward To Interface: ▼

Step5: Outgoing Queue Selection
Outgoing queue decide the priority of the traffic and how traffic should be shaped in the WAN interface. :

To Queue: ▼

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 50 Classification Setup: Add/Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Step1: Class Configuration	
Enable	Select this to enable this classifier.
Class Name	Enter a descriptive name of up to 15 printable English keyboard characters, not including spaces.
Order	Select an existing number for where you want to put this classifier to move the classifier to the number you selected after clicking Apply. Select Last to put this rule in the back of the classifier list.

Table 50 Classification Setup: Add/Edit (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Step2: Criteria Configuration	
From Interface	If you want to classify the traffic by an ingress interface, select an interface from the From Interface drop-down list box.
Ether Type	Select a predefined application to configure a class for the matched traffic. If you select IP, you also need to configure source or destination MAC address, IP address, DHCP options, DSCP value or the protocol type. If you select 802.1Q, you can configure an 802.1p priority level.
Source	
Address	Select the check box and enter the source IP address in dotted decimal notation. A blank source IP address means any source IP address.
Subnet Mask	Enter the source subnet mask.
Port Range	If you select TCP or UDP in the IP Protocol field, select the check box and enter the port number(s) of the source.
MAC	Select the check box and enter the source MAC address of the packet.
MAC Mask	Type the mask for the specified MAC address to determine which bits a packet's MAC address should match. Enter "f" for each bit of the specified source MAC address that the traffic's MAC address should match. Enter "0" for the bit(s) of the matched traffic's MAC address, which can be of any hexadecimal character(s). For example, if you set the MAC address to 00:13:49:00:00:00 and the mask to ff:ff:ff:00:00:00, a packet with a MAC address of 00:13:49:12:34:56 matches this criteria.
Exclude	Select this option to exclude the packets that match the specified criteria from this classifier.
Destination	
Address	Select the check box and enter the source IP address in dotted decimal notation. A blank source IP address means any source IP address.
Subnet Mask	Enter the source subnet mask.
Port Range	If you select TCP or UDP in the IP Protocol field, select the check box and enter the port number(s) of the source.
MAC	Select the check box and enter the source MAC address of the packet.
MAC Mask	Type the mask for the specified MAC address to determine which bits a packet's MAC address should match. Enter "f" for each bit of the specified source MAC address that the traffic's MAC address should match. Enter "0" for the bit(s) of the matched traffic's MAC address, which can be of any hexadecimal character(s). For example, if you set the MAC address to 00:13:49:00:00:00 and the mask to ff:ff:ff:00:00:00, a packet with a MAC address of 00:13:49:12:34:56 matches this criteria.
Exclude	Select this option to exclude the packets that match the specified criteria from this classifier.
Others	
Service	This field is available only when you select IP in the Ether Type field. This field simplifies classifier configuration by allowing you to select a predefined application. When you select a predefined application, you do not configure the rest of the filter fields.
Protocol	This field is available only when you select IP in the Ether Type field. Select this option and select the protocol (service type) from TCP, UDP, ICMP or IGMP. If you select User defined, enter the protocol (service type) number.

Table 50 Classification Setup: Add/Edit (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
DHCP	<p>This field is available only when you select IP in the Ether Type field.</p> <p>Select this option and select a DHCP option.</p> <p>If you select Vendor Class ID (DHCP Option 60), enter the Vendor Class Identifier (Option 60) of the matched traffic, such as the type of the hardware or firmware.</p> <p>If you select Client ID (DHCP Option 61), enter the Identity Association Identifier (IAD Option 61) of the matched traffic, such as the MAC address of the device.</p> <p>If you select User Class ID (DHCP Option 77), enter a string that identifies the user's category or application type in the matched DHCP packets.</p> <p>If you select Vendor Specific Info (DHCP Option 125), enter the vendor specific information of the matched traffic, such as the product class, model name, and serial number of the device.</p>
Packet Length	<p>This field is available only when you select IP in the Ether Type field.</p> <p>Select this option and enter the minimum and maximum packet length (from 46 to 1500) in the fields provided.</p>
DSCP	<p>This field is available only when you select IP in the Ether Type field.</p> <p>Select this option and specify a DSCP (DiffServ Code Point) number between 0 and 63 in the field provided.</p>
802.1P	<p>This field is available only when you select 802.1Q in the Ether Type field.</p> <p>Select this option and select a priority level (between 0 and 7) from the drop-down list box. "0" is the lowest priority level and "7" is the highest.</p>
VLAN ID	<p>This field is available only when you select 802.1Q in the Ether Type field.</p> <p>Select this option and specify a VLAN ID number.</p>
TCP ACK	<p>This field is available only when you select IP in the Ether Type field.</p> <p>If you select this option, the matched TCP packets must contain the ACK (Acknowledge) flag.</p>
Exclude	Select this option to exclude the packets that match the specified criteria from this classifier.
Step3: Packet Modification	
DSCP Mark	<p>This field is available only when you select IP in the Ether Type field.</p> <p>If you select Remark, enter a DSCP value with which the VMG replaces the DSCP field in the packets.</p> <p>If you select Unchange, the VMG keep the DSCP field in the packets.</p>
802.1P Mark	<p>Select a priority level with which the VMG replaces the IEEE 802.1p priority field in the packets.</p> <p>If you select Unchange, the VMG keep the 802.1p priority field in the packets.</p>
VLAN ID	<p>If you select Remark, enter a VLAN ID number with which the VMG replaces the VLAN ID of the frames.</p> <p>If you select Remove, the VMG deletes the VLAN ID of the frames before forwarding them out.</p> <p>If you select Add, the VMG treat all matched traffic untagged and add a second VLAN ID.</p> <p>If you select Unchange, the VMG keep the VLAN ID in the packets.</p>
Step4: Class Routing	
Forward to Interface	Select a WAN interface through which traffic of this class will be forwarded out. If you select Unchange, the VMG forward traffic of this class according to the default routing table.

Table 50 Classification Setup: Add/Edit (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Step5: Outgoing Queue Selection	
To Queue	Select a queue that applies to this class. You should have configured a queue in the Queue Setup screen already.
OK	Click OK to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.

10.6 The QoS Shaper Setup Screen

This screen shows that you can use the token bucket algorithm to allow a certain amount of large bursts while keeping a limit for processing outgoing traffic at the average rate. Click Network Setting > QoS > Shaper Setup. The screen appears as shown.

Figure 73 Network Setting > QoS > Shaper Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 51 Network Setting > QoS > Shaper Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add New Shaper	Click this to create a new entry.
#	This is the index number of the entry.
Status	This field displays whether the shaper is active or not. A yellow bulb signifies that this policer is active. A gray bulb signifies that this shaper is not active.
Outgoing Interface	This shows the name of the VMG's interface through which traffic in this shaper applies.
Rate Limit (kbps)	This shows the average rate limit of traffic bursts for this shaper.
Modify	Click the Edit icon to edit the shaper. Click the Delete icon to delete an existing shaper. Note that subsequent rules move up by one when you take this action.

10.6.1 Add/Edit a QoS Shaper

Click Add New Shaper in the Shaper Setup screen or the Edit icon next to a shaper to show the following screen.

Figure 74 Shaper Setup: Add/Edit

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 52 Shaper Setup: Add/Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Enable	Select the check box to activate this shaper.
Outgoing Interface	Select the VMG's interface through which traffic in this shaper applies
Rate Limit	Enter the average rate limit of traffic bursts for this shaper.
OK	Click OK to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.

10.7 The QoS Policer Setup Screen

Use this screen to view QoS policers that allow you to limit the transmission rate of incoming traffic and apply actions, such as drop, pass, or modify the DSCP value for matched traffic. Click Network Setting > QoS > Policer Setup. The screen appears as shown.

Figure 75 Network Setting > QoS > Policer Setup

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 53 Network Setting > QoS > Policer Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add new Policer	Click this to create a new entry.
#	This is the index number of the entry.
Status	This field displays whether the policer is active or not. A yellow bulb signifies that this policer is active. A gray bulb signifies that this policer is not active.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name of this policer.
Regulated Classes	This field displays the name of a QoS classifier
Meter Type	This field displays the type of QoS metering algorithm used in this policer.
Rule	These are the rates and burst sizes against which the policer checks the traffic of the member QoS classes.
Action	This shows the how the policer has the VMG treat different types of traffic belonging to the policer's member QoS classes.
Modify	Click the Edit icon to edit the policer. Click the Delete icon to delete an existing policer. Note that subsequent rules move up by one when you take this action.

10.7.1 Add/Edit a QoS Policer

Click Add New Policer in the Policer Setup screen or the Edit icon next to a policer to show the following screen.

Figure 76 Policer Setup: Add/Edit

The screenshot shows the 'QoS Policer Configuration' window. It is divided into two main sections: 'Policer Setting' and 'Regulated Classes Member Setting'.

Policer Setting:

- Active:** A checkbox that is currently unchecked.
- Name:** An empty text input field.
- Meter Type:** A dropdown menu set to 'Simple Token Bucket'.
- Committed Rate:** An empty text input field followed by '(kbps)'.
- Committed Burst Size:** An empty text input field followed by '(kbps)'.
- Conforming Action:** A dropdown menu set to 'Pass'.
- Non-Conforming Action:** A dropdown menu set to 'Drop'.

Regulated Classes Member Setting:

- Available Class:** A table with columns '#', 'Class Name', and a checkbox. The classes listed are:

#	Class Name	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Class 7: AH	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Class 8: ESP	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Class 11: HTTPS	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Class 12: Telnet	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Class 5: IKE	
- Selected Class:** A table with columns '#', 'Class Name', and a checkbox. The classes listed are:

#	Class Name	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Class 2: SSH	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Class 3: DNS	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Class 6: RTSP	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Class 9: HTTP	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Class 10: HTTP-Proxy	

Navigation arrows (right and left) are located between the two class tables. At the bottom right of the window are 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 54 Policer Setup: Add/Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select the check box to activate this policer.
Name	Enter the descriptive name of this policer.
Meter Type	<p>This shows the traffic metering algorithm used in this policer.</p> <p>The Simple Token Bucket algorithm uses tokens in a bucket to control when traffic can be transmitted. Each token represents one byte. The algorithm allows bursts of up to b bytes which is also the bucket size.</p> <p>The Single Rate Three Color Marker (srTCM) is based on the token bucket filter and identifies packets by comparing them to the Committed Information Rate (CIR), the Committed Burst Size (CBS) and the Excess Burst Size (EBS).</p> <p>The Two Rate Three Color Marker (trTCM) is based on the token bucket filter and identifies packets by comparing them to the Committed Information Rate (CIR) and the Peak Information Rate (PIR).</p>
Committed Rate	Specify the committed rate. When the incoming traffic rate of the member QoS classes is less than the committed rate, the device applies the conforming action to the traffic.
Committed Burst Size	<p>Specify the committed burst size for packet bursts. This must be equal to or less than the peak burst size (two rate three color) or excess burst size (single rate three color) if it is also configured.</p> <p>This is the maximum size of the (first) token bucket in a traffic metering algorithm.</p>
Conforming Action	<p>Specify what the VMG does for packets within the committed rate and burst size (green-marked packets).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pass: Send the packets without modification. DSCP Mark: Change the DSCP mark value of the packets. Enter the DSCP mark value to use.
Non-Conforming Action	<p>Specify what the VMG does for packets that exceed the excess burst size or peak rate and burst size (red-marked packets).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Drop: Discard the packets. DSCP Mark: Change the DSCP mark value of the packets. Enter the DSCP mark value to use. The packets may be dropped if there is congestion on the network.
Available Class	Select a QoS classifier to apply this QoS policer to traffic that matches the QoS classifier.
Selected Class	<p>Highlight a QoS classifier in the Available Class box and use the > button to move it to the Selected Class box.</p> <p>To remove a QoS classifier from the Selected Class box, select it and use the < button.</p>
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.

10.8 Technical Reference

The following section contains additional technical information about the VMG features described in this chapter.

IEEE 802.1Q Tag

The IEEE 802.1Q standard defines an explicit VLAN tag in the MAC header to identify the VLAN membership of a frame across bridges. A VLAN tag includes the 12-bit VLAN ID and 3-bit user

priority. The VLAN ID associates a frame with a specific VLAN and provides the information that devices need to process the frame across the network.

IEEE 802.1p specifies the user priority field and defines up to eight separate traffic types. The following table describes the traffic types defined in the IEEE 802.1d standard (which incorporates the 802.1p).

Table 55 IEEE 802.1p Priority Level and Traffic Type

PRIORITY LEVEL	TRAFFIC TYPE
Level 7	Typically used for network control traffic such as router configuration messages.
Level 6	Typically used for voice traffic that is especially sensitive to jitter (jitter is the variations in delay).
Level 5	Typically used for video that consumes high bandwidth and is sensitive to jitter.
Level 4	Typically used for controlled load, latency-sensitive traffic such as SNA (Systems Network Architecture) transactions.
Level 3	Typically used for "excellent effort" or better than best effort and would include important business traffic that can tolerate some delay.
Level 2	This is for "spare bandwidth".
Level 1	This is typically used for non-critical "background" traffic such as bulk transfers that are allowed but that should not affect other applications and users.
Level 0	Typically used for best-effort traffic.

DiffServ

QoS is used to prioritize source-to-destination traffic flows. All packets in the flow are given the same priority. You can use CoS (class of service) to give different priorities to different packet types.

DiffServ (Differentiated Services) is a class of service (CoS) model that marks packets so that they receive specific per-hop treatment at DiffServ-compliant network devices along the route based on the application types and traffic flow. Packets are marked with DiffServ Code Points (DSCPs) indicating the level of service desired. This allows the intermediary DiffServ-compliant network devices to handle the packets differently depending on the code points without the need to negotiate paths or remember state information for every flow. In addition, applications do not have to request a particular service or give advanced notice of where the traffic is going.

DSCP and Per-Hop Behavior

DiffServ defines a new Differentiated Services (DS) field to replace the Type of Service (TOS) field in the IP header. The DS field contains a 2-bit unused field and a 6-bit DSCP field which can define up to 64 service levels. The following figure illustrates the DS field.

DSCP is backward compatible with the three precedence bits in the ToS octet so that non-DiffServ compliant, ToS-enabled network device will not conflict with the DSCP mapping.



The DSCP value determines the forwarding behavior, the PHB (Per-Hop Behavior), that each packet gets across the DiffServ network. Based on the marking rule, different kinds of traffic can be marked for different kinds of forwarding. Resources can then be allocated according to the DSCP values and the configured policies.

IP Precedence

Similar to IEEE 802.1p prioritization at layer-2, you can use IP precedence to prioritize packets in a layer-3 network. IP precedence uses three bits of the eight-bit ToS (Type of Service) field in the IP header. There are eight classes of services (ranging from zero to seven) in IP precedence. Zero is the lowest priority level and seven is the highest.

Automatic Priority Queue Assignment

If you enable QoS on the VMG, the VMG can automatically base on the IEEE 802.1p priority level, IP precedence and/or packet length to assign priority to traffic which does not match a class.

The following table shows you the internal layer-2 and layer-3 QoS mapping on the VMG. On the VMG, traffic assigned to higher priority queues gets through faster while traffic in lower index queues is dropped if the network is congested.

Table 56 Internal Layer2 and Layer3 QoS Mapping

PRIORITY QUEUE	LAYER 2	LAYER 3		
	IEEE 802.1P USER PRIORITY (ETHERNET PRIORITY)	TOS (IP PRECEDENCE)	DSCP	IP PACKET LENGTH (BYTE)
0	1	0	000000	
1	2			
2	0	0	000000	>1100
3	3	1	001110 001100 001010 001000	250~1100
4	4	2	010110 010100 010010 010000	
5	5	3	011110 011100 011010 011000	<250
6	6	4	100110 100100 100010 100000	
		5	101110 101000	
7	7	6	110000	
		7	111000	

Token Bucket

The token bucket algorithm uses tokens in a bucket to control when traffic can be transmitted. The bucket stores tokens, each of which represents one byte. The algorithm allows bursts of up to b bytes which is also the bucket size, so the bucket can hold up to b tokens. Tokens are generated and added into the bucket at a constant rate. The following shows how tokens work with packets:

- A packet can be transmitted if the number of tokens in the bucket is equal to or greater than the size of the packet (in bytes).
- After a packet is transmitted, a number of tokens corresponding to the packet size is removed from the bucket.
- If there are no tokens in the bucket, the VMG stops transmitting until enough tokens are generated.
- If not enough tokens are available, the VMG treats the packet in either one of the following ways:
 - In traffic shaping:
 - Holds it in the queue until enough tokens are available in the bucket.
 - In traffic policing:
 - Drops it.
 - Transmits it but adds a DSCP mark. The VMG may drop these marked packets if the network is overloaded.

Configure the bucket size to be equal to or less than the amount of the bandwidth that the interface can support. It does not help if you set it to a bucket size over the interface's capability. The smaller the bucket size, the lower the data transmission rate and that may cause outgoing packets to be dropped. A larger transmission rate requires a big bucket size. For example, use a bucket size of 10 kbytes to get the transmission rate up to 10 Mbps.

Single Rate Three Color Marker

The Single Rate Three Color Marker (srTCM, defined in RFC 2697) is a type of traffic policing that identifies packets by comparing them to one user-defined rate, the Committed Information Rate (CIR), and two burst sizes: the Committed Burst Size (CBS) and Excess Burst Size (EBS).

The srTCM evaluates incoming packets and marks them with one of three colors which refer to packet loss priority levels. High packet loss priority level is referred to as red, medium is referred to as yellow and low is referred to as green.

The srTCM is based on the token bucket filter and has two token buckets (CBS and EBS). Tokens are generated and added into the bucket at a constant rate, called Committed Information Rate (CIR). When the first bucket (CBS) is full, new tokens overflow into the second bucket (EBS).

All packets are evaluated against the CBS. If a packet does not exceed the CBS it is marked green. Otherwise it is evaluated against the EBS. If it is below the EBS then it is marked yellow. If it exceeds the EBS then it is marked red.

The following shows how tokens work with incoming packets in srTCM:

- A packet arrives. The packet is marked green and can be transmitted if the number of tokens in the CBS bucket is equal to or greater than the size of the packet (in bytes).
- After a packet is transmitted, a number of tokens corresponding to the packet size is removed from the CBS bucket.

- If there are not enough tokens in the CBS bucket, the VMG checks the EBS bucket. The packet is marked yellow if there are sufficient tokens in the EBS bucket. Otherwise, the packet is marked red. No tokens are removed if the packet is dropped.

Two Rate Three Color Marker

The Two Rate Three Color Marker (trTCM, defined in RFC 2698) is a type of traffic policing that identifies packets by comparing them to two user-defined rates: the Committed Information Rate (CIR) and the Peak Information Rate (PIR). The CIR specifies the average rate at which packets are admitted to the network. The PIR is greater than or equal to the CIR. CIR and PIR values are based on the guaranteed and maximum bandwidth respectively as negotiated between a service provider and client.

The trTCM evaluates incoming packets and marks them with one of three colors which refer to packet loss priority levels. High packet loss priority level is referred to as red, medium is referred to as yellow and low is referred to as green.

The trTCM is based on the token bucket filter and has two token buckets (Committed Burst Size (CBS) and Peak Burst Size (PBS)). Tokens are generated and added into the two buckets at the CIR and PIR respectively.

All packets are evaluated against the PIR. If a packet exceeds the PIR it is marked red. Otherwise it is evaluated against the CIR. If it exceeds the CIR then it is marked yellow. Finally, if it is below the CIR then it is marked green.

The following shows how tokens work with incoming packets in trTCM:

- A packet arrives. If the number of tokens in the PBS bucket is less than the size of the packet (in bytes), the packet is marked red and may be dropped regardless of the CBS bucket. No tokens are removed if the packet is dropped.
- If the PBS bucket has enough tokens, the VMG checks the CBS bucket. The packet is marked green and can be transmitted if the number of tokens in the CBS bucket is equal to or greater than the size of the packet (in bytes). Otherwise, the packet is marked yellow.

Network Address Translation (NAT)

11.1 Overview

This chapter discusses how to configure NAT on the VMG. NAT (Network Address Translation - NAT, RFC 1631) is the translation of the IP address of a host in a packet, for example, the source address of an outgoing packet, used within one network to a different IP address known within another network.

11.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- Use the Port Forwarding screen to configure forward incoming service requests to the server(s) on your local network ([Section 11.2 on page 161](#)).
- Use the Applications screen to forward incoming service requests to the server(s) on your local network ([Section 11.3 on page 164](#)).
- Use the Port Triggering screen to add and configure the VMG's trigger port settings ([Section 11.4 on page 165](#)).
- Use the DMZ screen to configure a default server ([Section 11.5 on page 168](#)).
- Use the ALG screen to enable and disable the NAT and SIP (VoIP) ALG in the VMG ([Section 11.6 on page 168](#)).
- Use the Address Mapping screen to configure the VMG's address mapping settings ([Section 11.7 on page 169](#)).
- Use the Sessions screen to configure the VMG's maximum number of NAT sessions ([Section 11.7 on page 169](#)).

11.1.2 What You Need To Know

Inside/Outside

Inside/outside denotes where a host is located relative to the VMG, for example, the computers of your subscribers are the inside hosts, while the web servers on the Internet are the outside hosts.

Global/Local

Global/local denotes the IP address of a host in a packet as the packet traverses a router, for example, the local address refers to the IP address of a host when the packet is in the local network, while the global address refers to the IP address of the host when the same packet is traveling in the WAN side.

NAT

In the simplest form, NAT changes the source IP address in a packet received from a subscriber (the inside local address) to another (the inside global address) before forwarding the packet to the WAN side. When the response comes back, NAT translates the destination address (the inside global address) back to the inside local address before forwarding it to the original inside host.

Port Forwarding

A port forwarding set is a list of inside (behind NAT on the LAN) servers, for example, web or FTP, that you can make visible to the outside world even though NAT makes your whole inside network appear as a single computer to the outside world.

Finding Out More

See [Section 11.9 on page 171](#) for advanced technical information on NAT.

11.2 The Port Forwarding Screen

Use the Port Forwarding screen to forward incoming service requests to the server(s) on your local network.

You may enter a single port number or a range of port numbers to be forwarded, and the local IP address of the desired server. The port number identifies a service; for example, web service is on port 80 and FTP on port 21. In some cases, such as for unknown services or where one server can support more than one service (for example both FTP and web service), it might be better to specify a range of port numbers. You can allocate a server IP address that corresponds to a port or a range of ports.

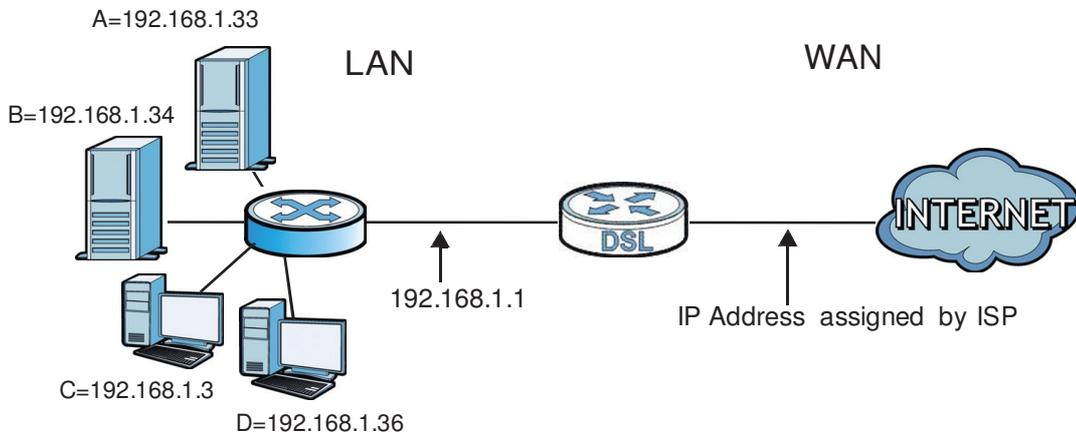
The most often used port numbers and services are shown in [Appendix D on page 329](#). Please refer to RFC 1700 for further information about port numbers.

Note: Many residential broadband ISP accounts do not allow you to run any server processes (such as a Web or FTP server) from your location. Your ISP may periodically check for servers and may suspend your account if it discovers any active services at your location. If you are unsure, refer to your ISP.

Configuring Servers Behind Port Forwarding (Example)

Let's say you want to assign ports 21-25 to one FTP, Telnet and SMTP server (A in the example), port 80 to another (B in the example) and assign a default server IP address of 192.168.1.35 to a third (C in the example). You assign the LAN IP addresses and the ISP assigns the WAN IP address. The NAT network appears as a single host on the Internet.

Figure 77 Multiple Servers Behind NAT Example



Click Network Setting > NAT > Port Forwarding to open the following screen.

See [Appendix D on page 329](#) for port numbers commonly used for particular services.

Figure 78 Network Setting > NAT > Port Forwarding

Add New Rule											
#	Status	Service Name	WAN Interface	WAN IP	Server IP Address	Start Port	End Port	Translation Start Port	Translation End Port	Protocol	Modify
<p>Note: The TCP port 7547 is reserved for TR069 connection request port.</p>											

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 57 Network Setting > NAT > Port Forwarding

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add New Rule	Click this to add a new rule.
#	This is the index number of the entry.
Status	This field displays whether the NAT rule is active or not. A yellow bulb signifies that this rule is active. A gray bulb signifies that this rule is not active.
Service Name	This shows the service's name.
WAN Interface	This shows the WAN interface through which the service is forwarded.
WAN IP	This field displays the incoming packet's destination IP address.
Server IP Address	This is the server's IP address.
Start Port	This is the first external port number that identifies a service.
End Port	This is the last external port number that identifies a service.
Translation Start Port	This is the first internal port number that identifies a service.
Translation End Port	This is the last internal port number that identifies a service.
Protocol	This shows the IP protocol supported by this virtual server, whether it is TCP, UDP, or TCP/UDP.
Modify	Click the Edit icon to edit this rule. Click the Delete icon to delete an existing rule.

11.2.1 Add/Edit Port Forwarding

Click Add New Rule in the Port Forwarding screen or click the Edit icon next to an existing rule to open the following screen.

Figure 79 Port Forwarding: Add/Edit

Add New Rule

Active

Service Name :

WAN Interface :

WAN IP :

Start Port :

End Port :

Translation Start Port :

Translation End Port :

Server IP Address :

Protocol :

Note:
If Start Port and End Port configured to the same port, the input text of Translation Start Port can be configurable, and when user configure this value to different port number, its means configure for Port Translation(one to one mapping)

OK Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 58 Port Forwarding: Add/Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Clear the checkbox to disable the rule. Select the check box to enable it.
Service Name	Enter a name to identify this rule using keyboard characters (A-Z, a-z, 1-2 and so on).
WAN Interface	Select the WAN interface through which the service is forwarded. You must have already configured a WAN connection with NAT enabled.
WAN IP	Enter the WAN IP address for which the incoming service is destined. If the packet's destination IP address doesn't match the one specified here, the port forwarding rule will not be applied.
Start Port	Enter the original destination port for the packets. To forward only one port, enter the port number again in the End Port field. To forward a series of ports, enter the start port number here and the end port number in the End Port field.
End Port	Enter the last port of the original destination port range. To forward only one port, enter the port number in the Start Port field above and then enter it again in this field. To forward a series of ports, enter the last port number in a series that begins with the port number in the Start Port field above.
Translation Start Port	This shows the port number to which you want the VMG to translate the incoming port. For a range of ports, enter the first number of the range to which you want the incoming ports translated.
Translation End Port	This shows the last port of the translated port range.

Table 58 Port Forwarding: Add/Edit (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Server IP Address	Enter the inside IP address of the virtual server here.
Protocol	Select the protocol supported by this virtual server. Choices are TCP, UDP, or TCP/UDP.
OK	Click OK to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.

11.3 The Applications Screen

This screen provides a summary of all NAT applications and their configuration. In addition, this screen allows you to create new applications and/or remove existing ones.

To access this screen, click Network Setting > NAT > Applications. The following screen appears.

Figure 80 Network Setting > NAT > Applications



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 59 Network Setting > NAT > Applications

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add New Application	Click this to add a new NAT application rule.
Application Forwarded	This field shows the type of application that the service forwards.
WAN Interface	This field shows the WAN interface through which the service is forwarded.
Server IP Address	This field displays the destination IP address for the service.
Modify	Click the Delete icon to delete the rule.

11.3.1 Add New Application

This screen lets you create new NAT application rules. Click Add New Application in the Applications screen to open the following screen.

Figure 81 Applications: Add

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 60 Applications: Add

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
WAN Interface	Select the WAN interface that you want to apply this NAT rule to.
Server IP Address	Enter the inside IP address of the application here.
Application Category	Select the category of the application from the drop-down list box.
Application Forwarded	Select a service from the drop-down list box and the VMG automatically configures the protocol, start, end, and map port number that define the service.
View Rule	Click this to display the configuration of the service that you have chosen in Application Forwarded.
OK	Click OK to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.

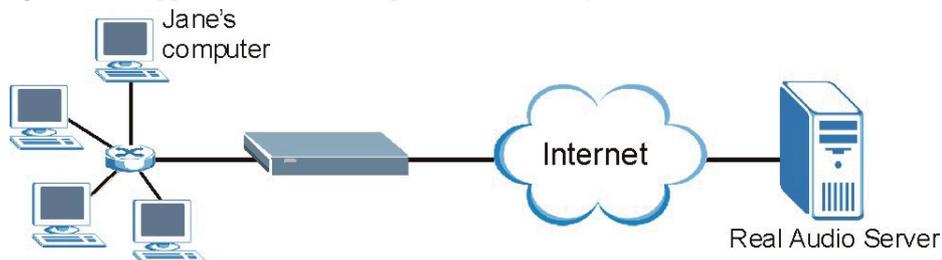
11.4 The Port Triggering Screen

Some services use a dedicated range of ports on the client side and a dedicated range of ports on the server side. With regular port forwarding you set a forwarding port in NAT to forward a service (coming in from the server on the WAN) to the IP address of a computer on the client side (LAN). The problem is that port forwarding only forwards a service to a single LAN IP address. In order to use the same service on a different LAN computer, you have to manually replace the LAN computer's IP address in the forwarding port with another LAN computer's IP address.

Trigger port forwarding solves this problem by allowing computers on the LAN to dynamically take turns using the service. The VMG records the IP address of a LAN computer that sends traffic to the WAN to request a service with a specific port number and protocol (a "trigger" port). When the VMG's WAN port receives a response with a specific port number and protocol ("open" port), the VMG forwards the traffic to the LAN IP address of the computer that sent the request. After that computer's connection for that service closes, another computer on the LAN can use the service in the same manner. This way you do not need to configure a new IP address each time you want a different LAN computer to use the application.

For example:

Figure 82 Trigger Port Forwarding Process: Example



- 1 Jane requests a file from the Real Audio server (port 7070).
- 2 Port 7070 is a "trigger" port and causes the VMG to record Jane's computer IP address. The VMG associates Jane's computer IP address with the "open" port range of 6970-7170.
- 3 The Real Audio server responds using a port number ranging between 6970-7170.
- 4 The VMG forwards the traffic to Jane's computer IP address.
- 5 Only Jane can connect to the Real Audio server until the connection is closed or times out. The VMG times out in three minutes with UDP (User Datagram Protocol) or two hours with TCP/IP (Transfer Control Protocol/Internet Protocol).

Click Network Setting > NAT > Port Triggering to open the following screen. Use this screen to view your VMG's trigger port settings.

Figure 83 Network Setting > NAT > Port Triggering

Add New Rule										
#	Status	Service Name	WAN Interface	Trigger Start Port	Trigger End Port	Trigger Proto.	Open Start Port	Open End Port	Open Proto.	Modify
<p>Note:</p> <p>1. The sum of trigger ports in all rules must be less than 1000 and every open port range must be less than 1000. When the protocol is TCP/UDP, the ports are counted twice.</p> <p>2. The TCP port 7547 is reserved for TR069 connection request port.</p>										

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 61 Network Setting > NAT > Port Triggering

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add New Rule	Click this to create a new rule.
#	This is the index number of the entry.
Status	This field displays whether the port triggering rule is active or not. A yellow bulb signifies that this rule is active. A gray bulb signifies that this rule is not active.
Service Name	This field displays the name of the service used by this rule.
WAN Interface	This field shows the WAN interface through which the service is forwarded.
Trigger Start Port	The trigger port is a port (or a range of ports) that causes (or triggers) the VMG to record the IP address of the LAN computer that sent the traffic to a server on the WAN. This is the first port number that identifies a service.
Trigger End Port	This is the last port number that identifies a service.
Trigger Proto.	This is the trigger transport layer protocol.

Table 61 Network Setting > NAT > Port Triggering (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Open Start Port	The open port is a port (or a range of ports) that a server on the WAN uses when it sends out a particular service. The VMG forwards the traffic with this port (or range of ports) to the client computer on the LAN that requested the service. This is the first port number that identifies a service.
Open End Port	This is the last port number that identifies a service.
Open Proto.	This is the open transport layer protocol.
Modify	Click the Edit icon to edit this rule. Click the Delete icon to delete an existing rule.

11.4.1 Add/Edit Port Triggering Rule

This screen lets you create new port triggering rules. Click Add new rule in the Port Triggering screen or click a rule's Edit icon to open the following screen.

Figure 84 Port Triggering: Add/Edit

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 62 Port Triggering: Configuration Add/Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select the check box to enable this rule.
Service Name	Enter a name to identify this rule using keyboard characters (A-Z, a-z, 1-2 and so on).
WAN Interface	Select a WAN interface for which you want to configure port triggering rules.
Trigger Start Port	The trigger port is a port (or a range of ports) that causes (or triggers) the VMG to record the IP address of the LAN computer that sent the traffic to a server on the WAN. Type a port number or the starting port number in a range of port numbers.
Trigger End Port	Type a port number or the ending port number in a range of port numbers.
Trigger Protocol	Select the transport layer protocol from TCP, UDP, or TCP/UDP.

Table 62 Port Triggering: Configuration Add/Edit (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Open Start Port	The open port is a port (or a range of ports) that a server on the WAN uses when it sends out a particular service. The VMG forwards the traffic with this port (or range of ports) to the client computer on the LAN that requested the service. Type a port number or the starting port number in a range of port numbers.
Open End Port	Type a port number or the ending port number in a range of port numbers.
Open Protocol	Select the transport layer protocol from TCP, UDP, or TCP/UDP.
OK	Click OK to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.

11.5 The DMZ Screen

In addition to the servers for specified services, NAT supports a default server IP address. A default server receives packets from ports that are not specified in the NAT Port Forwarding Setup screen.

Figure 85 Network Setting > NAT > DMZ

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 63 Network Setting > NAT > DMZ

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Default Server Address	Enter the IP address of the default server which receives packets from ports that are not specified in the NAT Port Forwarding screen. Note: If you do not assign a Default Server Address, the VMG discards all packets received for ports that are not specified in the NAT Port Forwarding screen.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to restore your previously saved settings.

11.6 The ALG Screen

Some NAT routers may include a SIP Application Layer Gateway (ALG). A SIP ALG allows SIP calls to pass through NAT by examining and translating IP addresses embedded in the data stream. When the VMG registers with the SIP register server, the SIP ALG translates the VMG's private IP address inside the SIP data stream to a public IP address. You do not need to use STUN or an outbound proxy if your VMG is behind a SIP ALG.

Use this screen to enable and disable the NAT and SIP (VoIP) ALG in the VMG. To access this screen, click Network Setting > NAT > ALG.

Figure 86 Network Setting > NAT > ALG

NAT ALG :	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable (settings are invalid when disabled)
SIP ALG :	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
RTSP ALG :	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
<input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 64 Network Setting > NAT > ALG

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
NAT ALG	Enable this to make sure applications such as FTP and file transfer in IM applications work correctly with port-forwarding and address-mapping rules.
SIP ALG	Enable this to make sure SIP (VoIP) works correctly with port-forwarding and address-mapping rules.
RTSP ALG	Enable this to have the VMG detect RTSP traffic and help build RTSP sessions through its NAT. The Real Time Streaming (media control) Protocol (RTSP) is a remote control for multimedia on the Internet.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to restore your previously saved settings.

11.7 The Address Mapping Screen

Ordering your rules is important because the VMG applies the rules in the order that you specify. When a rule matches the current packet, the VMG takes the corresponding action and the remaining rules are ignored.

Click Network Setting > NAT > Address Mapping to display the following screen.

Figure 87 Network Setting > NAT > Address Mapping

<input type="button" value="Add new rule"/>							
<input type="button" value="Set"/>	Local Start IP	Local End IP	Global Start IP	Global End IP	Type	Wan Interface Name	<input type="button" value="Modify"/>

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 65 Network Setting > NAT > Address Mapping

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add new rule	Click this to create a new rule.
Set	This is the index number of the address mapping set.
Local Start IP	This is the starting Inside Local IP Address (ILA).
Local End IP	This is the ending Inside Local IP Address (ILA). If the rule is for all local IP addresses, then this field displays 0.0.0.0 as the Local Start IP address and 255.255.255.255 as the Local End IP address. This field is blank for One-to-One mapping types.
Global Start IP	This is the starting Inside Global IP Address (IGA). Enter 0.0.0.0 here if you have a dynamic IP address from your ISP. You can only do this for the Many-to-One mapping type.
Global End IP	This is the ending Inside Global IP Address (IGA). This field is blank for One-to-One and Many-to-One mapping types.

Table 65 Network Setting > NAT > Address Mapping (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Type	This is the address mapping type. One-to-One: This mode maps one local IP address to one global IP address. Note that port numbers do not change for the One-to-one NAT mapping type. Many-to-One: This mode maps multiple local IP addresses to one global IP address. This is equivalent to SUA (i.e., PAT, port address translation), the VMG's Single User Account feature that previous routers supported only. Many-to-Many: This mode maps multiple local IP addresses to shared global IP addresses.
Wan Interface Name	This is the WAN interface to which the address mapping rule applies.
Modify	Click the Edit icon to go to the screen where you can edit the address mapping rule. Click the Delete icon to delete an existing address mapping rule. Note that subsequent address mapping rules move up by one when you take this action.

11.7.1 Add/Edit Address Mapping Rule

To add or edit an address mapping rule, click Add new rule or the rule's edit icon in the Address Mapping screen to display the screen shown next.

Figure 88 Address Mapping: Add/Edit

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 66 Address Mapping: Add/Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Type	Choose the IP/port mapping type from one of the following. One-to-One: This mode maps one local IP address to one global IP address. Note that port numbers do not change for the One-to-one NAT mapping type. Many-to-One: This mode maps multiple local IP addresses to one global IP address. This is equivalent to SUA (i.e., PAT, port address translation), the VMG's Single User Account feature that previous routers supported only. Many-to-Many: This mode maps multiple local IP addresses to shared global IP addresses.
Local Start IP	Enter the starting Inside Local IP Address (ILA).

Table 66 Address Mapping: Add/Edit (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Local End IP	Enter the ending Inside Local IP Address (ILA). If the rule is for all local IP addresses, then this field displays 0.0.0.0 as the Local Start IP address and 255.255.255.255 as the Local End IP address. This field is blank for One-to-One mapping types.
Global Start IP	Enter the starting Inside Global IP Address (IGA). Enter 0.0.0.0 here if you have a dynamic IP address from your ISP. You can only do this for the Many-to-One mapping type.
Global End IP	Enter the ending Inside Global IP Address (IGA). This field is blank for One-to-One and Many-to-One mapping types.
Set	Select the number of the mapping set for which you want to configure.
WAN Interface	Select a WAN interface to which the address mapping rule applies.
OK	Click OK to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.

11.8 The Sessions Screen

Use this screen to limit the number of concurrent NAT sessions a client can use. Click Network Setting > NAT > Sessions to display the following screen.

Figure 89 Network Setting > NAT > Sessions

MAX NAT Session Per Host:

Note:
 Enter session number and click "Apply" to activate this feature.
 Clear the session number field and click "Apply" to deactivate this feature.

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 67 Network Setting > NAT > Sessions

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
MAX NAT Session Per Host	Use this field to set a limit to the number of concurrent NAT sessions each client host can have. If only a few clients use peer to peer applications, you can raise this number to improve their performance. With heavy peer-to-peer application use, lower this number to ensure no single client uses too many of the available NAT sessions.
Apply	Click this to save your changes on this screen.
Cancel	Click this to exit this screen without saving any changes.

11.9 Technical Reference

This part contains more information regarding NAT.

11.9.1 NAT Definitions

Inside/outside denotes where a host is located relative to the VMG, for example, the computers of your subscribers are the inside hosts, while the web servers on the Internet are the outside hosts.

Global/local denotes the IP address of a host in a packet as the packet traverses a router, for example, the local address refers to the IP address of a host when the packet is in the local network, while the global address refers to the IP address of the host when the same packet is traveling in the WAN side.

Note that inside/outside refers to the location of a host, while global/local refers to the IP address of a host used in a packet. Thus, an inside local address (ILA) is the IP address of an inside host in a packet when the packet is still in the local network, while an inside global address (IGA) is the IP address of the same inside host when the packet is on the WAN side. The following table summarizes this information.

Table 68 NAT Definitions

ITEM	DESCRIPTION
Inside	This refers to the host on the LAN.
Outside	This refers to the host on the WAN.
Local	This refers to the packet address (source or destination) as the packet travels on the LAN.
Global	This refers to the packet address (source or destination) as the packet travels on the WAN.

NAT never changes the IP address (either local or global) of an outside host.

11.9.2 What NAT Does

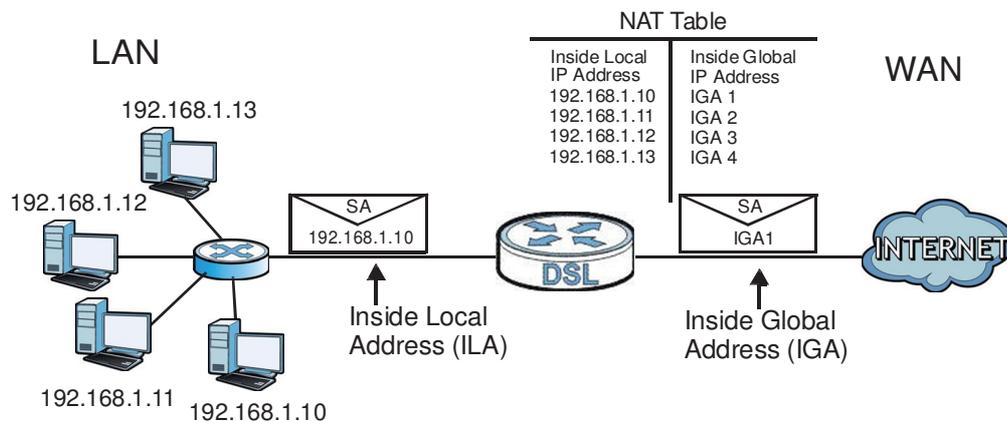
In the simplest form, NAT changes the source IP address in a packet received from a subscriber (the inside local address) to another (the inside global address) before forwarding the packet to the WAN side. When the response comes back, NAT translates the destination address (the inside global address) back to the inside local address before forwarding it to the original inside host. Note that the IP address (either local or global) of an outside host is never changed.

The global IP addresses for the inside hosts can be either static or dynamically assigned by the ISP. In addition, you can designate servers, for example, a web server and a telnet server, on your local network and make them accessible to the outside world. If you do not define any servers (for Many-to-One and Many-to-Many Overload mapping), NAT offers the additional benefit of firewall protection. With no servers defined, your VMG filters out all incoming inquiries, thus preventing intruders from probing your network. For more information on IP address translation, refer to RFC 1631, The IP Network Address Translator (NAT).

11.9.3 How NAT Works

Each packet has two addresses – a source address and a destination address. For outgoing packets, the ILA (Inside Local Address) is the source address on the LAN, and the IGA (Inside Global Address) is the source address on the WAN. For incoming packets, the ILA is the destination address on the LAN, and the IGA is the destination address on the WAN. NAT maps private (local) IP addresses to globally unique ones required for communication with hosts on other networks. It replaces the original IP source address (and TCP or UDP source port numbers for Many-to-One and Many-to-Many Overload NAT mapping) in each packet and then forwards it to the Internet. The VMG keeps track of the original addresses and port numbers so incoming reply packets can have their original values restored. The following figure illustrates this.

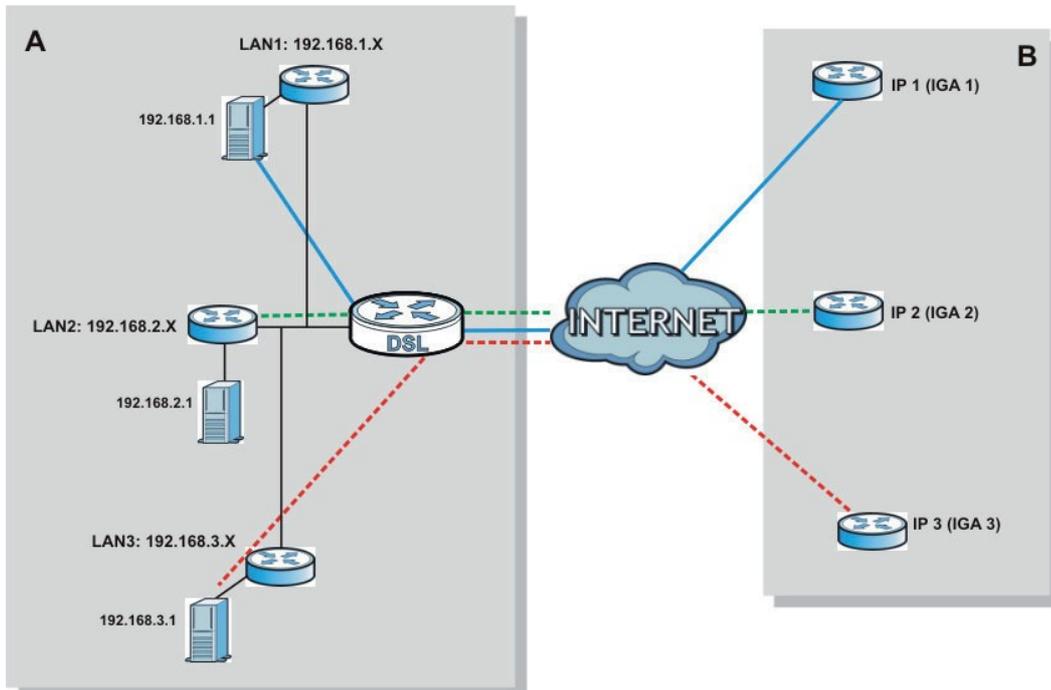
Figure 90 How NAT Works



11.9.4 NAT Application

The following figure illustrates a possible NAT application, where three inside LANs (logical LANs using IP alias) behind the VMG can communicate with three distinct WAN networks.

Figure 91 NAT Application With IP Alias



Port Forwarding: Services and Port Numbers

The most often used port numbers are shown in the following table. Please refer to RFC 1700 for further information about port numbers. Please also refer to the Supporting CD for more examples and details on port forwarding and NAT.

Table 69 Services and Port Numbers

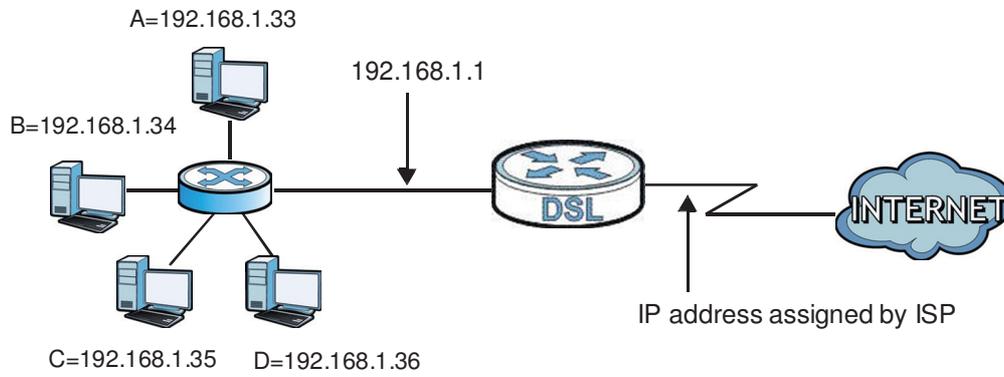
SERVICES	PORT NUMBER
ECHO	7
FTP (File Transfer Protocol)	21
SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol)	25
DNS (Domain Name System)	53
Finger	79
HTTP (Hyper Text Transfer protocol or WWW, Web)	80
POP3 (Post Office Protocol)	110
NNTP (Network News Transport Protocol)	119
SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol)	161
SNMP trap	162
PPTP (Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol)	1723

Port Forwarding Example

Let's say you want to assign ports 21-25 to one FTP, Telnet and SMTP server (A in the example), port 80 to another (B in the example) and assign a default server IP address of 192.168.1.35 to a

third (C in the example). You assign the LAN IP addresses and the ISP assigns the WAN IP address. The NAT network appears as a single host on the Internet.

Figure 92 Multiple Servers Behind NAT Example



Dynamic DNS Setup

12.1 Overview

DNS

DNS (Domain Name System) is for mapping a domain name to its corresponding IP address and vice versa. The DNS server is extremely important because without it, you must know the IP address of a machine before you can access it.

In addition to the system DNS server(s), each WAN interface (service) is set to have its own static or dynamic DNS server list. You can configure a DNS static route to forward DNS queries for certain domain names through a specific WAN interface to its DNS server(s). The VMG uses a system DNS server (in the order you specify in the Broadband screen) to resolve domain names that do not match any DNS routing entry. After the VMG receives a DNS reply from a DNS server, it creates a new entry for the resolved IP address in the routing table.

Dynamic DNS

Dynamic DNS allows you to update your current dynamic IP address with one or many dynamic DNS services so that anyone can contact you (in NetMeeting, CU-SeeMe, etc.). You can also access your FTP server or Web site on your own computer using a domain name (for instance myhost.dhs.org, where myhost is a name of your choice) that will never change instead of using an IP address that changes each time you reconnect. Your friends or relatives will always be able to call you even if they don't know your IP address.

First of all, you need to have registered a dynamic DNS account with www.dyndns.org. This is for people with a dynamic IP from their ISP or DHCP server that would still like to have a domain name. The Dynamic DNS service provider will give you a password or key.

12.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- Use the DNS Entry screen to view, configure, or remove DNS routes ([Section 12.2 on page 177](#)).
- Use the Dynamic DNS screen to enable DDNS and configure the DDNS settings on the VMG ([Section 12.3 on page 178](#)).

12.1.2 What You Need To Know

DYNDNS Wildcard

Enabling the wildcard feature for your host causes *.yourhost.dyndns.org to be aliased to the same IP address as yourhost.dyndns.org. This feature is useful if you want to be able to use, for example, www.yourhost.dyndns.org and still reach your hostname.

If you have a private WAN IP address, then you cannot use Dynamic DNS.

12.2 The DNS Entry Screen

Use this screen to view and configure DNS routes on the VMG. Click Network Setting > DNS to open the DNS Entry screen.

Figure 93 Network Setting > DNS > DNS Entry

#	HostName	IP Address	Modify
<p>Note: The hostnames needs combination of the host's local name with its domain's name. For example, Mycomputer.home consists of a local hostname (Mycomputer) and the domain name (home).</p>			

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 70 Network Setting > DNS > DNS Entry

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add New DNS Entry	Click this to create a new DNS entry.
#	This is the index number of the entry.
Hostname	This indicates the host name or domain name.
IP Address	This indicates the IP address assigned to this computer.
Modify	Click the Edit icon to edit the rule. Click the Delete icon to delete an existing rule.

12.2.1 Add/Edit DNS Entry

You can manually add or edit the VMG's DNS name and IP address entry. Click Add New DNS Entry in the DNS Entry screen or the Edit icon next to the entry you want to edit. The screen shown next appears.

Figure 94 DNS Entry: Add/Edit

DNS Entry Configuration ✖

Host Name :

IPv4 Address :

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 71 DNS Entry: Add/Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Host Name	Enter the host name of the DNS entry.
IP Address	Enter the IP address of the DNS entry.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.

12.3 The Dynamic DNS Screen

Use this screen to change your VMG's DDNS. Click Network Setting > DNS > Dynamic DNS. The screen appears as shown.

Figure 95 Network Setting > DNS > Dynamic DNS

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 72 Network Setting > DNS > > Dynamic DNS

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Dynamic DNS Setup	
Dynamic DNS	Select Enable to use dynamic DNS.
Service Provider	Select your Dynamic DNS service provider from the drop-down list box.
Host Name	Type the domain name assigned to your VMG by your Dynamic DNS provider. You can specify up to two host names in the field separated by a comma (",").
Username	Type your user name.
Password	Type the password assigned to you.
Dynamic DNS Status	
User Authentication Result	This shows Success if the account is correctly set up with the Dynamic DNS provider account.
Last Updated Time	This shows the last time the IP address the Dynamic DNS provider has associated with the hostname was updated.
Current Dynamic IP	This shows the IP address your Dynamic DNS provider has currently associated with the hostname.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.

13.1 Overview

Use the IGMP/MLD screen to configure IGMP/MLD group settings.

13.1.1 What You Need To Know

Multicast and IGMP

See [Multicast on page 88](#) for more information.

Multicast Listener Discovery (MLD)

The Multicast Listener Discovery (MLD) protocol (defined in RFC 2710) is derived from IPv4's Internet Group Management Protocol version 2 (IGMPv2). MLD uses ICMPv6 message types, rather than IGMP message types. MLDv1 is equivalent to IGMPv2 and MLDv2 is equivalent to IGMPv3.

- MLD allows an IPv6 switch or router to discover the presence of MLD hosts who wish to receive multicast packets and the IP addresses of multicast groups the hosts want to join on its network.
- MLD snooping and MLD proxy are analogous to IGMP snooping and IGMP proxy in IPv4.
- MLD filtering controls which multicast groups a port can join.
- An MLD Report message is equivalent to an IGMP Report message, and a MLD Done message is equivalent to an IGMP Leave message.

IGMP Fast Leave

When a host leaves a multicast group (224.1.1.1), it sends an IGMP leave message to inform all routers (224.0.0.2) in the multicast group. When a router receives the leave message, it sends a specific query message to all multicast group (224.1.1.1) members to check if any other hosts are still in the group. Then the router deletes the host's information.

With the IGMP fast leave feature enabled, the router removes the host's information from the group member list once it receives a leave message from a host and the fast leave timer expires.

13.2 The IGMP/MLD Screen

Use this screen to configure multicast groups the VMG has joined and which ports have joined it. To open this screen, click Network Setting > IGMP/MLD.

Figure 96 Network Setting > IGMP/MLD

IGMP Configuration	
Default Version :	<input type="text" value="3"/>
Query Interval :	<input type="text" value="125"/>
Query Response Interval :	<input type="text" value="10"/>
Last Member Query Interval :	<input type="text" value="10"/>
Robustness Value :	<input type="text" value="2"/>
Maximum Multicast Groups :	<input type="text" value="25"/>
Maximum Multicast Data Sources (for IGMPv3 : (1-24)) :	<input type="text" value="10"/>
Maximum Multicast Group Members :	<input type="text" value="25"/>
Fast Leave Enable :	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
LAN to LAN (Intra LAN) Multicast Enable :	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Membership Join Immediate (IPTV) :	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
MLD Configuration	
Default Version :	<input type="text" value="2"/>
Query Interval :	<input type="text" value="125"/>
Query Response Interval :	<input type="text" value="10"/>
Last Member Query Interval :	<input type="text" value="10"/>
Robustness Value :	<input type="text" value="2"/>
Maximum Multicast Groups :	<input type="text" value="10"/>
Maximum Multicast Data Sources (for mldv2) :	<input type="text" value="10"/>
Maximum Multicast Group Members :	<input type="text" value="10"/>
Fast Leave Enable :	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
LAN to LAN (Intra LAN) Multicast Enable :	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 73 Network Setting > IGMP/MLD

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IGMP/MLD Configuration	
Default Version	Enter the version of IGMP (1~3) and MLD (1~2) that you want the VMG to use on the WAN.
Query Interval	Enter the number of seconds the VMG sends a query message to hosts to get the group membership information.
Query Response Interval	Enter the maximum number of seconds the VMG can wait for receiving a General Query message. Multicast routers use general queries to learn which multicast groups have members.
Last Member Query Interval	Enter the maximum number of seconds the VMG can wait for receiving a response to a Group-Specific Query message. Multicast routers use group-specific queries to learn whether any member remains in a specific multicast group.
Robustness Value	Enter the number of times (1~7) the VMG can resend a packet if packet loss occurs due to network congestion.
Maximum Multicast Groups	Enter a number to limit the number of multicast groups an interface on the VMG is allowed to join. Once a multicast member is registered in the specified number of multicast groups, any new IGMP or MLD join report frames are dropped by the interface.
Maximum Multicast Data Sources	Enter a number to limit the number of multicast data sources (1-24) a multicast group is allowed to have. Note: The setting only works for IGMPv3 and MLDv2.

Table 73 Network Setting > IGMP/MLD (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Maximum Multicast Group Members	Enter a number to limit the number of multicast members a multicast group can have.
Fast Leave Enable	Select this option to set the VMG to remove a port from the multicast tree immediately (without sending an IGMP or MLD membership query message) once it receives an IGMP or MLD leave message. This is helpful if a user wants to quickly change a TV channel (multicast group change) especially for IPTV applications.
LAN to LAN (Intra LAN) Multicast Enable	Select this to enable LAN to LAN IGMP snooping capability.
Membership Join Immediate (IPTV)	Select this to have the VMG add a host to a multicast group immediately once the VMG receives an IGMP or MLD join message.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the VMG.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.

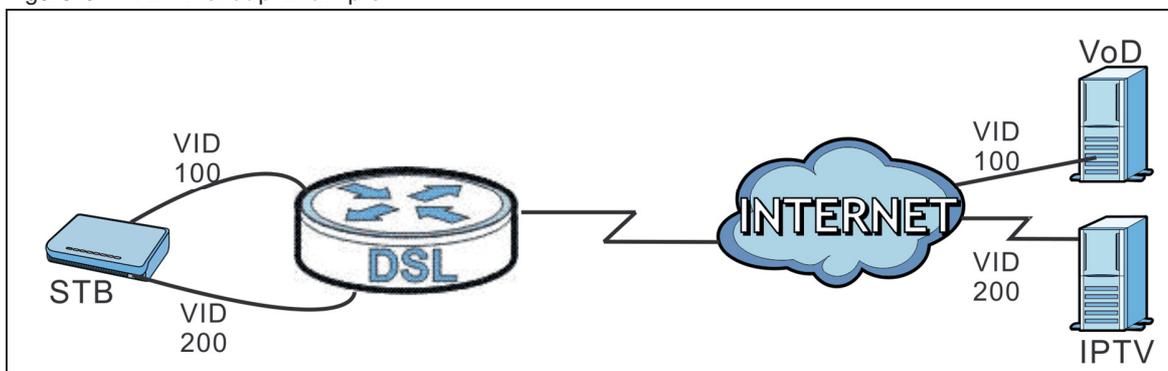
Vlan Group

14.1 Overview

Virtual LAN IDs are used to identify different traffic types over the same physical link.

In the following example, the VMG (DSL) can use VLAN IDs (VID) 100 and 200 to identify Video-on-Demand and IPTV traffic respectively coming from the two VoD and IPTV multicast servers. The VMG (DSL) can also tag outgoing requests to these servers with these VLAN IDs.

Figure 97 VLAN Group Example



14.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

Use these screens to group separate VLAN groups together to be treated as one VLAN group.

14.2 The Vlan Group Screen

Click Network Setting > Vlan Group to open the following screen.

Figure 98 Network Setting > Vlan Group

Add New VLAN Group				
#	Group Name	VLAN ID	Interface	Modify
1	test	1111	LAN1T,LAN2T,LAN3U	

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 74 Network Setting > Vlan Group

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add New Vlan Group	Click this button to create a new VLAN group.
#	This is the index number of the VLAN group.
Group Name	This shows the descriptive name of the VLAN group.
VLAN ID	This shows the unique ID number that identifies the VLAN group.
Interfaces	This shows the LAN ports included in the VLAN group and if traffic leaving the port will be tagged with the VLAN ID.
Modify	Click the Edit icon to change an existing VLAN group setting or click the Delete icon to remove the VLAN group.

14.2.1 Add/Edit a VLAN Group

Click the Add New VLAN Group button in the Vlan Group screen to open the following screen. Use this screen to create a new VLAN group.

Figure 99 Add/Edit VLAN Group

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 75 Add/Edit VLAN Group

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VLAN Group Name	Enter a name to identify this group. You can enter up to 30 characters. You can use letters, numbers, hyphens (-) and underscores (_). Spaces are not allowed.
VLAN ID	Enter a unique ID number, from 1 to 4,094, to identify this VLAN group. Outgoing traffic is tagged with this ID if Txtagging is selected below.
LAN	Select Include to add the associated LAN interface to this VLAN group. Select Txtagging to tag outgoing traffic from the associated LAN port with the VLAN ID number entered above. Note: LAN5 displays if the WAN port was configured as a LAN port in the Home Networking > 5th Ethernet port screen.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the VMG.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.

Interface Grouping

15.1 Overview

By default, all LAN and WAN interfaces on the VMG are in the same group and can communicate with each other. Create interface groups to have the VMG assign the IP addresses in different domains to different groups. Each group acts as an independent network on the VMG. This lets devices connected to an interface group's LAN interfaces communicate through the interface group's WAN or LAN interfaces but not other WAN or LAN interfaces.

15.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

The Interface Grouping screens let you create multiple networks on the VMG ([Section 15.2 on page 184](#)).

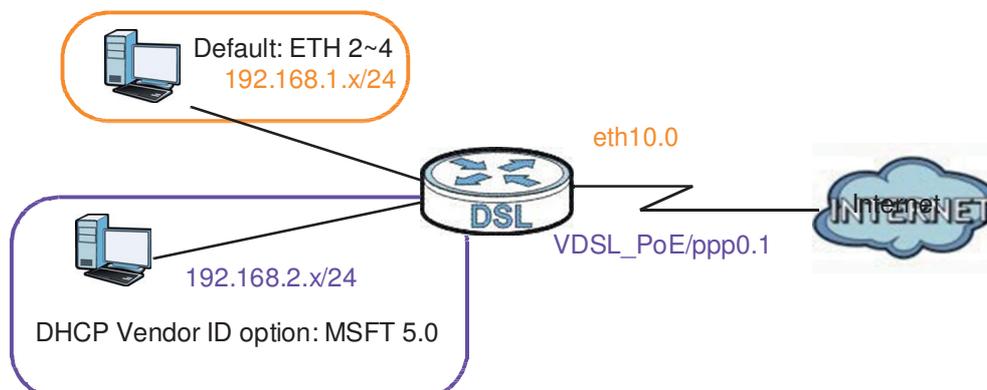
15.2 The Interface Grouping Screen

You can manually add a LAN interface to a new group. Alternatively, you can have the VMG automatically add the incoming traffic and the LAN interface on which traffic is received to an interface group when its DHCP Vendor ID option information matches one listed for the interface group.

Use the LAN screen to configure the private IP addresses the DHCP server on the VMG assigns to the clients in the default and/or user-defined groups. If you set the VMG to assign IP addresses based on the client's DHCP Vendor ID option information, you must enable DHCP server and configure LAN TCP/IP settings for both the default and user-defined groups. See [Chapter 8 on page 120](#) for more information.

In the following example, the client that sends packets with the DHCP Vendor ID option set to MSFT 5.0 (meaning it is a Windows 2000 DHCP client) is assigned the IP address 192.168.2.2 and uses the WAN VDSL_PoE/ppp0.1 interface.

Figure 100 Interface Grouping Application



Click Network Setting > Interface Grouping to open the following screen.

Figure 101 Network Setting > Interface Grouping

Add New Interface Group				
Group Name	WAN Interface	LAN Interfaces	Criteria	Modify
Default	ptm0.1,atm0.1,eth4.1,ppp0.1...	LAN1,LAN2,LAN3,LAN4,Zy...		

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 76 Network Setting > Interface Grouping

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add New Interface Group	Click this button to create a new interface group.
Group Name	This shows the descriptive name of the group.
WAN Interface	This shows the WAN interfaces in the group.
LAN Interfaces	This shows the LAN interfaces in the group.
Criteria	This shows the filtering criteria for the group.
Modify	Click the Delete icon to remove the group.
Add	Click this button to create a new group.

15.2.1 Interface Group Configuration

Click the Add New Interface Group button in the Interface Grouping screen to open the following screen. Use this screen to create a new interface group.

Note: An interface can belong to only one group at a time.

Figure 102 Interface Group Configuration

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 77 Interface Group Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Group Name	Enter a name to identify this group. You can enter up to 30 characters. You can use letters, numbers, hyphens (-) and underscores (_). Spaces are not allowed.
WAN Interface used in the grouping	Select the WAN interface this group uses. The group can have up to one PTM interface, up to one ATM interface, up to one ETH interface, and up to one WWAN interface. Select None to not add a WAN interface to this group.
Grouped LAN Interfaces Available LAN Interfaces	Select one or more LAN interfaces (Ethernet LAN, HPNA or wireless LAN) in the Available LAN Interfaces list and use the left arrow to move them to the Grouped LAN Interfaces list to add the interfaces to this group. To remove a LAN or wireless LAN interface from the Grouped LAN Interfaces, use the right-facing arrow.
Automatically Add Clients With the following DHCP Vendor IDs	Click Add to identify LAN hosts to add to the interface group by criteria such as the type of the hardware or firmware. See Section 15.2.2 on page 187 for more information.
#	This shows the index number of the rule.
Filter Criteria	This shows the filtering criteria. The LAN interface on which the matched traffic is received will belong to this group automatically.
WildCard Support	This shows if wildcard on DHCP option 60 is enabled.
Remove	Click the Remove icon to delete this rule from the VMG.

Table 77 Interface Group Configuration (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the VMG.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.

15.2.2 Interface Grouping Criteria

Click the Add button in the Interface Grouping Configuration screen to open the following screen.

Figure 103 Interface Grouping Criteria

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 78 Interface Grouping Criteria

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Source MAC Address	Enter the source MAC address of the packet.
DHCP Option 60	Select this option and enter the Vendor Class Identifier (Option 60) of the matched traffic, such as the type of the hardware or firmware.
Enable wildcard on DHCP option 60 option	Select this option to be able to use wildcards in the Vendor Class Identifier configured for DHCP option 60.
DHCP Option 61	Select this and enter the device identity of the matched traffic.
IAID	Enter the Identity Association Identifier (IAID) of the device, for example, the WAN connection index number.

Table 78 Interface Grouping Criteria (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
DUID type	<p>Select DUID-LLT (DUID Based on Link-layer Address Plus Time) to enter the hardware type, a time value and the MAC address of the device.</p> <p>Select DUID-EN (DUID Assigned by Vendor Based upon Enterprise Number) to enter the vendor's registered enterprise number.</p> <p>Select DUID-LL (DUID Based on Link-layer Address) to enter the device's hardware type and hardware address (MAC address) in the following fields.</p> <p>Select Other to enter any string that identifies the device in the DUID field.</p>
DHCP Option 125	Select this and enter vendor specific information of the matched traffic.
Enterprise Number	Enter the vendor's 32-bit enterprise number registered with the IANA (Internet Assigned Numbers Authority).
Manufacturer OUI	Specify the vendor's OUI (Organization Unique Identifier). It is usually the first three bytes of the MAC address.
Product Class	Enter the product class of the device.
Model Name	Enter the model name of the device.
Serial Number	Enter the serial number of the device.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the VMG.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.

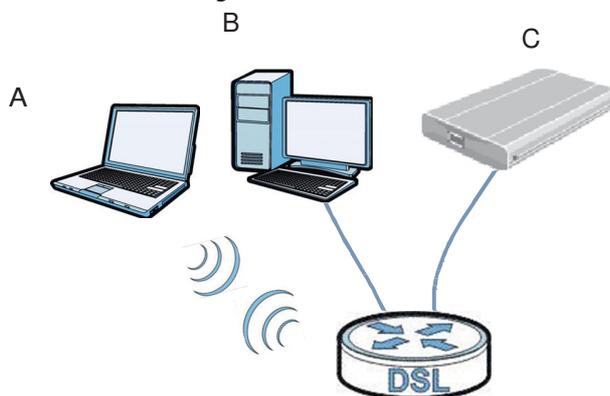
USB Service

16.1 Overview

You can share files on a USB memory stick or hard drive connected to your VMG with users on your network.

The following figure is an overview of the VMG's file server feature. Computers A and B can access files on a USB device (C) which is connected to the VMG.

Figure 104 File Sharing Overview



The VMG will not be able to join the workgroup if your local area network has restrictions set up that do not allow devices to join a workgroup. In this case, contact your network administrator.

16.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- Use the File Sharing screen to enable file-sharing server ([Section 16.1.3 on page 190](#)).
- Use the Media Server screen to enable or disable the sharing of media files ([Section 16.3 on page 192](#)).

16.1.2 What You Need To Know

The following terms and concepts may help as you read this chapter.

16.1.2.1 About File Sharing

Workgroup name

This is the name given to a set of computers that are connected on a network and share resources such as a printer or files. Windows automatically assigns the workgroup name when you set up a network.

Shares

When settings are set to default, each USB device connected to the VMG is given a folder, called a "share". If a USB hard drive connected to the VMG has more than one partition, then each partition will be allocated a share. You can also configure a "share" to be a sub-folder or file on the USB device.

File Systems

A file system is a way of storing and organizing files on your hard drive and storage device. Often different operating systems such as Windows or Linux have different file systems. The file sharing feature on your VMG supports File Allocation Table (FAT) and FAT32.

Common Internet File System

The VMG uses Common Internet File System (CIFS) protocol for its file sharing functions. CIFS compatible computers can access the USB file storage devices connected to the VMG. CIFS protocol is supported on Microsoft Windows, Linux Samba and other operating systems (refer to your systems specifications for CIFS compatibility).

16.1.3 Before You Begin

Make sure the VMG is connected to your network and turned on.

- 1 Connect the USB device to one of the VMG's USB port. Make sure the VMG is connected to your network.
- 2 The VMG detects the USB device and makes its contents available for browsing. If you are connecting a USB hard drive that comes with an external power supply, make sure it is connected to an appropriate power source that is on.

Note: If your USB device cannot be detected by the VMG, see the troubleshooting for suggestions.

16.2 The File Sharing Screen

Use this screen to set up file sharing through the VMG. The VMG's LAN users can access the shared folder (or share) from the USB device inserted in the VMG. To access this screen, click Network Setting > USB Service > File Sharing.

Figure 105 Network Setting > USB Service > File Sharing

Each field is described in the following table.

Table 79 Network Setting > USB Service > File Sharing

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Information	
Volume	This is the volume name the VMG gives to an inserted USB device.
Capacity	This is the total available memory size (in megabytes) on the USB device.
Used Space	This is the memory size (in megabytes) already used on the USB device.
Server Configuration	
File Sharing Services	Select Enable to activate file sharing through the VMG.
Account Management	
Add New User	Click this button to create a user account to access the secured shares.
Active	Select this to allow the user to access the secured shares.
Status	This field shows the status of the user. : The user account is not activated for the share. : The user account is activated for the share.
User Name	This is the name of a user who is allowed to access the secured shares on the USB device.
Modify	Click the Edit icon to modify the user account. Click the Delete icon to remove the user account from the VMG.
Apply	Click this to save your changes to the VMG.
Cancel	Click this to restore your previously saved settings.

16.2.1 The Add New User Screen

Use this screen to create a user account that can access the secured shares on the USB device. To access this screen, click the **Add New User** button in the **Network Setting > USB Service > File Sharing** screen.

Figure 106 Network Setting > USB Service > File Sharing > Add new user

Each field is described in the following table.

Table 80 Network Setting > USB Service > File Sharing > Add new user

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
User Name	Enter a user name. You can enter up to 16 characters. Only letters and numbers allowed.
New Password	Enter the password used to access the secured share. The password must be 5 to 15 characters long. Only letters and numbers are allowed. The password is case sensitive.
Retype New Password	Retype the password that you entered above.
Apply	Click this to save your changes to the VMG.
Back	Click this to return to the previous screen.

16.3 The Media Server Screen

The media server feature lets anyone on your network play video, music, and photos from the USB storage device connected to your VMG (without having to copy them to another computer). The VMG can function as a DLNA-compliant media server. The VMG streams files to DLNA-compliant media clients (like Windows Media Player). The Digital Living Network Alliance (DLNA) is a group of personal computer and electronics companies that works to make products compatible in a home network.

The VMG media server enables you to:

- Publish all shares for everyone to play media files in the USB storage device connected to the VMG.
- Use hardware-based media clients like the DMA-2500 to play the files.

Note: Anyone on your network can play the media files in the published shares. No user name and password or other form of security is used. The media server is enabled by default with the video, photo, and music shares published.

To change your VMG's media server settings, click Network Setting > USB Service > Media Server. The screen appears as shown.

Figure 107 Network Setting > USB Service > Media Server

Media Server:	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
Interface:	Default ▼
Media Library Path:	/mnt/
<input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	

The following table describes the labels in this menu.

Table 81 Network Setting > USB Service > Media Server

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Media Server	Select Enable to have the VMG function as a DLNA-compliant media server. Enable the media server to let (DLNA-compliant) media clients on your network play media files located in the shares.
Interface	Select an interface on which you want to enable the media server function.
Media Library Path	Enter the path clients use to access the media files on a USB storage device connected to the VMG.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to restore your previously saved settings.

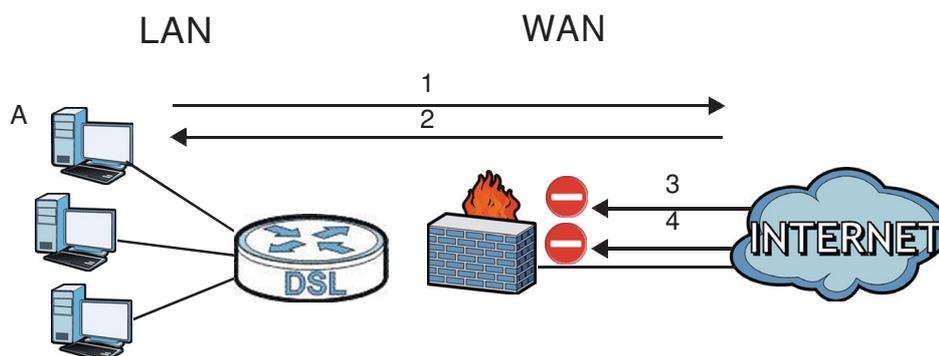
17.1 Overview

This chapter shows you how to enable and configure the VMG's security settings. Use the firewall to protect your VMG and network from attacks by hackers on the Internet and control access to it. By default the firewall:

- allows traffic that originates from your LAN computers to go to all other networks.
- blocks traffic that originates on other networks from going to the LAN.

The following figure illustrates the default firewall action. User A can initiate an IM (Instant Messaging) session from the LAN to the WAN (1). Return traffic for this session is also allowed (2). However other traffic initiated from the WAN is blocked (3 and 4).

Figure 108 Default Firewall Action



17.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- Use the General screen to configure the security level of the firewall on the VMG ([Section 17.2 on page 195](#)).
- Use the Protocol screen to add or remove predefined Internet services and configure firewall rules ([Section 17.3 on page 196](#)).
- Use the Access Control screen to view and configure incoming/outgoing filtering rules ([Section 17.4 on page 198](#)).
- Use the DoS screen to activate protection against Denial of Service (DoS) attacks ([Section 17.5 on page 200](#)).

17.1.2 What You Need to Know

SYN Attack

A SYN attack floods a targeted system with a series of SYN packets. Each packet causes the targeted system to issue a SYN-ACK response. While the targeted system waits for the ACK that follows the SYN-ACK, it queues up all outstanding SYN-ACK responses on a backlog queue. SYN-ACKs are moved off the queue only when an ACK comes back or when an internal timer terminates the three-way handshake. Once the queue is full, the system will ignore all incoming SYN requests, making the system unavailable for legitimate users.

DoS

Denials of Service (DoS) attacks are aimed at devices and networks with a connection to the Internet. Their goal is not to steal information, but to disable a device or network so users no longer have access to network resources. The VMG is pre-configured to automatically detect and thwart all known DoS attacks.

DDoS

A DDoS attack is one in which multiple compromised systems attack a single target, thereby causing denial of service for users of the targeted system.

LAND Attack

In a LAND attack, hackers flood SYN packets into the network with a spoofed source IP address of the target system. This makes it appear as if the host computer sent the packets to itself, making the system unavailable while the target system tries to respond to itself.

Ping of Death

Ping of Death uses a "ping" utility to create and send an IP packet that exceeds the maximum 65,536 bytes of data allowed by the IP specification. This may cause systems to crash, hang or reboot.

SPI

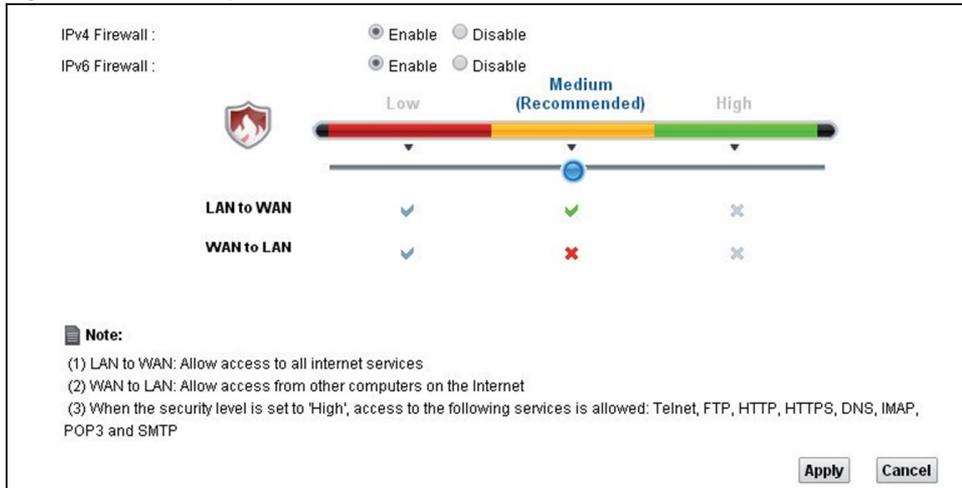
Stateful Packet Inspection (SPI) tracks each connection crossing the firewall and makes sure it is valid. Filtering decisions are based not only on rules but also context. For example, traffic from the WAN may only be allowed to cross the firewall in response to a request from the LAN.

17.2 The Firewall Screen

Use this screen to set the security level of the firewall on the VMG. Firewall rules are grouped based on the direction of travel of packets to which they apply.

Click Security > Firewall to display the General screen.

Figure 109 Security > Firewall > General



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 82 Security > Firewall > General

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Firewall	Select Enable to activate the firewall feature on the VMG.
Easy	Select Easy to allow LAN to WAN and WAN to LAN packet directions.
Medium	Select Medium to allow LAN to WAN but deny WAN to LAN packet directions.
High	Select High to deny LAN to WAN and WAN to LAN packet directions.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to restore your previously saved settings.

17.3 The Protocol Screen

You can configure customized services and port numbers in the Protocol screen. For a comprehensive list of port numbers and services, visit the IANA (Internet Assigned Number Authority) website. See [Appendix D on page 329](#) for some examples.

Click Security > Firewall > Protocol to display the following screen.

Figure 110 Security > Firewall > Protocol



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 83 Security > Firewall > Protocol

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add new service entry	Click this to add a new service.
Name	This is the name of your customized service.
Description	This is the description of your customized service.
Ports/Protocol Number	This shows the IP protocol (TCP, UDP, ICMP, or TCP/UDP) and the port number or range of ports that defines your customized service. Other and the protocol number displays if the service uses another IP protocol.
Modify	Click the Edit icon to edit the entry. Click the Delete icon to remove this entry.

17.3.1 Add/Edit a Service

Use this screen to add a customized service rule that you can use in the firewall's ACL rule configuration. Click **Add new service entry** or the edit icon next to an existing service rule in the **Service** screen to display the following screen.

Figure 111 Service: Add/Edit

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 84 Service: Add/Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Protocol	Choose the IP protocol (TCP, UDP, ICMP, or Other) that defines your customized port from the drop-down list box. Select Other to be able to enter a protocol number.
Source/ Destination Port	These fields are displayed if you select TCP or UDP as the IP port. Select Single to specify one port only or Range to specify a span of ports that define your customized service. If you select Any, the service is applied to all ports. Type a single port number or the range of port numbers that define your customized service.
Protocol Number	This field is displayed if you select Other as the protocol. Enter the protocol number of your customized port.
Add	Click this to add the protocol to the Rule List below.
Rule List	
Protocol	This is the IP port (TCP, UDP, ICMP, or Other) that defines your customized port.
Ports/Protocol Number	For TCP, UDP, ICMP, or TCP/UDP protocol rules this shows the port number or range that defines the custom service. For other IP protocol rules this shows the protocol number.
Delete	Click the Delete icon to remove the rule.
Service Name	Enter a unique name (up to 32 printable English keyboard characters, including spaces) for your customized port.
Service Description	Enter a description for your customized port.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.

17.4 The Access Control Screen

Click Security > Firewall > Access Control to display the following screen. This screen displays a list of the configured incoming or outgoing filtering rules.

Figure 112 Security > Firewall > Access Control



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 85 Security > Firewall > Access Control

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add New ACL Rule	Click this to go to add a filter rule for incoming or outgoing IP traffic.
#	This is the index number of the entry.
Name	This displays the name of the rule.
Src IP	This displays the source IP addresses to which this rule applies. Please note that a blank source address is equivalent to Any.

Table 85 Security > Firewall > Access Control (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Dst IP	This displays the destination IP addresses to which this rule applies. Please note that a blank destination address is equivalent to Any.
Service	This displays the transport layer protocol that defines the service and the direction of traffic to which this rule applies.
Action	This field displays whether the rule silently discards packets (DROP), discards packets and sends a TCP reset packet or an ICMP destination-unreachable message to the sender (REJECT) or allows the passage of packets (ACCEPT).
Modify	Click the Edit icon to edit the rule. Click the Delete icon to delete an existing rule. Note that subsequent rules move up by one when you take this action. Click the Move To icon to change the order of the rule. Enter the number in the # field.

17.4.1 Add/Edit an ACL Rule

Click Add new ACL rule or the Edit icon next to an existing ACL rule in the Access Control screen. The following screen displays.

Figure 113 Access Control: Add/Edit

The screenshot shows the 'Add New Rule' dialog box with the following fields and options:

- Filter Name: [Text input field]
- Order: [Dropdown menu with '1' selected]
- Source IP Address: [Dropdown menu with 'Specific IP Address' selected]
- Source IP Address: [Text input field] (/prefix length)
- Select Destination Device: [Dropdown menu with 'Specific IP Address' selected]
- Destination IP Address: [Text input field] (/prefix length)
- IP Type: [Dropdown menu with 'IPv4' selected]
- Select Service: [Dropdown menu with 'Specific Service' selected]
- Protocol: [Dropdown menu]
- Custom Source Port: [Text input field] (port or port:port)
- Custom Destination Port: [Text input field] (port or port:port)
- Policy: [Dropdown menu with 'ACCEPT' selected]
- Direction: [Dropdown menu with 'WAN to LAN' selected]
- Enable Rate Limit: [Checkbox, currently unchecked]
- packet(s) per [Text input field] [Dropdown menu with 'Minute' selected] (1-512)
- Scheduler Rules: [Dropdown menu with 'Add new rule' selected]

Buttons: Apply, Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 86 Access Control: Add/Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Filter Name	Enter a descriptive name of up to 16 alphanumeric characters, not including spaces, underscores, and dashes. You must enter the filter name to add an ACL rule. This field is read-only if you are editing the ACL rule.
Order	Select the order of the ACL rule.

Table 86 Access Control: Add/Edit (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Select Source Device	Select the source device to which the ACL rule applies. If you select Specific IP Address, enter the source IP address in the field below.
Source IP Address	Enter the source IP address.
Select Destination Device	Select the destination device to which the ACL rule applies. If you select Specific IP Address, enter the destination IP address in the field below.
Destination IP Address	Enter the destination IP address.
IP Type	Select whether your IP type is IPv4 or IPv6.
Select Protocol	Select the transport layer protocol that defines your customized port from the drop-down list box. The specific protocol rule sets you add in the Security > Firewall > Service > Add screen display in this list. If you want to configure a customized protocol, select Specific Service.
Protocol	This field is displayed only when you select Specific Protocol in Select Protocol. Choose the IP port (TCP/UDP, TCP, UDP, ICMP, or ICMPv6) that defines your customized port from the drop-down list box.
Custom Source Port	This field is displayed only when you select Specific Protocol in Select Protocol. Enter a single port number or the range of port numbers of the source.
Custom Destination Port	This field is displayed only when you select Specific Protocol in Select Protocol. Enter a single port number or the range of port numbers of the destination.
Policy	Use the drop-down list box to select whether to discard (DROP), deny and send an ICMP destination-unreachable message to the sender of (REJECT) or allow the passage of (ACCEPT) packets that match this rule.
Direction	Use the drop-down list box to select the direction of traffic to which this rule applies.
Enable Rate Limit	Select this check box to set a limit on the upstream/downstream transmission rate for the specified protocol. Specify how many packets per minute or second the transmission rate is.
Scheduler Rules	Select a schedule rule for this ACL rule form the drop-down list box. You can configure a new schedule rule by click Add New Rule. This will bring you to the Security > Scheduler Rules screen.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.

17.5 The DoS Screen

DoS (Denial of Service) attacks can flood your Internet connection with invalid packets and connection requests, using so much bandwidth and so many resources that Internet access becomes unavailable.

Use the DoS screen to activate protection against DoS attacks. Click Security > Firewall > DoS to display the following screen.

Figure 114 Security > Firewall > DoS

DoS Protection Blocking :	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable (settings are invalid when disabled)
Deny Ping Response :	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable
<input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 87 Security > Firewall > DoS

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
DoS Protection Blocking	Select Enable to enable protection against DoS attacks.
Deny Ping Response	Select Enable to block ping request packets.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.

MAC Filter

18.1 Overview

You can configure the VMG to permit access to clients based on their MAC addresses in the MAC Filter screen. This applies to wired and wireless connections. Every Ethernet device has a unique MAC (Media Access Control) address. The MAC address is assigned at the factory and consists of six pairs of hexadecimal characters, for example, 00:A0:C5:00:00:02. You need to know the MAC addresses of the devices to configure this screen.

18.2 The MAC Filter Screen

Use this screen to allow wireless and LAN clients access to the VMG. Click Security > MAC Filter. The screen appears as shown.

Figure 115 Security > MAC Filter

MAC Address Filter : Enable Disable (settings are invalid when disabled)

MAC Restrict Mode : Allow Deny

Set	Allow	Host name	MAC Address
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
...			
30	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
31	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
32	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

Note:
Only devices listed here are granted or prohibit access to the network.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 88 Security > MAC Filter

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
MAC Address Filter	Select Enable to activate the MAC filter function.
MAC Restrict Mode	Select Allow to only permit the listed MAC addresses access to the VMG. Select Deny to permit anyone access to the VMG except the listed MAC addresses.
Set	This is the index number of the MAC address.
Allow	Select Allow to enable the MAC filter rule. . The rule will not be applied if Allow is not selected.
Host Name	Enter the host name of the wireless or LAN clients that are allowed access to the VMG.
MAC Address	Enter the MAC addresses of the wireless or LAN clients that are allowed access to the VMG in these address fields. Enter the MAC addresses in a valid MAC address format, that is, six hexadecimal character pairs, for example, 12:34:56:78:9a:bc.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to restore your previously saved settings.

Parental Control

19.1 Overview

Parental control allows you to block web sites with the specific URL. You can also define time periods and days during which the VMG performs parental control on a specific user.

19.2 The Parental Control Screen

Use this screen to enable parental control, view the parental control rules and schedules.

Click Security > Parental Control to open the following screen.

Figure 116 Security > Parental Control

#	Status	PCP Name	Home Network User MAC	Internet Access Schedule	Network Service	Website Blocked	Modify

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 89 Security > Parental Control

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Parental Control	Select Enable to activate parental control.
Add new PCP	Click this if you want to configure a new Parental Control Profile (PCP).
#	This shows the index number of the rule.
Status	This indicates whether the rule is active or not. A yellow bulb signifies that this rule is active. A gray bulb signifies that this rule is not active.
PCP Name	This shows the name of the rule.
Home Network User (MAC)	This shows the MAC address of the LAN user's computer to which this rule applies.
Internet Access Schedule	This shows the day(s) and time on which parental control is enabled.
Network Service	This shows whether the network service is configured. If not, None will be shown.
Website Block	This shows whether the website block is configured. If not, None will be shown.

Table 89 Security > Parental Control (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Modify	Click the Edit icon to go to the screen where you can edit the rule. Click the Delete icon to delete an existing rule.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to restore your previously saved settings.

19.2.1 Add/Edit a Parental Control Profile

Click Add new PCP in the Parental Control screen to add a new rule or click the Edit icon next to an existing rule to edit it. Use this screen to configure a restricted access schedule and/or URL filtering settings to block the users on your network from accessing certain web sites.

Figure 117 Parental Control Rule: Add/Edit Rule

Add new PCP

General

Active

Parental Control Profile Name :

Home Network User :

Rule List

User MAC Address
12:34:56:78:9a:bc

Internet Access Schedule

Day : Everyday Monday Tuesday Wednesday Thursday
 Friday Saturday Sunday

Time (Start - End) :

No access Authorized access

Network Service

Network Service Settings : selected service(s)

#	Service Name	Protocol:Port	Modify
---	--------------	---------------	--------

Site/URL Keyword

Block or Allow the Web Site :

Figure 118 Parental Control Rule: Add/Edit Rule > Add Service

Figure 119 Parental Control Rule: Add/Edit Rule > Add Keyword

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 90 Parental Control Rule: Add/Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
General	
Active	Select the checkbox to activate this parental control rule.
Parental Control Profile Name	Enter a descriptive name for the rule.
Home Network User	Select the LAN user that you want to apply this rule to from the drop-down list box. If you select Custom, enter the LAN user’s MAC address. If you select All, the rule applies to all LAN users.
Rule List	In Home Network User, select Custom, enter the LAN user’s MAC address, then click the + sign to enter a computer MAC address for this PCP. Up to five are allowed. Click the - sign to remove one.
Internet Access Schedule	
Day	Select check boxes for the days that you want the VMG to perform parental control.
Time	Drag the time bar to define the time that the LAN user is allowed access (Authorized access) or denied access (No access). Click the + sign above the time bar to add a new time bar. Up to three are allowed.
Authorized access	Select this to allow access for the times defined above.
No access	Select this to deny access for the times defined above.

Table 90 Parental Control Rule: Add/Edit (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Network Service	
Network Service Setting	If you select Block, the VMG prohibits the users from viewing the Web sites with the URLs listed below. If you select Allow, the VMG blocks access to all URLs except ones listed below.
Add new service	Click this to show a screen in which you can add a new service rule. You can configure the Service Name, Protocol, and Name of the new rule.
#	This shows the index number of the rule. Select the checkbox next to the rule to activate it.
Service Name	This shows the name of the rule.
Protocol:Port	This shows the protocol and the port of the rule.
Modify	Click the Edit icon to go to the screen where you can edit the rule. Click the Delete icon to delete an existing rule.
Blocked Site/URL Keyword	Click Add to show a screen to enter the URL of web site or URL keyword to which the VMG blocks access. Click Delete to remove it.
Apply	Click this button to save your settings back to the VMG.
Cancel	Click Cancel to restore your previously saved settings.

Scheduler Rule

20.1 Overview

You can define time periods and days during which the VMG performs scheduled rules of certain features (such as Firewall Access Control) in the Scheduler Rule screen.

20.2 The Scheduler Rule Screen

Use this screen to view, add, or edit time schedule rules.

Click Security > Scheduler Rule to open the following screen.

Figure 120 Security > Scheduler Rule

Add New Rule					
#	Rule Name	Day	Time	Description	Modify

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 91 Security > Scheduler Rule

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add New Rule	Click this to create a new rule.
#	This is the index number of the entry.
Rule Name	This shows the name of the rule.
Day	This shows the day(s) on which this rule is enabled.
Time	This shows the period of time on which this rule is enabled.
Description	This shows the description of this rule.
Modify	Click the Edit icon to edit the schedule. Click the Delete icon to delete a scheduler rule. Note: You cannot delete a scheduler rule once it is applied to a certain feature.

20.2.1 Add/Edit a Schedule

Click the Add New Rule button in the Scheduler Rule screen or click the Edit icon next to a schedule rule to open the following screen. Use this screen to configure a restricted access schedule.

Figure 121 Scheduler Rule: Add/Edit

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 92 Scheduler Rule: Add/Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Rule Name	Enter a name (up to 31 printable English keyboard characters, not including spaces) for this schedule.
Day	Select check boxes for the days that you want the VMG to perform this scheduler rule.
Time if Day Range	Enter the time period of each day, in 24-hour format, during which the rule will be enforced.
Description	Enter a description for this scheduler rule.
OK	Click OK to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.

Certificates

21.1 Overview

The VMG can use certificates (also called digital IDs) to authenticate users. Certificates are based on public-private key pairs. A certificate contains the certificate owner's identity and public key. Certificates provide a way to exchange public keys for use in authentication.

21.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- The Local Certificates screen lets you generate certification requests and import the VMG's CA-signed certificates ([Section 21.4 on page 214](#)).
- The Trusted CA screen lets you save the certificates of trusted CAs to the VMG ([Section 21.4 on page 214](#)).

21.2 What You Need to Know

The following terms and concepts may help as you read through this chapter.

Certification Authority

A Certification Authority (CA) issues certificates and guarantees the identity of each certificate owner. There are commercial certification authorities like CyberTrust or VeriSign and government certification authorities. The certification authority uses its private key to sign certificates. Anyone can then use the certification authority's public key to verify the certificates. You can use the VMG to generate certification requests that contain identifying information and public keys and then send the certification requests to a certification authority.

21.3 The Local Certificates Screen

Click Security > Certificates to open the Local Certificates screen. This is the VMG's summary list of certificates and certification requests.

Figure 122 Security > Certificates > Local Certificates

Current File	Subject	Issuer	Valid From	Valid To	Modify
--------------	---------	--------	------------	----------	--------

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 93 Security > Certificates > Local Certificates

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Private Key is protected by a password	Select the checkbox and enter the private key into the text box to store it on the VMG. The private key should not exceed 63 ASCII characters (not including spaces).
Choose File	Click this to find the certificate file you want to upload.
Import Certificate	Click this button to save the certificate that you have enrolled from a certification authority from your computer to the VMG.
Create Certificate Request	Click this button to go to the screen where you can have the VMG generate a certification request.
Current File	This field displays the name used to identify this certificate. It is recommended that you give each certificate a unique name.
Subject	This field displays identifying information about the certificate's owner, such as CN (Common Name), OU (Organizational Unit or department), O (Organization or company) and C (Country). It is recommended that each certificate have unique subject information.
Issuer	This field displays identifying information about the certificate's issuing certification authority, such as a common name, organizational unit or department, organization or company and country.
Valid From	This field displays the date that the certificate becomes applicable. The text displays in red and includes a Not Yet Valid! message if the certificate has not yet become applicable.
Valid To	This field displays the date that the certificate expires. The text displays in red and includes an Expiring! or Expired! message if the certificate is about to expire or has already expired.
Modify	Click the View icon to open a screen with an in-depth list of information about the certificate (or certification request). For a certification request, click Load Signed to import the signed certificate. Click the Remove icon to delete the certificate (or certification request). You cannot delete a certificate that one or more features is configured to use.

21.3.1 Create Certificate Request

Click Security > Certificates > Local Certificates and then Create Certificate Request to open the following screen. Use this screen to have the VMG generate a certification request.

Figure 123 Create Certificate Request

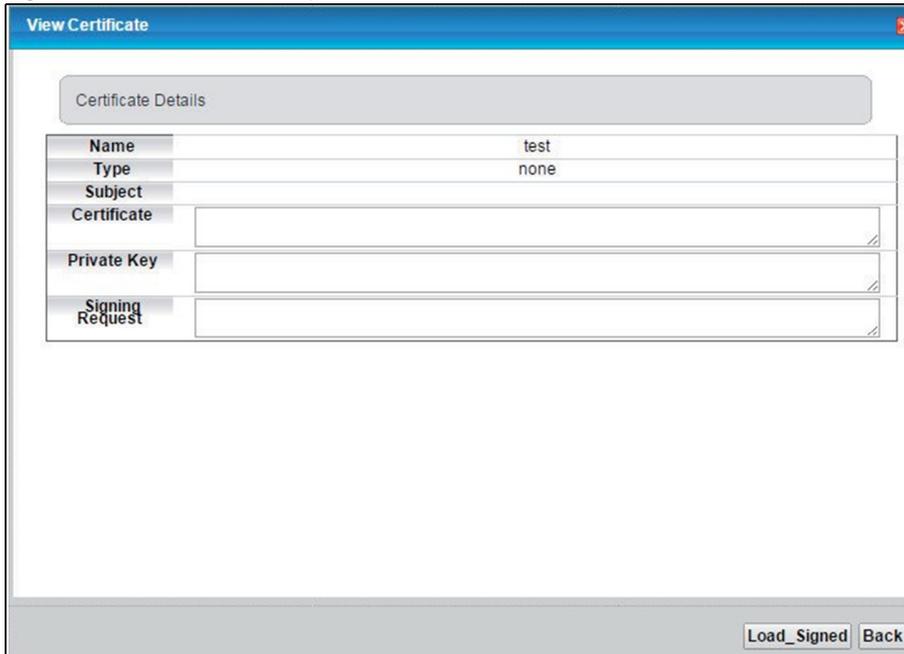
The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 94 Create Certificate Request

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Certificate Name	Type up to 63 ASCII characters (not including spaces) to identify this certificate.
Common Name	Select Auto to have the VMG configure this field automatically. Or select Customize to enter it manually. Type the IP address (in dotted decimal notation), domain name or e-mail address in the field provided. The domain name or e-mail address can be up to 63 ASCII characters. The domain name or e-mail address is for identification purposes only and can be any string.
Organization Name	Type up to 63 characters to identify the company or group to which the certificate owner belongs. You may use any character, including spaces, but the VMG drops trailing spaces.
State/Province Name	Type up to 32 characters to identify the state or province where the certificate owner is located. You may use any character, including spaces, but the VMG drops trailing spaces.
Country/Region Name	Select a country to identify the nation where the certificate owner is located.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.

After you click **Apply**, the following screen displays to notify you that you need to get the certificate request signed by a Certificate Authority. If you already have, click **Load_Signed** to import the signed certificate into the VMG. Otherwise click **Back** to return to the **Local Certificates** screen.

Figure 124 Certificate Request Created

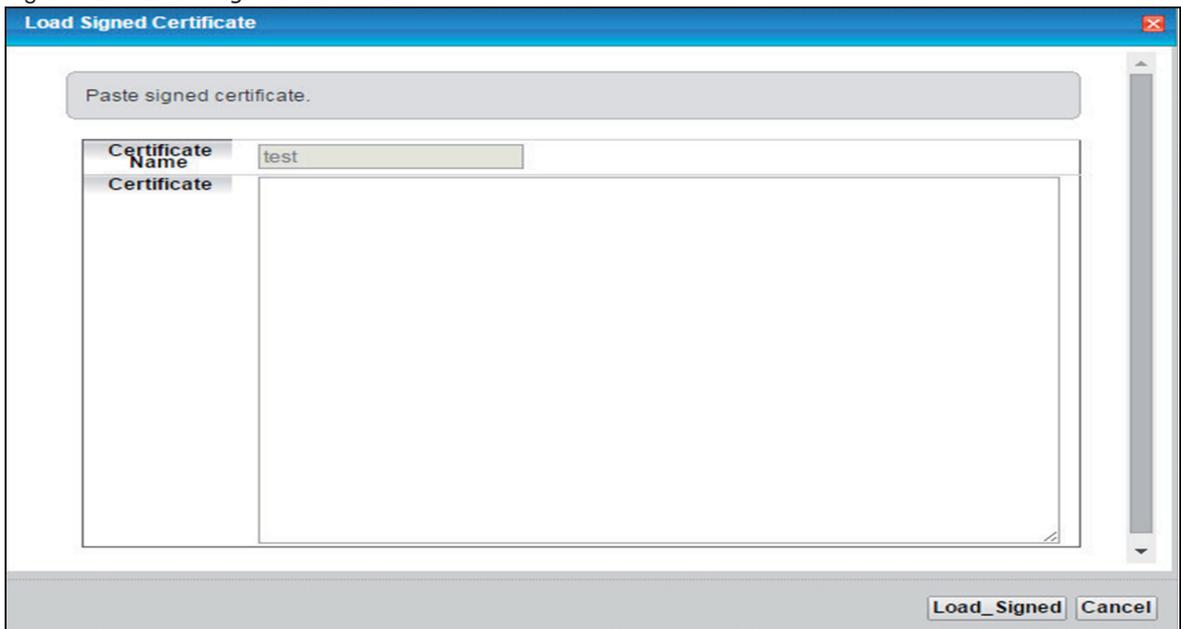


21.3.2 Load Signed Certificate

After you create a certificate request and have it signed by a Certificate Authority, in the Local Certificates screen click the certificate request's Load Signed icon to import the signed certificate into the VMG.

Note: You must remove any spaces from the certificate's filename before you can import it.

Figure 125 Load Signed Certificate



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

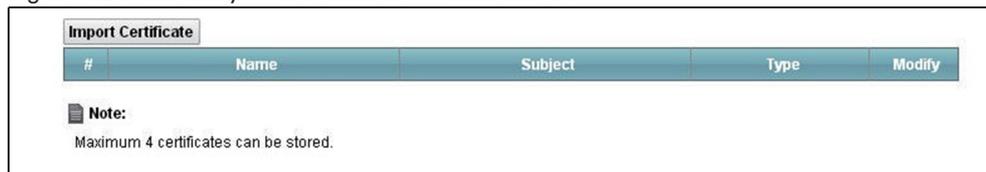
Table 95 Load Signed Certificate

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Certificate Name	This is the name of the signed certificate.
Certificate	Copy and paste the signed certificate into the text box to store it on the VMG.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.

21.4 The Trusted CA Screen

Click Security > Certificates > Trusted CA to open the following screen. This screen displays a summary list of certificates of the certification authorities that you have set the VMG to accept as trusted. The VMG accepts any valid certificate signed by a certification authority on this list as being trustworthy; thus you do not need to import any certificate that is signed by one of these certification authorities.

Figure 126 Security > Certificates > Trusted CA



The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 96 Security > Certificates > Trusted CA

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Import Certificate	Click this button to open a screen where you can save the certificate of a certification authority that you trust to the VMG.
#	This is the index number of the entry.
Name	This field displays the name used to identify this certificate.
Subject	This field displays information that identifies the owner of the certificate, such as Common Name (CN), OU (Organizational Unit or department), Organization (O), State (ST) and Country (C). It is recommended that each certificate have unique subject information.
Type	This field displays general information about the certificate. ca means that a Certification Authority signed the certificate.
Modify	Click the View icon to open a screen with an in-depth list of information about the certificate (or certification request). Click the Remove button to delete the certificate (or certification request). You cannot delete a certificate that one or more features is configured to use.

21.4.1 View Trusted CA Certificate

Click the View icon in the Trusted CA screen to open the following screen. Use this screen to view in-depth information about the certification authority's certificate.

Figure 127 Trusted CA: View

Name	certnew.cer
Type	ca
Subject	DC=com/DC=ZyXEL/CN=ZyXELCA
Certificate	<pre>-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE----- MIIETCCA1GgAwIBAgIQGKaoaDflmLiDGHjtnb31jANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFADA+ MRMwEQYKCZImiZPyLQGGRYDY29IMRUwEwYKZImiZPyLQGGRYFWniYRUwxED AO BgNVBAMTB1p5WEVMQ0EwHhcNMDcwMjA1MDMwMTI0WhcNMTcwMjA1MDMwOTQ5 WjA+ MRMwEQYKCZImiZPyLQGGRYDY29IMRUwEwYKZImiZPyLQGGRYFWniYRUwxED AO BgNVBAMTB1p5WEVMQ0EwggEiMA0GCsGSIb3DQEBAQUAA4IBDwAwggEKAoIBAQ DS</pre>
<input type="button" value="Back"/>	

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

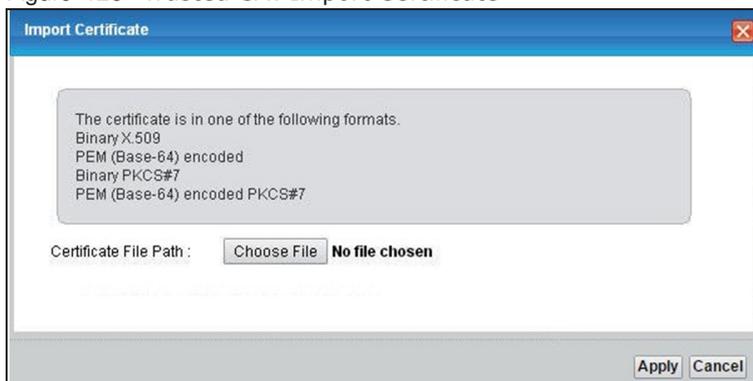
Table 97 Trusted CA: View

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	This field displays the identifying name of this certificate.
Type	This field displays general information about the certificate. ca means that a Certification Authority signed the certificate.
Subject	This field displays information that identifies the owner of the certificate, such as Common Name (CN), Organizational Unit (OU), Organization (O) and Country (C).
Certificate	<p>This read-only text box displays the certificate in Privacy Enhanced Mail (PEM) format. PEM uses base 64 to convert the binary certificate into a printable form.</p> <p>You can copy and paste the certificate into an e-mail to send to friends or colleagues or you can copy and paste the certificate into a text editor and save the file on a management computer for later distribution (via floppy disk for example).</p>
Back	Click Back to return to the previous screen.

21.4.2 Import Trusted CA Certificate

Click the Import Certificate button in the Trusted CA screen to open the following screen. The VMG trusts any valid certificate signed by any of the imported trusted CA certificates.

Figure 128 Trusted CA: Import Certificate



The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 98 Trusted CA: Import Certificate

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Certificate File Path	Type in the location of the certificate you want to upload in this field or click Choose File to find it.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.

22.1 Overview

Use this chapter to:

- Connect an analog phone to the VMG.
- Make phone calls over the Internet, as well as the regular phone network.
- Configure settings such as speed dial.
- Configure network settings to optimize the voice quality of your phone calls.

22.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

These screens allow you to configure your VMG to make phone calls over the Internet and your regular phone line, and to set up the phones you connect to the VMG.

- Use the SIP Account screen ([Section 22.3 on page 218](#)) to set up information about your SIP account, control which SIP accounts the phones connected to the VMG use and configure audio settings such as volume levels for the phones connected to the VMG.
- Use the SIP Service Provider screen ([Section 22.4 on page 223](#)) to configure the SIP server information, QoS for VoIP calls, the numbers for certain phone functions, and dialing plan.
- Use the Phone Device screen ([Section 22.5 on page 231](#)) to view detailed information of the phone devices.
- Use the Region screen ([Section 22.6 on page 231](#)) to change settings that depend on the country you are in.
- Use the Call Rule screen ([Section 22.7 on page 232](#)) to set up shortcuts for dialing frequently-used (VoIP) phone numbers.
- Use the Call History screen ([Section 22.8 on page 233](#)) to view detailed information for each outgoing call you made or each incoming call from someone calling you.
- Use the Call Summary screen ([Section 22.9 on page 233](#)) to view the summary list of received, dialed and missed calls.

You don't necessarily need to use all these screens to set up your account. In fact, if your service provider did not supply information on a particular field in a screen, it is usually best to leave it at its default setting.

22.1.2 What You Need to Know About VoIP

VoIP

VoIP stands for Voice over IP. IP is the Internet Protocol, which is the message-carrying standard the Internet runs on. So, Voice over IP is the sending of voice signals (speech) over the Internet (or another network that uses the Internet Protocol).

SIP

SIP stands for Session Initiation Protocol. SIP is a signalling standard that lets one network device (like a computer or the VMG) send messages to another. In VoIP, these messages are about phone calls over the network. For example, when you dial a number on your VMG, it sends a SIP message over the network asking the other device (the number you dialed) to take part in the call.

SIP Accounts

A SIP account is a type of VoIP account. It is an arrangement with a service provider that lets you make phone calls over the Internet. When you set the VMG to use your SIP account to make calls, the VMG is able to send all the information about the phone call to your service provider on the Internet.

Strictly speaking, you don't need a SIP account. It is possible for one SIP device (like the VMG) to call another without involving a SIP service provider. However, the networking difficulties involved in doing this make it tremendously impractical under normal circumstances. Your SIP account provider removes these difficulties by taking care of the call routing and setup - figuring out how to get your call to the right place in a way that you and the other person can talk to one another.

How to Find Out More

See [Chapter 4 on page 33](#) for a tutorial showing how to set up these screens in an example scenario.

See [Section 22.10 on page 234](#) for advanced technical information on SIP.

22.2 Before You Begin

- Before you can use these screens, you need to have a VoIP account already set up. If you don't have one yet, you can sign up with a VoIP service provider over the Internet.
- You should have the information your VoIP service provider gave you ready, before you start to configure the VMG.

22.3 The SIP Account Screen

The VMG uses a SIP account to make outgoing VoIP calls and check if an incoming call's destination number matches your SIP account's SIP number. In order to make or receive a VoIP call, you need

to enable and configure a SIP account, and map it to a phone port. The SIP account contains information that allows your VMG to connect to your VoIP service provider.

See [Section 22.3.1 on page 219](#) for how to map a SIP account to a phone port.

Use this screen to view SIP account information. You can also enable and disable each SIP account. To access this screen, click VoIP > SIP > SIP Account.

Figure 129 VoIP > SIP > SIP Account

Add New Account					
#	Active	SIP Account	Service Provider	Account Number.	Modify
1		SIP1	ChangeMe	ChangeMe	 

Each field is described in the following table.

Table 99 VoIP > SIP > SIP Account

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add new account	Click this to configure a SIP account.
#	This is the index number of the entry.
Active	This shows whether the SIP account is activated or not. A yellow bulb signifies that this SIP account is activated. A gray bulb signifies that this SIP account is not activated.
SIP Account	This shows the name of the SIP account.
Service Provider	This shows the name of the SIP service provider.
Account Number.	This shows the SIP number.
Modify	Click the Edit icon to configure the SIP account. Click the Delete icon to delete this SIP account from the VMG.

22.3.1 The SIP Account Add/Edit Screen

Use this screen to configure a SIP account and map it to a phone port. To access this screen, click the Add new account button or click the Edit icon of an entry in the VoIP > SIP > SIP Account screen.

Note: Click more to see all the fields in the screen. You don't necessarily need to use all these fields to set up your account. Click less to see and configure only the fields needed for this feature.

Figure 130 VoIP > SIP > SIP Account > Add new account/Edit

The screenshot displays the 'SIP Account Selection' configuration page. It includes sections for:

- SIP Account Selection:** ADD_NEW
- SIP Service Provider Association:** ServiceProvider-1
- General:** Enable SIP Account (checkbox), SIP Account Number: changeme
- Authentication:** Username: changeme, Password: [masked]
- Apply To Phone:** Phone 1 and Phone 2 (both checked)
- URL Type:** SIP
- Voice Features:** Primary/Secondary/Third Compression Type (G.711a, G.726-32, G.711u), Speaking/Listening Volume Control (0), and checkboxes for G.168 and VAD.
- Call Features:** Send Caller ID, Enable Call Transfer, Enable Call Waiting, and Call Waiting Reject Timer (20 seconds).
- Forwarding:** Enable Unconditional Forward, Busy Forward, and No Answer Forward, each with a To Number field and No Answer Time (20 seconds).
- Warnings/Notices:** Several informational boxes regarding Do Not Disturb, Anonymous Call Block, CCBS, and Mail Server configuration.
- Buttons:** Apply and Cancel at the bottom right.

Each field is described in the following table.

Table 100 VoIP > SIP > SIP Account > Add new account/Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
SIP Account Selection	This field displays ADD_NEW if you are creating a new SIP account or the SIP account you are modifying.
SIP Service Provider Association	Select the SIP service provider profile to use for the SIP account you are configuring in this screen. This field is read-only when you are modifying a SIP account.
General	
Enable SIP Account	Select this if you want the VMG to use this account. Clear it if you do not want the VMG to use this account.
SIP Account Number	Enter your SIP number. In the full SIP URI, this is the part before the @ symbol. You can use up to 127 printable ASCII characters.
Authentication	
Username	Enter the user name for registering this SIP account, exactly as it was given to you. You can use up to 95 printable ASCII characters.
Password	Enter the user name for registering this SIP account, exactly as it was given to you. You can use up to 95 printable ASCII Extended set characters.
more/less	Click more to display and edit more information for the SIP account. Click less to display and configure the basic SIP account settings.

Table 100 VoIP > SIP > SIP Account > Add new accoun/Edit (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
URL Type	<p>Select whether or not to include the SIP service domain name when the VMG sends the SIP number.</p> <p>SIP - include the SIP service domain name.</p> <p>TEL - do not include the SIP service domain name.</p>
Voice Features	
Primary Compression Type Secondary Compression Type Third Compression Type	<p>Select the type of voice coder/decoder (codec) that you want the VMG to use.</p> <p>G.711 provides high voice quality but requires more bandwidth (64 kbps). G.711 is the default codec used by phone companies and digital handsets.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • G.711a is typically used in Europe. • G.711u is typically used in North America and Japan. <p>G.726-24 operates at 24 kbps.</p> <p>G.726-32 operates at 32 kbps.</p> <p>G.722 is a 7 KHz wideband voice codec that operates at 48, 56 and 64 kbps. By using a sample rate of 16 kHz, G.722 can provide higher fidelity and better audio quality than narrowband codecs like G.711, in which the voice signal is sampled at 8 KHz.</p> <p>The VMG must use the same codec as the peer. When two SIP devices start a SIP session, they must agree on a codec.</p> <p>Select the VMG's first choice for voice coder/decoder.</p> <p>Select the VMG's second choice for voice coder/decoder. Select None if you only want the VMG to accept the first choice.</p> <p>Select the VMG's third choice for voice coder/decoder. Select None if you only want the VMG to accept the first or second choice.</p>
Speaking Volume Control	<p>Select the loudness that the VMG uses for speech that it sends to the peer device.</p> <p>-12 is the quietest, and 12 is the loudest.</p>
Listening Volume Control	<p>Select the loudness that the VMG uses for speech that it receives from the peer device.</p> <p>-12 is the quietest, and 12 is the loudest.</p>
Enable G.168 (Echo Cancellation)	<p>Select this if you want to eliminate the echo caused by the sound of your voice reverberating in the telephone receiver while you talk.</p>
Enable VAD (Voice Active Detector)	<p>Select this if the VMG should stop transmitting when you are not speaking. This reduces the bandwidth the VMG uses.</p>
Call Features	
Send Caller ID	<p>Select this if you want to send identification when you make VoIP phone calls. Clear this if you do not want to send identification.</p>
Enable Call Transfer	<p>Select this to enable call transfer on the VMG. This allows you to transfer an incoming call (that you have answered) to another phone.</p>
Enable Call Waiting	<p>Select this to enable call waiting on the VMG. This allows you to place a call on hold while you answer another incoming call on the same telephone number.</p>
Call Waiting Reject Timer	<p>Specify a time of seconds that the VMG waits before rejecting the second call if you do not answer it.</p>

Table 100 VoIP > SIP > SIP Account > Add new accoun/Edit (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Enable Unconditional Forward	Select this if you want the VMG to forward all incoming calls to the specified phone number. Specify the phone number in the To Number field on the right.
Enable Busy Forward	Select this if you want the VMG to forward incoming calls to the specified phone number if the phone port is busy. Specify the phone number in the To Number field on the right. If you have call waiting, the incoming call is forwarded to the specified phone number if you reject or ignore the second incoming call.
Enable No Answer Forward	Select this if you want the VMG to forward incoming calls to the specified phone number if the call is unanswered. (See No Answer Time.) Specify the phone number in the To Number field on the right.
No Answer Time	This field is used by the Active No Answer Forward feature. Enter the number of seconds the VMG should wait for you to answer an incoming call before it considers the call is unanswered.
Enable Do Not Disturb	Select this to set your phone to not ring when someone calls you.
Enable Anonymous Call Block (for incoming call)	Select this if you do not want the phone to ring when someone tries to call you with caller ID deactivated.
Enable MWI (Message Waiting Indication)	Select this if you want to hear a waiting (beeping) dial tone on your phone when you have at least one voice message. Your VoIP service provider must support this feature.
Expiration Time	Keep the default value for this field, unless your VoIP service provider tells you to change it. Enter the number of seconds the SIP server should provide the message waiting service each time the VMG subscribes to the service. Before this time passes, the VMG automatically subscribes again.
Hot Line / Warm Line Enable	Select this to enable the hot line or warm line feature on the VMG.
Warm Line	Select this to have the VMG dial the specified warm line number after you pick up the telephone and do not press any keys on the keypad for a period of time.
Hot Line	Select this to have the VMG dial the specified hot line number immediately when you pick up the telephone.
Hot Line / Warm Line number	Enter the number of the hot line or warm line that you want the VMG to dial.
Warm Line Timer	Enter a number of seconds that the VMG waits before dialing the warm line number if you pick up the telephone and do not press any keys on the keypad.
Enable Missed Call Email Notification	Select this option to have the VMG e-mail you a notification when there is a missed call.
Mail Account	Select a mail account for the e-mail address specified below. If you select None here, e-mail notifications will not be sent via e-mail. You must have configured a mail account already in the Email Notification screen.
Send Notification to Email	Notifications are sent to the e-mail address specified in this field. If this field is left blank, notifications will not be sent via e-mail.
Missed Call Email Title	Type a title that you want to be in the subject line of the e-mail notifications that the VMG sends.

Table 100 VoIP > SIP > SIP Account > Add new accoun/Edit (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Early Media	Select this option if you want people to hear a customized recording when they call you.
IVR Play Index	Select the tone you want people to hear when they call you. This field is configurable only when you select Early Media. See Section 22.10 on page 234 for information on how to record these tones.
Music On Hold	Select this option to play a customized recording when you put people on hold.
IVR Play Index	Select the tone to play when you put someone on hold. This field is configurable only when you select Music On Hold. See Section 22.10 on page 234 for information on how to record these tones.
Enable Call Completion on Busy Subscriber (CCBS)	When you make a phone call but hear a busy tone, Call Completion on Busy Subscriber (CCBS) allows you to enable auto-callback by pressing 5 and hanging up the phone. The VMG then tries to call that phone number every minute since after you hang up the phone. When the called party becomes available within the CCBS timeout period (60 minutes by default), both phones ring. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the called party's phone rings because of CCBS but no one answers the phone after 180 seconds, you will hear a busy tone. You can enable CCBS on the called number again. If you manually call the number on which you have enabled CCBS before the CCBS timeout period expires, the VMG disables CCBS on the called number. If you call a second number before the first called number's CCBS timeout period expires, the VMG stops calling the first number until you finish the second call. Select this option to activate CCBS on the VMG.
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the VMG.
Cancel	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.

22.4 The SIP Service Provider Screen

Use this screen to view the SIP service provider information on the VMG. Click VoIP > SIP > SIP Service Provider to open the following screen.

Figure 131 VoIP > SIP > SIP Service Provider

Add New Provider					
#	SIP Service Provider Name	SIP Server Address:	REGISTER Server Address:	SIP Service Domain:	Modify
1	Service Provider-1	ChangeMe	ChangeMe	ChangeMe	

Each field is described in the following table.

Table 101 VoIP > SIP > SIP Service Provider

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add new provider	
#	This is the index number of the entry.
SIP Service Provider Name	This shows the name of the SIP service provider.
SIP Server Address	This shows the IP address or domain name of the SIP server.

Table 101 VoIP > SIP > SIP Service Provider (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
REGISTER Server Address	This shows the IP address or domain name of the SIP register server.
SIP Service Domain	This shows the SIP service domain name.
Modify	Click the Edit icon to configure the SIP service provider. Click the Delete icon to delete this SIP service provider from the VMG.

22.4.1 The SIP Service Provider Add/Edit Screen

Use this screen to configure a SIP service provider on the VMG. Click the Add new provider button or an Edit icon in the VoIP > SIP > SIP Service Provider to open the following screen.

Note: Click more to see all the fields in the screen. You don't necessarily need to use all these fields to set up your account. Click less to see and configure only the fields needed for this feature.

Figure 132 VoIP > SIP > SIP Service Provider > Add new provider/Edit

Each field is described in the following table.

Table 102 VoIP > SIP > SIP Service Provider > Add new provider/Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
SIP Service Provider Selection	
Service Provider Selection	Select the SIP service provider profile you want to use for the SIP account you configure in this screen. If you change this field, the screen automatically refreshes.
General	
SIP Service Provider	Select this to enable the SIP service provider.
SIP Service Provider Name	Enter the name of your SIP service provider.
SIP Local Port	Enter the VMG's listening port number, if your VoIP service provider gave you one. Otherwise, keep the default value.

Table 102 VoIP > SIP > SIP Service Provider > Add new provider/Edit (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
SIP Server Address	Enter the IP address or domain name of the SIP server provided by your VoIP service provider. You can use up to 95 printable ASCII characters. It does not matter whether the SIP server is a proxy, redirect or register server.
SIP Server Port	Enter the SIP server's listening port number, if your VoIP service provider gave you one. Otherwise, keep the default value.
REGISTER Server Address	Enter the IP address or domain name of the SIP register server, if your VoIP service provider gave you one. Otherwise, enter the same address you entered in the SIP Server Address field. You can use up to 95 printable ASCII characters.
REGISTER Server Port	Enter the SIP register server's listening port number, if your VoIP service provider gave you one. Otherwise, enter the same port number you entered in the SIP Server Port field.
SIP Service Domain	Enter the SIP service domain name. In the full SIP URI, this is the part after the @ symbol. You can use up to 127 printable ASCII Extended set characters.
RFC Support	
RFC 3262(Require: 100rel)	PRACK (RFC 3262) defines a mechanism to provide reliable transmission of SIP provisional response messages, which convey information on the processing progress of the request. This uses the option tag 100rel and the Provisional Response ACKnowledgement (PRACK) method. Select this to have the the peer device require the option tag 100rel to send provisional responses reliably.
VoIP IOP Flags	Select the VoIP inter-operability settings you want to activate.
Replace dial digit '#' to '%23' in SIP messages	Replace a dial digit "#" with "%23" in the INVITE messages.
Remove ':5060' and 'transport=udp' from request-uri in the in-dialog outgoing SIP request	Remove ":5060" and "transport=udp" from the "Request-URI" string in the REGISTER and INVITE packets.
Remove the 'Route' header in SIP messages	Remove the 'Route' header in SIP packets.
Don't send re-Invite to the remote party when there are multiple codecs answered in the SDP	Do not send a re-Invite packet to the remote party when the remote party answers that it can support multiple codecs.
Bound Interface Name	
Bound Interface Name	If you select LAN or Any_WAN, the VMG automatically activates the VoIP service when any LAN or WAN connection is up. If you select Multi_WAN, you also need to select two or more pre-configured WAN interfaces. The VoIP service is activated only when one of the selected WAN connections is up.
Outbound Proxy	

Table 102 VoIP > SIP > SIP Service Provider > Add new provider/Edit (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Outbound Proxy Address	Enter the IP address or domain name of the SIP outbound proxy server if your VoIP service provider has a SIP outbound server to handle voice calls. This allows the VMG to work with any type of NAT router and eliminates the need for STUN or a SIP ALG. Turn off any SIP ALG on a NAT router in front of the VMG to keep it from re-translating the IP address (since this is already handled by the outbound proxy server).
Outbound Proxy Port	Enter the SIP outbound proxy server's listening port, if your VoIP service provider gave you one. Otherwise, keep the default value.
Use DHCP Option 120 First	Select this to enable the SIP server via DHCP option 120.
RTP Port Range	
Start Port End Port	Enter the listening port number(s) for RTP traffic, if your VoIP service provider gave you this information. Otherwise, keep the default values. To enter one port number, enter the port number in the Start Port and End Port fields. To enter a range of ports, <ul style="list-style-type: none"> enter the port number at the beginning of the range in the Start Port field. enter the port number at the end of the range in the End Port field.
SRTP Support	
SRTP Support	When you make a VoIP call using SIP, the Real-time Transport Protocol (RTP) is used to handle voice data transfer. The Secure Real-time Transport Protocol (SRTP) is a security profile of RTP. It is designed to provide encryption and authentication for the RTP data in both unicast and multicast applications. The VMG supports encryption using AES with a 128-bit key. To protect data integrity, SRTP uses a Hash-based Message Authentication Code (HMAC) calculation with Secure Hash Algorithm (SHA)-1 to authenticate data. HMAC SHA-1 produces a 80 or 32-bit authentication tag that is appended to the packet. Both the caller and callee should use the same algorithms to establish an SRTP session.
Crypto Suite	Select the encryption and authentication algorithm set used by the VMG to set up an SRTP media session with the peer device. Select AES_CM_128_HMAC_SHA1_80 or AES_CM_128_HMAC_SHA1_32 to enable both data encryption and authentication for voice data. Select AES_CM_128_NULL to use 128-bit data encryption but disable data authentication. Select NULL_CIPHER_HMAC_SHA1_80 to disable encryption but require authentication using the default 80-bit tag.
DTMF Mode	
DTMF Mode	Control how the VMG handles the tones that your telephone makes when you push its buttons. You should use the same mode your VoIP service provider uses. RFC2833 - send the DTMF tones in RTP packets. PCM - send the DTMF tones in the voice data stream. This method works best when you are using a codec that does not use compression (like G.711). Codecs that use compression (like G.729 and G.726) can distort the tones. SIP INFO - send the DTMF tones in SIP messages.
Transport Type	
Transport Type	Select the transport layer protocol UDP or TCP (usually UDP) used for SIP.
Ignore Direct IP	Select Enable to have the connected CPE devices accept SIP requests only from the SIP proxy/register server specified above. SIP requests sent from other IP addresses will be ignored.

Table 102 VoIP > SIP > SIP Service Provider > Add new provider/Edit (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
FAX Option	This field controls how the VMG handles fax messages.
G711 Fax Passthrough	Select this if the VMG should use G.711 to send fax messages. You have to also select which operating codec (G.711Mulaw or G.711Alaw) to use for encoding/decoding FAX data. The peer devices must use the same settings.
T38 Fax Relay	Select this if the VMG should send fax messages as UDP or TCP/IP packets through IP networks. This provides better quality, but it may have inter-operability problems. The peer devices must also use T.38.
QoS Tag	
SIP DSCP Mark Setting	Enter the DSCP (DiffServ Code Point) number for SIP message transmissions. The VMG creates Class of Service (CoS) priority tags with this number to SIP traffic that it transmits.
RTP DSCP Mark Setting	Enter the DSCP (DiffServ Code Point) number for RTP voice transmissions. The VMG creates Class of Service (CoS) priority tags with this number to RTP traffic that it transmits.
Timer Setting	
Expiration Duration	Enter the number of seconds your SIP account is registered with the SIP register server before it is deleted. The VMG automatically tries to re-register your SIP account when one-half of this time has passed. (The SIP register server might have a different expiration.)
Register Re-send timer	Enter the number of seconds the VMG waits before it tries again to register the SIP account, if the first try failed or if there is no response.
Session Expires	Enter the number of seconds the VMG lets a SIP session remain idle (without traffic) before it automatically disconnects the session.
Min-SE	Enter the minimum number of seconds the VMG lets a SIP session remain idle (without traffic) before it automatically disconnects the session. When two SIP devices start a SIP session, they must agree on an expiration time for idle sessions. This field is the shortest expiration time that the VMG accepts.
Phone Key Config	Enter the key combinations for certain functions of the SIP phone.
Call Return	Enter the key combinations that you can enter to place a call to the last number that called you.
Caller ID Display Call	Enter the key combinations that you can enter to activate caller ID for the next call.
Caller ID Hidden Call	Enter the key combinations that you can enter to deactivate caller ID for the next call.
One Shot Caller ID Display Call	Enter the key combinations that you can enter to activate caller ID for the next call only.
One Shot Caller ID Hidden Call	Enter the key combinations that you can enter to deactivate caller ID for the next call only.
Call Waiting Enable	Enter the key combinations that you can enter to turn on the call waiting function.
Call Waiting Disable	Enter the key combinations that you can enter to turn off the call waiting function.
IVR	Enter the key combinations that you can enter to record custom caller ringing tones (the sound a caller hears before you pick up the phone) and on hold tones (the sound someone hears when you put their call on hold). IVR stands for Interactive Voice Response.
Internal Call	Enter the key combinations that you can enter to call the phone(s) connected to the VMG.
Call Transfer	Enter the key combinations that you can enter to transfer a call to another phone.
Unconditional Call Forward Enable	Enter the key combinations that you can enter to forward all incoming calls to the phone number you specified in the SIP > SIP Account screen.

Table 102 VoIP > SIP > SIP Service Provider > Add new provider/Edit (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Unconditional Call Forward Disable	Enter the key combinations that you can enter to turn the unconditional call forward function off.
No Answer Call Forward Enable	Enter the key combinations that you can enter to forward incoming calls to the phone number you specified in the SIP > SIP Account screen if the calls are unanswered.
No Answer Call Forward Disable	Enter the key combinations that you can enter to turn the no answer call forward function off.
Call Forward When Busy Enable	Enter the key combinations that you can enter to forward incoming calls to the phone number you specified in the SIP > SIP Account screen if the phone port is busy.
Call Forward When Busy Disable	Enter the key combinations that you can enter to turn the busy forward function off.
One Shot Call Waiting Enable	Enter the key combinations that you can enter to activate call waiting on the next calls.
One Shot Call Waiting Disable	Enter the key combinations that you can enter to deactivate call waiting on the next call only.
Do Not Disturb Enable	Enter the key combinations that you can enter to set your phone not to ring when someone calls you.
Do Not Disturb Disable	Enter the key combinations that you can enter to turn this function off.
Call Completion on Busy Subscriber (CCBS) Deactivate	Enter the key combinations that you can enter to disable CCBS on a call.
Outgoing SIP	Enter the key combinations that you can enter to select the SIP account that you use to make outgoing calls. If you enter #12(by default)<SIP account index number> #<the phone number you want to call>, #1201#12345678 for example, the VMG uses the first SIP account to call 12345678.
Last Call Redial	Enter the key combinations that you can enter to make the last call again.
Single Internal Call	Enter the key combinations that you can enter to specify the prefix of a phone port on the VMG that you use to make internal calls.
Dial Plan	
Enable Dial Plan	Select this to activate the dial plan rules you specify in the text box provided. See Section 22.4.2 on page 230 for how to set up a rule.
Dialing Interval Selection	
Dialing Interval Selection	Enter the number of seconds the VMG should wait after you stop dialing numbers before it makes the phone call. The value depends on how quickly you dial phone numbers.
DNS SRV	

Table 102 VoIP > SIP > SIP Service Provider > Add new provider/Edit (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Enable DNS SRV	<p>Select this to have the VMG use DNS procedures to resolve the SIP domain and find the SIP server's IP address, port number and supported transport protocol(s).</p> <p>The VMG first uses DNS Name Authority Pointer (NAPTR) records to determine the transport protocols supported by the SIP server. It then performs DNS Service (SRV) query to determine the port number for the protocol. The VMG resolves the SIP server's IP address by a standard DNS address record lookup.</p> <p>The SIP Server Port and REGISTER Server Port fields in the General section above are grayed out and not applicable and the Transport Type can also be set to AUTO if you enable this option.</p>
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to restore your previously saved settings.

22.4.2 Dial Plan Rules

A dial plan defines the dialing patterns, such as the length and range of the digits for a telephone number. It also includes country codes, access codes, area codes, local numbers, long distance numbers or international call prefixes. For example, the dial plan ([2-9]xxxxxx) does not allow a local number which begins with 1 or 0.

Without a dial plan, users have to manually enter the whole callee's number and wait for the specified dialing interval to time out or press a terminator key (usually the pound key on the phone keypad) before the VMG makes the call.

The VMG initializes a call when the dialed number matches any one of the rules in the dial plan. Dial plan rules follow these conventions:

- The collection of rules is in parentheses ().
- Rules are separated by the | (bar) symbol.
- "x" stands for a wildcard and can be any digit from 0 to 9.
- A subset of keys is in a square bracket []. Ranges are allowed.
For example, [359] means a number matching this rule can be 3, 5 or 9. [26-8*] means a number matching this rule can be 2, 6, 7, 8 or *.
- The dot "." appended to a digit allows the digit to be ignored or repeated multiple times. Any digit (0~9, *, #) after the dot will be ignored.
For example, (01.) means a number matching this rule can be 0, 01, 0111, 01111, and so on.
- <dialed-number:translated-number> indicates the number after the colon replaces the number before the colon in an angle bracket <>. For example,
(<:1212> xxxxxxx) means the VMG automatically prefixes the translated-number "1212" to the number you dialed before making the call. This can be used for local calls in the US.
(<9:> xxx xxxxxxx) means the VMG automatically removes the specified prefix "9" from the number you dialed before making the call. This is always used for making outside calls from an office.
(xx<123:456>xxxx) means the VMG automatically translates "123" to "456" in the number you dialed before making the call.
- Calls with a number followed by the exclamation mark "!" will be dropped.
- Calls with a number followed by the termination character "@" will be made immediately. Any digit (0~9, *, #) after the @ character will be ignored.

In this example dial plan (0 | [49]11 | 1 [2-9]xx xxxxxxx | 1 947 xxxxxxx !), you can dial "0" to call the local operator, call 411 or 911, or make a long distance call with an area code starting from 2 to 9 in the US. The calls with the area code 947 will be dropped.

22.5 The Phone Device Screen

Use this screen to view detailed information of the phone devices. To access this screen, click VoIP > Phone > Phone Device.

Figure 133 VoIP > Phone > Phone Device

Analog Phone					
#	Phone ID	Internal Number	Incoming SIP Number	Outgoing SIP Number	Modify
1	PHONE1	**11	ChangeMe	ChangeMe	
2	PHONE2	**12	ChangeMe	ChangeMe	

Each field is described in the following table.

Table 103 VoIP > Phone > Phone Device

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
#	This displays the index number of the phone device.
Phone ID	This field displays the name of a phone port on the VMG.
Internal Number	This field displays the internal call prefix of a phone port on the VMG.
Incoming SIP Number	This field displays the SIP number that you use to receive calls on this phone port.
Outgoing SIP Number	This field displays the SIP number that you use to make calls on this phone port.
Modify	Click the Edit icon to configure the SIP account.
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the VMG.
Cancel	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.

22.6 The Region Screen

Use this screen to maintain settings that depend on which region of the world the VMG is in. To access this screen, click VoIP > Region.

Figure 134 VoIP > Region

Region Settings :	Norway ▼
Call Service Mode :	Europe Type ▼
<p>Note: Caution: When Region Settings is changed, you need to reboot device to take settings effect.</p>	
<input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	

Each field is described in the following table.

Table 104 VoIP > Region

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Region Settings	Select the place in which the VMG is located.
Call Service Mode	Select the mode for supplementary phone services (call hold, call waiting, call transfer and three-way conference calls) that your VoIP service provider supports. Europe Type - use supplementary phone services in European mode USA Type - use supplementary phone services American mode You might have to subscribe to these services to use them. Contact your VoIP service provider.
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the VMG.
Cancel	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.

22.7 The Call Rule Screen

Use this screen to add, edit, or remove speed-dial numbers for outgoing calls. Speed dial provides shortcuts for dialing frequently-used (VoIP) phone numbers. You also have to create speed-dial entries if you want to call SIP numbers that contain letters. Once you have configured a speed dial rule, you can use a shortcut (the speed dial number, #01 for example) on your phone's keypad to call the phone number.

Figure 135 VoIP > Call Rule

Clear All Speed Dials		
Keys	Number	Description
#01	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
#02	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
#03	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
#04	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
#05	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
#06	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
#07	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
#08	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
#09	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
#10	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

Apply Cancel

Each field is described in the following table.

Table 105 VoIP > Call Rule

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Clear All Speed Dials	Click this to erase all the speed-dial entries on this screen.
Keys	This field displays the speed-dial number you should dial to use this entry.
Number	Enter the SIP number you want the VMG to call when you dial the speed-dial number.
Description	Enter a name to identify the party you call when you dial the speed-dial number. You can use up to 127 printable ASCII characters.

Table 105 VoIP > Call Rule

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the VMG.
Cancel	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.

22.8 The Call History Screen

This screen allows you to view a call history list. You also can see detailed information for each outgoing call you made or each incoming call from someone calling you.

Click VoIP > Call History > Call History. The following screen displays.

Figure 136 VoIP > Call History > Call History



Each field is described in the following table.

Table 106 VoIP > Call History > Call History

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Classify	Select the type of the calls. The call types are: Incoming, Outgoing and Missed.
Clear List	Click this button to remove all entries from the call history list.
Refresh	Click this button to renew the call history list.
Type	This displays the type of the calls.
Date	This displays the date when the calls were made.
Name	This displays the SIP account you called.
Number	This displays the SIP number you called.
Phone Device	This field displays the name of a phone port on the VMG.
Outgoing Number	This displays how many calls originated from you that day.
Duration (hh:mm:ss)	This displays how long the current call has lasted.
Modify	Click the Delete icon to remove the call history.
Export	Click Export to download a call history list.

22.9 The Call Summary Screen

The VMG logs calls from or to your SIP numbers. This screen allows you to view the summary of received, dialed and missed calls.

Click VoIP > Call History > Call Summary. The following screen displays.

Figure 137 VoIP > Call History > Call Summary

Refresh Clear All					
Date	Total Calls	Outgoing Calls	Incoming Calls	Missing Calls	Total Duration (hh:mm:ss)

Each field is described in the following table.

Table 107 VoIP > Call History > Call Summary

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Refresh	Click this button to renew the call history list.
Clear All	Click this button to remove all entries from the call history list.
Date	This is the date when the calls were made.
Total Calls	This displays the total number of calls from or to your SIP numbers that day.
Outgoing Calls	This displays how many calls originated from you that day.
Incoming Calls	This displays how many calls you received that day.
Missing Calls	This displays how many incoming calls were not answered that day.
Total Duration (hh:mm:ss)	This displays how long all calls lasted that day.

22.10 Technical Reference

This section contains background material relevant to the VoIP screens.

VoIP

VoIP is the sending of voice signals over Internet Protocol. This allows you to make phone calls and send faxes over the Internet at a fraction of the cost of using the traditional circuit-switched telephone network. You can also use servers to run telephone service applications like PBX services and voice mail. Internet Telephony Service Provider (ITSP) companies provide VoIP service.

Circuit-switched telephone networks require 64 kilobits per second (Kbps) in each direction to handle a telephone call. VoIP can use advanced voice coding techniques with compression to reduce the required bandwidth.

SIP

The Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) is an application-layer control (signaling) protocol that handles the setting up, altering and tearing down of voice and multimedia sessions over the Internet.

SIP signaling is separate from the media for which it handles sessions. The media that is exchanged during the session can use a different path from that of the signaling. SIP handles telephone calls and can interface with traditional circuit-switched telephone networks.

SIP Identities

A SIP account uses an identity (sometimes referred to as a SIP address). A complete SIP identity is called a SIP URI (Uniform Resource Identifier). A SIP account's URI identifies the SIP account in a

way similar to the way an e-mail address identifies an e-mail account. The format of a SIP identity is SIP-Number@SIP-Service-Domain.

SIP Number

The SIP number is the part of the SIP URI that comes before the "@" symbol. A SIP number can use letters like in an e-mail address (johndoe@your-ITSP.com for example) or numbers like a telephone number (1122334455@VoIP-provider.com for example).

SIP Service Domain

The SIP service domain of the VoIP service provider is the domain name in a SIP URI. For example, if the SIP address is 1122334455@VoIP-provider.com, then "VoIP-provider.com" is the SIP service domain.

SIP Registration

Each VMG is an individual SIP User Agent (UA). To provide voice service, it has a public IP address for SIP and RTP protocols to communicate with other servers.

A SIP user agent has to register with the SIP registrar and must provide information about the users it represents, as well as its current IP address (for the routing of incoming SIP requests). After successful registration, the SIP server knows that the users (identified by their dedicated SIP URIs) are represented by the UA, and knows the IP address to which the SIP requests and responses should be sent.

Registration is initiated by the User Agent Client (UAC) running in the VoIP gateway (the VMG). The gateway must be configured with information letting it know where to send the REGISTER message, as well as the relevant user and authorization data.

A SIP registration has a limited lifespan. The User Agent Client must renew its registration within this lifespan. If it does not do so, the registration data will be deleted from the SIP registrar's database and the connection broken.

The VMG attempts to register all enabled subscriber ports when it is switched on. When you enable a subscriber port that was previously disabled, the VMG attempts to register the port immediately.

Authorization Requirements

SIP registrations (and subsequent SIP requests) require a username and password for authorization. These credentials are validated via a challenge / response system using the HTTP digest mechanism (as detailed in RFC 3261, "SIP: Session Initiation Protocol").

SIP Servers

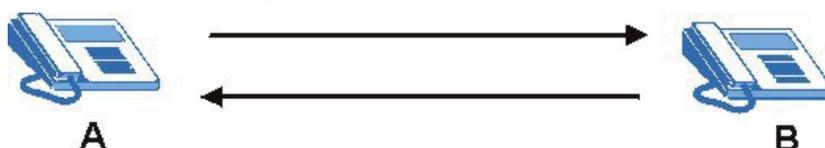
SIP is a client-server protocol. A SIP client is an application program or device that sends SIP requests. A SIP server responds to the SIP requests.

When you use SIP to make a VoIP call, it originates at a client and terminates at a server. A SIP client could be a computer or a SIP phone. One device can act as both a SIP client and a SIP server.

SIP User Agent

A SIP user agent can make and receive VoIP telephone calls. This means that SIP can be used for peer-to-peer communications even though it is a client-server protocol. In the following figure, either A or B can act as a SIP user agent client to initiate a call. A and B can also both act as a SIP user agent to receive the call.

Figure 138 SIP User Agent



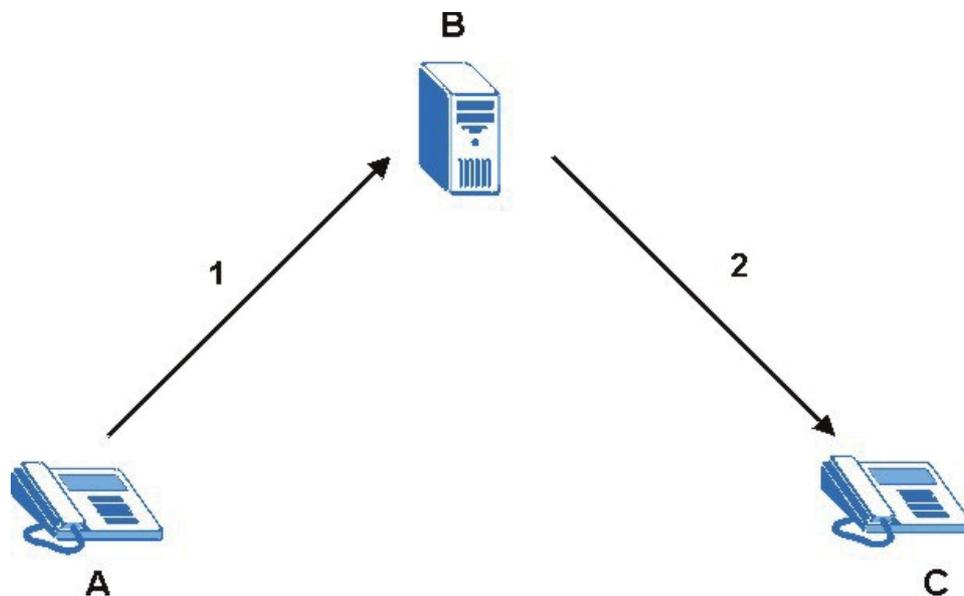
SIP Proxy Server

A SIP proxy server receives requests from clients and forwards them to another server.

In the following example, you want to use client device A to call someone who is using client device C.

- 1 The client device (A in the figure) sends a call invitation to the SIP proxy server (B).
- 2 The SIP proxy server forwards the call invitation to C.

Figure 139 SIP Proxy Server



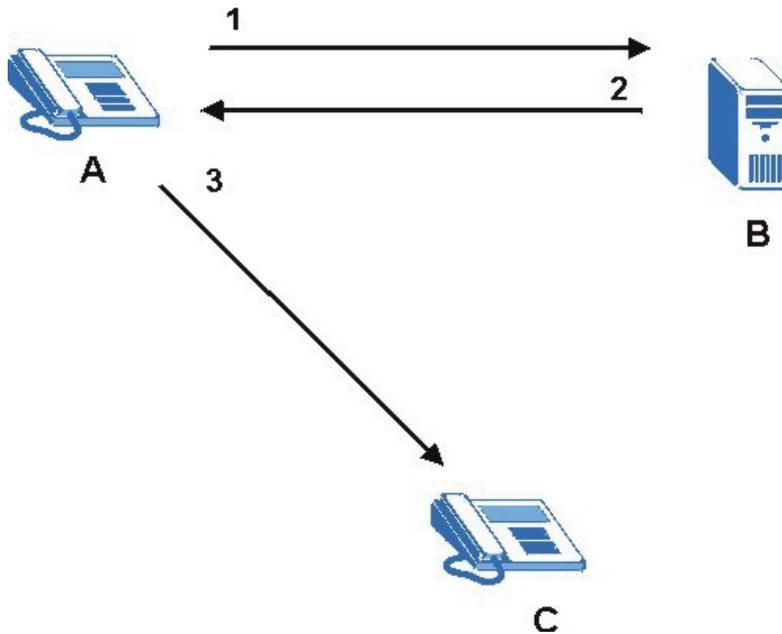
SIP Redirect Server

A SIP redirect server accepts SIP requests, translates the destination address to an IP address and sends the translated IP address back to the device that sent the request. Then the client device that originally sent the request can send requests to the IP address that it received back from the redirect server. Redirect servers do not initiate SIP requests.

In the following example, you want to use client device A to call someone who is using client device C.

- 1 Client device A sends a call invitation for C to the SIP redirect server (B).
- 2 The SIP redirect server sends the invitation back to A with C's IP address (or domain name).
- 3 Client device A then sends the call invitation to client device C.

Figure 140 SIP Redirect Server



SIP Register Server

A SIP register server maintains a database of SIP identity-to-IP address (or domain name) mapping. The register server checks your user name and password when you register.

RTP

When you make a VoIP call using SIP, the RTP (Real time Transport Protocol) is used to handle voice data transfer. See RFC 1889 for details on RTP.

Pulse Code Modulation

Pulse Code Modulation (PCM) measures analog signal amplitudes at regular time intervals and converts them into bits.

SIP Call Progression

The following figure displays the basic steps in the setup and tear down of a SIP call. A calls B.

Table 108 SIP Call Progression

A		B
1. INVITE	→	
	←	2. Ringing
	←	3. OK
4. ACK	→	
		5. Dialogue (voice traffic)
6. BYE	→	
	←	7. OK

- 1 A sends a SIP INVITE request to B. This message is an invitation for B to participate in a SIP telephone call.
- 2 B sends a response indicating that the telephone is ringing.
- 3 B sends an OK response after the call is answered.
- 4 A then sends an ACK message to acknowledge that B has answered the call.
- 5 Now A and B exchange voice media (talk).
- 6 After talking, A hangs up and sends a BYE request.
- 7 B replies with an OK response confirming receipt of the BYE request and the call is terminated.

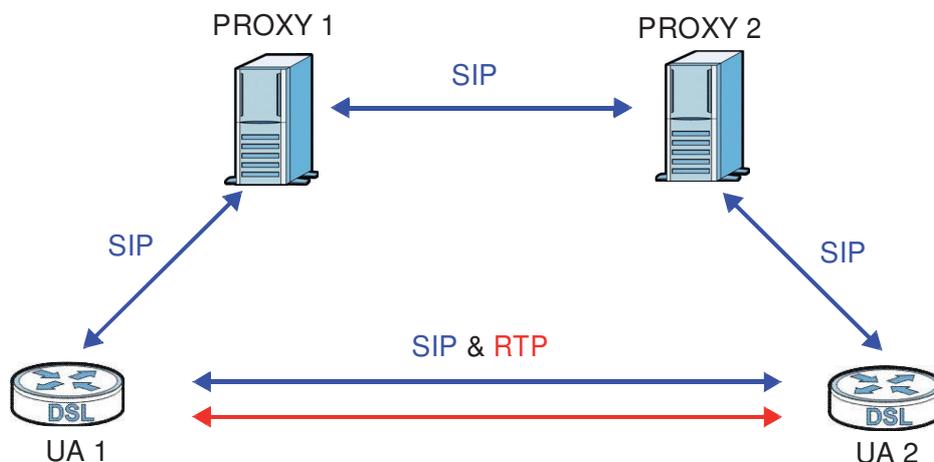
SIP Call Progression Through Proxy Servers

Usually, the SIP UAC sets up a phone call by sending a request to the SIP proxy server. Then, the proxy server looks up the destination to which the call should be forwarded (according to the URI requested by the SIP UAC). The request may be forwarded to more than one proxy server before arriving at its destination.

The response to the request goes to all the proxy servers through which the request passed, in reverse sequence. Once the session is set up, session traffic is sent between the UAs directly, bypassing all the proxy servers in between.

The following figure shows the SIP and session traffic flow between the user agents (UA 1 and UA 2) and the proxy servers (this example shows two proxy servers, PROXY 1 and PROXY 2).

Figure 141 SIP Call Through Proxy Servers



The following table shows the SIP call progression.

Table 109 SIP Call Progression

UA 1		PROXY 1		PROXY 2		UA 2
Invite	→					
		Invite	→			
	←	100 Trying		Invite	→	
				100 Trying	←	
						180 Ringing
				180 Ringing	←	
	←	180 Ringing				
						200 OK
				200 OK	←	
	←	200 OK				
ACK	→					
RTP	→					RTP
	←					BYE
200 OK	→					

- 1 User Agent 1 sends a SIP INVITE request to Proxy 1. This message is an invitation to User Agent 2 to participate in a SIP telephone call. Proxy 1 sends a response indicating that it is trying to complete the request.
- 2 Proxy 1 sends a SIP INVITE request to Proxy 2. Proxy 2 sends a response indicating that it is trying to complete the request.
- 3 Proxy 2 sends a SIP INVITE request to User Agent 2.
- 4 User Agent 2 sends a response back to Proxy 2 indicating that the phone is ringing. The response is relayed back to User Agent 1 via Proxy 1.
- 5 User Agent 2 sends an OK response to Proxy 2 after the call is answered. This is also relayed back to User Agent 1 via Proxy 1.

- 6 User Agent 1 and User Agent 2 exchange RTP packets containing voice data directly, without involving the proxies.
- 7 When User Agent 2 hangs up, he sends a BYE request.
- 8 User Agent 1 replies with an OK response confirming receipt of the BYE request, and the call is terminated.

Voice Coding

A codec (coder/decoder) codes analog voice signals into digital signals and decodes the digital signals back into analog voice signals. The VMG supports the following codecs.

- G.711 is a Pulse Code Modulation (PCM) waveform codec. PCM measures analog signal amplitudes at regular time intervals and converts them into digital samples. G.711 provides very good sound quality but requires 64 kbps of bandwidth.
- G.726 is an Adaptive Differential PCM (ADPCM) waveform codec that uses a lower bitrate than standard PCM conversion. ADPCM converts analog audio into digital signals based on the difference between each audio sample and a prediction based on previous samples. The more similar the audio sample is to the prediction, the less space needed to describe it. G.726 operates at 16, 24, 32 or 40 kbps.
- G.729 is an Analysis-by-Synthesis (AbS) hybrid waveform codec that uses a filter based on information about how the human vocal tract produces sounds. G.729 provides good sound quality and reduces the required bandwidth to 8 kbps.

Voice Activity Detection/Silence Suppression

Voice Activity Detection (VAD) detects whether or not speech is present. This lets the VMG reduce the bandwidth that a call uses by not transmitting “silent packets” when you are not speaking.

Comfort Noise Generation

When using VAD, the VMG generates comfort noise when the other party is not speaking. The comfort noise lets you know that the line is still connected as total silence could easily be mistaken for a lost connection.

Echo Cancellation

G.168 is an ITU-T standard for eliminating the echo caused by the sound of your voice reverberating in the telephone receiver while you talk.

MWI (Message Waiting Indication)

Enable Message Waiting Indication (MWI) enables your phone to give you a message–waiting (beeping) dial tone when you have a voice message(s). Your VoIP service provider must have a messaging system that sends message waiting status SIP packets as defined in RFC 3842.

Custom Tones (IVR)

IVR (Interactive Voice Response) is a feature that allows you to use your telephone to interact with the VMG. The VMG allows you to record custom tones for the Early Media and Music On Hold functions. The same recordings apply to both the caller ringing and on hold tones.

Table 110 Custom Tones Details

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Total Time for All Tones	900 seconds for all custom tones combined
Maximum Time per Individual Tone	180 seconds
Total Number of Tones Recordable	5 You can record up to 5 different custom tones but the total time must be 900 seconds or less.

Recording Custom Tones

Use the following steps if you would like to create new tones or change your tones:

- 1 Pick up the phone and press "****" on your phone's keypad and wait for the message that says you are in the configuration menu.
- 2 Press a number from 1101~1105 on your phone followed by the "#" key.
- 3 Play your desired music or voice recording into the receiver's mouthpiece. Press the "#" key.
- 4 You can continue to add, listen to, or delete tones, or you can hang up the receiver when you are done.

Listening to Custom Tones

Do the following to listen to a custom tone:

- 1 Pick up the phone and press "****" on your phone's keypad and wait for the message that says you are in the configuration menu.
- 2 Press a number from 1201~1208 followed by the "#" key to listen to the tone.
- 3 You can continue to add, listen to, or delete tones, or you can hang up the receiver when you are done.

Deleting Custom Tones

Do the following to delete a custom tone:

- 1 Pick up the phone and press "****" on your phone's keypad and wait for the message that says you are in the configuration menu.
- 2 Press a number from 1301~1308 followed by the "#" key to delete the tone of your choice. Press 14 followed by the "#" key if you wish to clear all your custom tones.

You can continue to add, listen to, or delete tones, or you can hang up the receiver when you are done.

22.10.1 Quality of Service (QoS)

Quality of Service (QoS) refers to both a network's ability to deliver data with minimum delay, and the networking methods used to provide bandwidth for real-time multimedia applications.

Type of Service (ToS)

Network traffic can be classified by setting the ToS (Type of Service) values at the data source (for example, at the VMG) so a server can decide the best method of delivery, that is the least cost, fastest route and so on.

DiffServ

DiffServ is a class of service (CoS) model that marks packets so that they receive specific per-hop treatment at DiffServ-compliant network devices along the route based on the application types and traffic flow. Packets are marked with DiffServ Code Points (DSCP) indicating the level of service desired. This allows the intermediary DiffServ-compliant network devices to handle the packets differently depending on the code points without the need to negotiate paths or remember state information for every flow. In addition, applications do not have to request a particular service or give advanced notice of where the traffic is going.³

DSCP and Per-Hop Behavior

DiffServ defines a new DS (Differentiated Services) field to replace the Type of Service (TOS) field in the IP header. The DS field contains a 2-bit unused field and a 6-bit DSCP field which can define up to 64 service levels. The following figure illustrates the DS field.

DSCP is backward compatible with the three precedence bits in the ToS octet so that non-DiffServ compliant, ToS-enabled network device will not conflict with the DSCP mapping.

Figure 142 DiffServ: Differentiated Service Field

DSCP (6-bit)	Unused (2-bit)
-----------------	-------------------

The DSCP value determines the forwarding behavior, the PHB (Per-Hop Behavior), that each packet gets across the DiffServ network. Based on the marking rule, different kinds of traffic can be marked for different priorities of forwarding. Resources can then be allocated according to the DSCP values and the configured policies.

22.10.2 Phone Services Overview

Supplementary services such as call hold, call waiting, and call transfer. are generally available from your VoIP service provider. The VMG supports the following services:

3. The VMG does not support DiffServ at the time of writing.

- Call Return
- Call Hold
- Call Waiting
- Making a Second Call
- Call Transfer
- Call Forwarding
- Three-Way Conference
- Internal Calls
- Call Park and Pickup
- Do not Disturb
- IVR
- Call Completion
- CCBS
- Outgoing SIP

Note: To take full advantage of the supplementary phone services available through the VMG's phone ports, you may need to subscribe to the services from your VoIP service provider.

22.10.2.1 The Flash Key

Flashing means to press the hook for a short period of time (a few hundred milliseconds) before releasing it. On newer telephones, there should be a "flash" key (button) that generates the signal electronically. If the flash key is not available, you can tap (press and immediately release) the hook by hand to achieve the same effect. However, using the flash key is preferred since the timing is much more precise. With manual tapping, if the duration is too long, it may be interpreted as hanging up by the VMG.

You can invoke all the supplementary services by using the flash key.

22.10.2.2 Europe Type Supplementary Phone Services

This section describes how to use supplementary phone services with the Europe Type Call Service Mode. Commands for supplementary services are listed in the table below.

After pressing the flash key, if you do not issue the sub-command before the default sub-command timeout (2 seconds) expires or issue an invalid sub-command, the current operation will be aborted.

Table 111 European Flash Key Commands

COMMAND	SUB-COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
Flash		Put a current call on hold to place a second call. Switch back to the call (if there is no second call).
Flash	0	Drop the call presently on hold or reject an incoming call which is waiting for answer.
Flash	1	Disconnect the current phone connection and answer the incoming call or resume with caller presently on hold.

Table 111 European Flash Key Commands

COMMAND	SUB-COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
Flash	2	1. Switch back and forth between two calls. 2. Put a current call on hold to answer an incoming call. 3. Separate the current three-way conference call into two individual calls (one is on-line, the other is on hold).
Flash	3	Create three-way conference connection.
Flash	*98#	Transfer the call to another phone.

European Call Hold

Call hold allows you to put a call (A) on hold by pressing the flash key.

If you have another call, press the flash key and then "2" to switch back and forth between caller A and B by putting either one on hold.

Press the flash key and then "0" to disconnect the call presently on hold and keep the current call on line.

Press the flash key and then "1" to disconnect the current call and resume the call on hold.

If you hang up the phone but a caller is still on hold, there will be a remind ring.

European Call Waiting

This allows you to place a call on hold while you answer another incoming call on the same telephone (directory) number.

If there is a second call to a telephone number, you will hear a call waiting tone. Take one of the following actions.

- Reject the second call.
Press the flash key and then press "0".
- Disconnect the first call and answer the second call.
Either press the flash key and press "1", or just hang up the phone and then answer the phone after it rings.
- Put the first call on hold and answer the second call.
Press the flash key and then "2".

European Call Transfer

Do the following to transfer an incoming call (that you have answered) to another phone.

- 1 Press the flash key to put the caller on hold.
- 2 When you hear the dial tone, dial "*98#" followed by the number to which you want to transfer the call.
- 3 After you hear the ring signal or the second party answers it, hang up the phone.

European Three-Way Conference

Use the following steps to make three-way conference calls.

- 1 When you are on the phone talking to someone, press the flash key to put the caller on hold and get a dial tone.
- 2 Dial a phone number directly to make another call.
- 3 When the second call is answered, press the flash key and press "3" to create a three-way conversation.
- 4 Hang up the phone to drop the connection.
- 5 If you want to separate the activated three-way conference into two individual connections (one is on-line, the other is on hold), press the flash key and press "2".

22.10.2.3 USA Type Supplementary Services

This section describes how to use supplementary phone services with the USA Type Call Service Mode. Commands for supplementary services are listed in the table below.

After pressing the flash key, if you do not issue the sub-command before the default sub-command timeout (2 seconds) expires or issue an invalid sub-command, the current operation will be aborted.

Table 112 USA Flash Key Commands

COMMAND	SUB-COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
Flash		Put a current call on hold to place a second call. After the second call is successful, press the flash key again to have a three-way conference call. Put a current call on hold to answer an incoming call.
Flash	*98#	Transfer the call to another phone.

USA Call Hold

Call hold allows you to put a call (A) on hold by pressing the flash key.

If you have another call, press the flash key to switch back and forth between caller A and B by putting either one on hold.

If you hang up the phone but a caller is still on hold, there will be a remind ring.

USA Call Waiting

This allows you to place a call on hold while you answer another incoming call on the same telephone (directory) number.

If there is a second call to your telephone number, you will hear a call waiting tone.

Press the flash key to put the first call on hold and answer the second call.

USA Call Transfer

Do the following to transfer an incoming call (that you have answered) to another phone.

- 1 Press the flash key to put the caller on hold.
- 2 When you hear the dial tone, dial `*98#` followed by the number to which you want to transfer the call.
- 3 After you hear the ring signal or the second party answers it, hang up the phone.

USA Three-Way Conference

Use the following steps to make three-way conference calls.

- 1 When you are on the phone talking to someone (party A), press the flash key to put the caller on hold and get a dial tone.
- 2 Dial a phone number directly to make another call (to party B).
- 3 When party B answers the second call, press the flash key to create a three-way conversation.
- 4 Hang up the phone to drop the connection.
- 5 If you want to separate the activated three-way conference into two individual connections (with party A on-line and party B on hold), press the flash key.
- 6 If you want to go back to the three-way conversation, press the flash key again.
- 7 If you want to separate the activated three-way conference into two individual connections again, press the flash key. This time the party B is on-line and party A is on hold.

22.10.2.4 Phone Functions Summary

The following table shows the key combinations you can enter on your phone's keypad to use certain features.

Table 113 Phone Functions Summary

ACTION	FUNCTION	DESCRIPTION
*98#	Call transfer	Transfer a call to another phone. See Section 22.10.2.2 on page 243 (Europe type) and Section 22.10.2.3 on page 245 (USA type).
*66#	Call return	Place a call to the last person who called you.
*95#	Enable Do Not Disturb	Use these to set your phone not to ring when someone calls you, or to turn this function off.
#95#	Disable Do Not Disturb	
*41#	Enable Call Waiting	Use these to allow you to put a call on hold when you are answering another, or to turn this function off.
#41#	Disable Call Waiting	
****	IVR	Use these to set up Interactive Voice Response (IVR). IVR allows you to record custom caller ringing tones (the sound a caller hears before you pick up the phone) and on hold tones (the sound someone hears when you put their call on hold).
###	Internal Call	Call the phone(s) connected to the VMG.

Table 113 Phone Functions Summary

ACTION	FUNCTION	DESCRIPTION
*82	One Shot Caller Display Call	Activate or deactivate caller ID for the next call only.
*67	One Shot Caller Hidden Call	

23.1 Overview

The web configurator allows you to choose which categories of events and/or alerts to have the VMG log and then display the logs or have the VMG send them to an administrator (as e-mail) or to a syslog server.

23.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- Use the System Log screen to see the system logs ([Section 23.2 on page 249](#)).
- Use the Security Log screen to see the security-related logs for the categories that you select ([Section 23.3 on page 249](#)).

23.1.2 What You Need To Know

The following terms and concepts may help as you read this chapter.

Alerts and Logs

An alert is a type of log that warrants more serious attention. They include system errors, attacks (access control) and attempted access to blocked web sites. Some categories such as System Errors consist of both logs and alerts. You may differentiate them by their color in the View Log screen. Alerts display in red and logs display in black.

Syslog Overview

The syslog protocol allows devices to send event notification messages across an IP network to syslog servers that collect the event messages. A syslog-enabled device can generate a syslog message and send it to a syslog server.

Syslog is defined in RFC 3164. The RFC defines the packet format, content and system log related information of syslog messages. Each syslog message has a facility and severity level. The syslog facility identifies a file in the syslog server. Refer to the documentation of your syslog program for details. The following table describes the syslog severity levels.

Table 114 Syslog Severity Levels

CODE	SEVERITY
0	Emergency: The system is unusable.
1	Alert: Action must be taken immediately.
2	Critical: The system condition is critical.
3	Error: There is an error condition on the system.
4	Warning: There is a warning condition on the system.

Table 114 Syslog Severity Levels

CODE	SEVERITY
5	Notice: There is a normal but significant condition on the system.
6	Informational: The syslog contains an informational message.
7	Debug: The message is intended for debug-level purposes.

23.2 The System Log Screen

Use the System Log screen to see the system logs. Click System Monitor > Log to open the System Log screen.

Figure 143 System Monitor > Log > System Log

The screenshot shows the System Log screen interface. At the top, there are two dropdown menus: 'Level: All' and 'Category: All'. Below these are four buttons: 'Clear Log', 'Refresh', 'Export Log', and 'Email Log Now'. Below the buttons is a table header with the following columns: '#', 'Time', 'Facility', 'Level', 'Category', and 'Messages'.

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 115 System Monitor > Log > System Log

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Level	Select a severity level from the drop-down list box. This filters search results according to the severity level you have selected. When you select a severity, the VMG searches through all logs of that severity or higher.
Category	Select the type of logs to display.
Clear Log	Click this to delete all the logs.
Refresh	Click this to renew the log screen.
Export Log	Click this to export the selected log(s).
Email Log Now	Click this to send the log file(s) to the E-mail address you specify in the Maintenance > Logs Setting screen.
System Log	
#	This field is a sequential value and is not associated with a specific entry.
Time	This field displays the time the log was recorded.
Facility	The log facility allows you to send logs to different files in the syslog server. Refer to the documentation of your syslog program for more details.
Level	This field displays the severity level of the log that the device is to send to this syslog server.
Category	This field displays the type of the log.
Messages	This field states the reason for the log.

23.3 The Security Log Screen

Use the Security Log screen to see the security-related logs for the categories that you select. Click System Monitor > Log > Security Log to open the following screen.

Figure 144 System Monitor > Log > Security Log

The screenshot shows a web interface for the Security Log. At the top, there are two dropdown menus: 'Level: All' and 'Category: All'. Below these are four buttons: 'Clear Log', 'Refresh', 'Export Log', and 'Email Log Now'. At the bottom, there is a table header with the following columns: '#', 'Time', 'Facility', 'Level', 'Category', and 'Messages'.

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 116 System Monitor > Log > Security Log

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Level	Select a severity level from the drop-down list box. This filters search results according to the severity level you have selected. When you select a severity, the VMG searches through all logs of that severity or higher.
Category	Select the type of logs to display.
Clear Log	Click this to delete all the logs.
Refresh	Click this to renew the log screen.
Export Log	Click this to export the selected log(s).
Email Log Now	Click this to send the log file(s) to the E-mail address you specify in the Maintenance > Logs Setting screen.
#	This field is a sequential value and is not associated with a specific entry.
Time	This field displays the time the log was recorded.
Facility	The log facility allows you to send logs to different files in the syslog server. Refer to the documentation of your syslog program for more details.
Level	This field displays the severity level of the log that the device is to send to this syslog server.
Category	This field displays the type of the log.
Messages	This field states the reason for the log.

Traffic Status

24.1 Overview

Use the Traffic Status screens to look at network traffic status and statistics of the WAN, LAN interfaces and NAT.

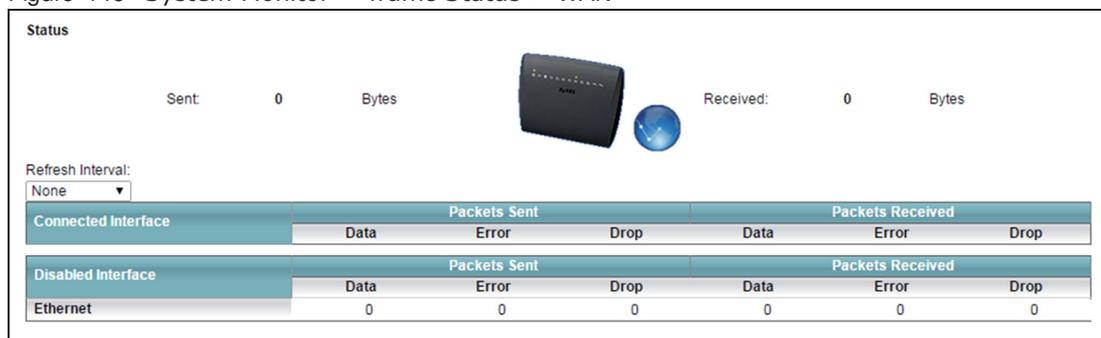
24.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- Use the WAN screen to view the WAN traffic statistics (Section 24.2 on page 251).
- Use the LAN screen to view the LAN traffic statistics (Section 24.3 on page 252).
- Use the NAT screen to view the NAT status of the VMG's client(s) (Section 24.4 on page 253)

24.2 The WAN Status Screen

Click System Monitor > Traffic Status to open the WAN screen. The figure in this screen shows the number of bytes received and sent on the VMG.

Figure 145 System Monitor > Traffic Status > WAN



The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 117 System Monitor > Traffic Status > WAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Connected Interface	This shows the name of the WAN interface that is currently connected.
Packets Sent	
Data	This indicates the number of transmitted packets on this interface.
Error	This indicates the number of frames with errors transmitted on this interface.
Drop	This indicates the number of outgoing packets dropped on this interface.

Table 117 System Monitor > Traffic Status > WAN (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Packets Received	
Data	This indicates the number of received packets on this interface.
Error	This indicates the number of frames with errors received on this interface.
Drop	This indicates the number of received packets dropped on this interface.
more...hide more	Click more... to show more information. Click hide more to hide them.
Disabled Interface	This shows the name of the WAN interface that is currently disconnected.
Packets Sent	
Data	This indicates the number of transmitted packets on this interface.
Error	This indicates the number of frames with errors transmitted on this interface.
Drop	This indicates the number of outgoing packets dropped on this interface.
Packets Received	
Data	This indicates the number of received packets on this interface.
Error	This indicates the number of frames with errors received on this interface.
Drop	This indicates the number of received packets dropped on this interface.

24.3 The LAN Status Screen

Click System Monitor > Traffic Status > LAN to open the following screen. The figure in this screen shows the interface that is currently connected on the VMG.

Figure 146 System Monitor > Traffic Status > LAN

Refresh Interval: None							
Interface	LAN1	LAN2	LAN3	LAN4	2.4G WLAN	5G WLAN	
Bytes Sent	0	0	0	19866279	2999	8755571	
Bytes Received	0	0	0	34707952	2252	0	
Interface	LAN1	LAN2	LAN3	LAN4	2.4G WLAN	5G WLAN	
Sent (Packet)	Data	0	0	0	119834	21	72917
	Error	0	0	0	0	0	0
	Drop	0	0	0	0	0	94
Received (Packet)	Data	0	0	0	254567	20	0
	Error	0	0	0	0	0	0
	Drop	0	0	0	0	0	2

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 118 System Monitor > Traffic Status > LAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Refresh Interval	Select how often you want the VMG to update this screen.
Interface	This shows the LAN or WLAN interface.
Bytes Sent	This indicates the number of bytes transmitted on this interface.
Bytes Received	This indicates the number of bytes received on this interface.
Interface	This shows the LAN or WLAN interfaces.

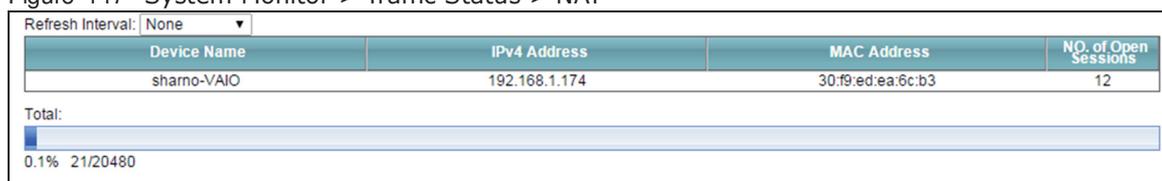
Table 118 System Monitor > Traffic Status > LAN (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Sent (Packets)	
Data	This indicates the number of transmitted packets on this interface.
Error	This indicates the number of frames with errors transmitted on this interface.
Drop	This indicates the number of outgoing packets dropped on this interface.
Received (Packets)	
Data	This indicates the number of received packets on this interface.
Error	This indicates the number of frames with errors received on this interface.
Drop	This indicates the number of received packets dropped on this interface.

24.4 The NAT Status Screen

Click System Monitor > Traffic Status > NAT to open the following screen. The figure in this screen shows the NAT session statistics for hosts currently connected on the VMG.

Figure 147 System Monitor > Traffic Status > NAT



The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 119 System Monitor > Traffic Status > NAT

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Refresh Interval	Select how often you want the VMG to update this screen.
Device Name	This displays the name of the connected host.
IP Address	This displays the IP address of the connected host.
MAC Address	This displays the MAC address of the connected host.
No. of Open Session	This displays the number of NAT sessions currently opened for the connected host.
Total	This displays what percentage of NAT sessions the VMG can support is currently being used by all connected hosts. You can also see the number of active NAT sessions and the maximum number of NAT sessions the VMG can support.

VoIP Status

25.1 The VoIP Status Screen

Click System Monitor > VoIP Status to open the following screen. You can view the VoIP registration, current call status and phone numbers in this screen.

Figure 148 System Monitor > VoIP Status

Poll Interval(s) : 10 sec <input type="button" value="Set Interval"/> <input type="button" value="Stop"/>							
SIP Status							
Account	Registration	Registration Time	URI	Message Waiting	Last Incoming Number	Last Outgoing Number	
1	Disabled		ChangeMe@ChangeMe	No			
Call Status							
Account	Duration	Status	Call Type	Codec	From Phone Port Type	To Phone Port Type	Peer Number
Phone Status							
Phone	Outgoing Number			Incoming Number			
Phone 1	ChangeMe			ChangeMe.			
Phone 2	ChangeMe			ChangeMe.			

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 120 System Monitor > VoIP Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Poll Interval(s)	Enter the number of seconds the VMG needs to wait before updating this screen and then click Set Interval. Click Stop to have the VMG stop updating this screen.
SIP Status	
Account	This column displays each SIP account in the VMG.
Registration	This field displays the current registration status of the SIP account. You can change this in the Status screen. Registered - The SIP account is registered with a SIP server. Not Registered - The last time the VMG tried to register the SIP account with the SIP server, the attempt failed. The VMG automatically tries to register the SIP account when you turn on the VMG or when you activate it. Inactive - The SIP account is not active. You can activate it in VoIP > SIP > SIP Account.
Registration Time	This field displays the last time the VMG successfully registered the SIP account. The field is blank if the VMG has never successfully registered this account.
URI	This field displays the account number and service domain of the SIP account. You can change these in the VoIP > SIP screens.
Message Waiting	This field indicates whether or not there are any messages waiting for the SIP account.

Table 120 System Monitor > VoIP Status (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Last Incoming Number	This field displays the last number that called the SIP account. The field is blank if no number has ever dialed the SIP account.
Last Outgoing Number	This field displays the last number the SIP account called. The field is blank if the SIP account has never dialed a number.
Call Status	
Account	This column displays each SIP account in the VMG.
Duration	This field displays how long the current call has lasted.
Status	This field displays the current state of the phone call. Idle - There are no current VoIP calls, incoming calls or outgoing calls being made. Dial - The callee's phone is ringing. Ring - The phone is ringing for an incoming VoIP call. Process - There is a VoIP call in progress. DISC - The callee's line is busy, the callee hung up or your phone was left off the hook.
Codec	This field displays what voice codec is being used for a current VoIP call through a phone port.
Peer Number	This field displays the SIP number of the party that is currently engaged in a VoIP call through a phone port.
Phone Status	
Phone	This field displays the name of a phone port on the VMG.
Outgoing Number	This field displays the SIP number that you use to make calls on this phone port.
Incoming Number	This field displays the SIP number that you use to receive calls on this phone port.

ARP Table

26.1 Overview

Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) is a protocol for mapping an Internet Protocol address (IP address) to a physical machine address, also known as a Media Access Control or MAC address, on the local area network.

An IP (version 4) address is 32 bits long. In an Ethernet LAN, MAC addresses are 48 bits long. The ARP Table maintains an association between each MAC address and its corresponding IP address.

26.1.1 How ARP Works

When an incoming packet destined for a host device on a local area network arrives at the device, the device's ARP program looks in the ARP Table and, if it finds the address, sends it to the device.

If no entry is found for the IP address, ARP broadcasts the request to all the devices on the LAN. The device fills in its own MAC and IP address in the sender address fields, and puts the known IP address of the target in the target IP address field. In addition, the device puts all ones in the target MAC field (FF.FF.FF.FF.FF.FF is the Ethernet broadcast address). The replying device (which is either the IP address of the device being sought or the router that knows the way) replaces the broadcast address with the target's MAC address, swaps the sender and target pairs, and unicasts the answer directly back to the requesting machine. ARP updates the ARP Table for future reference and then sends the packet to the MAC address that replied.

26.2 ARP Table Screen

Use the ARP table to view IP-to-MAC address mapping(s). To open this screen, click System Monitor > ARP Table.

Figure 149 System Monitor > ARP Table

IPv4 ARP Table			
#	IPv4 Address	MAC Address	Device
1	192.168.1.174	30:f9:ed:ea:6c:b3	br0

IPv6 Neighbour Table			
#	IPv6 Address	MAC Address	Device

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 121 System Monitor > ARP Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
#	This is the ARP table entry number.
IPv4/IPv6 Address	This is the learned IPv4 or IPv6 IP address of a device connected to a port.
MAC Address	This is the MAC address of the device with the listed IP address.
Device	This is the type of interface used by the device. You can click on the device type to go to its configuration screen.

Routing Table

27.1 Overview

Routing is based on the destination address only and the VMG takes the shortest path to forward a packet.

27.2 The Routing Table Screen

Click System Monitor > Routing Table to open the following screen.

Figure 150 System Monitor > Routing Table

IPv4 Routing Table					
Destination	Gateway	Subnet Mask	Flag	Metric	Interface
172.23.30.0	*	255.255.255.0	U	0	eth3.1
192.168.1.0	*	255.255.255.0	U	0	br0
default	172.23.30.254	0.0.0.0	UG	0	eth3.1

IPv6 Routing Table					
Destination	Gateway	Flag	Metric	Interface	
fe80::/64	::	U	256	br0	
ff00::/8	::	U	256	br0	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 122 System Monitor > Routing Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IPv4/IPv6 Routing Table	
Destination	This indicates the destination IPv4 address or IPv6 address and prefix of this route.
Gateway	This indicates the IPv4 address or IPv6 address of the gateway that helps forward this route's traffic.
Subnet Mask	This indicates the destination subnet mask of the IPv4 route.

Table 122 System Monitor > Routing Table (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Flag	<p>This indicates the route status.</p> <p>U-Up: The route is up.</p> <p>!-Reject: The route is blocked and will force a route lookup to fail.</p> <p>G-Gateway: The route uses a gateway to forward traffic.</p> <p>H-Host: The target of the route is a host.</p> <p>R-Reinstate: The route is reinstated for dynamic routing.</p> <p>D-Dynamic (redirect): The route is dynamically installed by a routing daemon or redirect.</p> <p>M-Modified (redirect): The route is modified from a routing daemon or redirect.</p>
Metric	<p>The metric represents the "cost of transmission". A router determines the best route for transmission by choosing a path with the lowest "cost". The smaller the number, the lower the "cost".</p>
Service	<p>This indicates the name of the service used to forward the route.</p>
Interface	<p>This indicates the name of the interface through which the route is forwarded.</p> <p>brx indicates a LAN interface where x can be 0~3 to represent LAN1 to LAN4 respectively.</p> <p>ptm0 indicates a WAN interface using IPoE or in bridge mode.</p> <p>ppp0 indicates a WAN interface using PPPoE.</p>

Multicast Status

28.1 Overview

Use the Multicast Status screens to look at IGMP/MLD group status and traffic statistics.

28.2 The IGMP Status Screen

Use this screen to look at the current list of multicast groups the VMG has joined and which ports have joined it. To open this screen, click System Monitor > Multicast Status > IGMP Status.

Figure 151 System Monitor > Multicast Status > IGMP Status

Refresh				
Interface	Multicast Group	Filter Mode	Source List	Member

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 123 System Monitor > Multicast Status > IGMP Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Refresh	Click this button to update the information on this screen.
Interface	This field displays the name of an interface on the VMG that belongs to an IGMP multicast group.
Multicast Group	This field displays the name of the IGMP multicast group to which the interface belongs.
Filter Mode	INCLUDE means that only the IP addresses in the Source List get to receive the multicast group's traffic. EXCLUDE means that the IP addresses in the Source List are not allowed to receive the multicast group's traffic but other IP addresses can.
Source List	This is the list of IP addresses that are allowed or not allowed to receive the multicast group's traffic depending on the filter mode.
Member	This is the list of the members of the multicast group.

28.3 The MLD Status Screen

Use this screen to look at the current list of multicast groups the VMG has joined and which ports have joined it. To open this screen, click System Monitor > Multicast Status > MLD Status.

Figure 152 System Monitor > Multicast Status > MLD Status

Refresh				
Interface	Multicast Group	Filter Mode	Source List	Member

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 124 System Monitor > Multicast Status > MLD Status

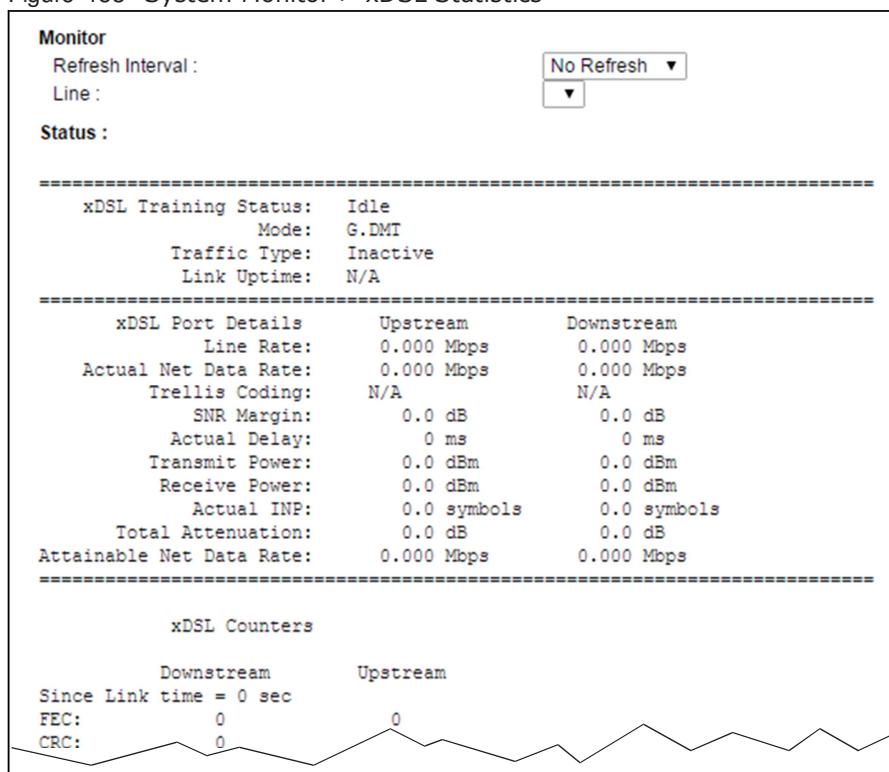
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Refresh	Click this button to update the status on this screen.
Interface	This field displays the name of an interface on the VMG that belongs to an MLD multicast group.
Multicast Group	This field displays the name of the MLD multicast group to which the interface belongs.
Filter Mode	INCLUDE means that only the IP addresses in the Source List get to receive the multicast group's traffic. EXCLUDE means that the IP addresses in the Source List are not allowed to receive the multicast group's traffic but other IP addresses can.
Source List	This is the list of IP addresses that are allowed or not allowed to receive the multicast group's traffic depending on the filter mode.
Member	This is the list of members in the multicast group.

xDSL Statistics

29.1 The xDSL Statistics Screen

Use this screen to view detailed DSL statistics. Click System Monitor > xDSL Statistics to open the following screen.

Figure 153 System Monitor > xDSL Statistics



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 125 Status > xDSL Statistics

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Refresh Interval	Select the time interval for refreshing statistics.
Line	Select which DSL line's statistics you want to display.
xDSL Training Status	This displays the current state of setting up the DSL connection.
Mode	This displays the ITU standard used for this connection.

Table 125 Status > xDSL Statistics (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Traffic Type	This displays the type of traffic the DSL port is sending and receiving. Inactive displays if the DSL port is not currently sending or receiving traffic.
Link Uptime	This displays how long the port has been running (or connected) since the last time it was started.
xDSL Port Details	
Upstream	These are the statistics for the traffic direction going out from the port to the service provider.
Downstream	These are the statistics for the traffic direction coming into the port from the service provider.
Line Rate	These are the data transfer rates at which the port is sending and receiving data.
Actual Net Data Rate	These are the rates at which the port is sending and receiving the payload data without transport layer protocol headers and traffic.
Trellis Coding	This displays whether or not the port is using Trellis coding for traffic it is sending and receiving. Trellis coding helps to reduce the noise in ADSL transmissions. Trellis may reduce throughput but it makes the connection more stable.
SNR Margin	This is the upstream and downstream Signal-to-Noise Ratio margin (in dB). A DMT sub-carrier's SNR is the ratio between the received signal power and the received noise power. The signal-to-noise ratio margin is the maximum that the received noise power could increase with the system still being able to meet its transmission targets.
Actual Delay	This is the upstream and downstream interleave delay. It is the wait (in milliseconds) that determines the size of a single block of data to be interleaved (assembled) and then transmitted. Interleave delay is used when transmission error correction (Reed- Solomon) is necessary due to a less than ideal telephone line. The bigger the delay, the bigger the data block size, allowing better error correction to be performed.
Transmit Power	This is the upstream and downstream far end actual aggregate transmit power (in dBm). Upstream is how much power the port is using to transmit to the service provider. Downstream is how much power the service provider is using to transmit to the port.
Receive Power	Upstream is how much power the service provider is receiving from the port. Downstream is how much power the port is receiving from the service provider.
Actual INP	Sudden spikes in the line's level of external noise (impulse noise) can cause errors and result in lost packets. This could especially impact the quality of multimedia traffic such as voice or video. Impulse noise protection (INP) provides a buffer to allow for correction of errors caused by error correction to deal with this. The number of DMT (Discrete Multi-Tone) symbols shows the level of impulse noise protection for the upstream and downstream traffic. A higher symbol value provides higher error correction capability, but it causes overhead and higher delay which may increase error rates in received multimedia data.
Total Attenuation	This is the upstream and downstream line attenuation, measured in decibels (dB). This attenuation is the difference between the power transmitted at the near-end and the power received at the far-end. Attenuation is affected by the channel characteristics (wire gauge, quality, condition and length of the physical line).
Attainable Net Data Rate	These are the highest theoretically possible transfer rates at which the port could send and receive payload data without transport layer protocol headers and traffic.
xDSL Counters	
Downstream	These are the statistics for the traffic direction coming into the port from the service provider.
Upstream	These are the statistics for the traffic direction going out from the port to the service provider.
FEC	This is the number of Far End Corrected blocks.
CRC	This is the number of Cyclic Redundancy Checks.

Table 125 Status > xDSL Statistics (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
ES	This is the number of Errored Seconds meaning the number of seconds containing at least one errored block or at least one defect.
SES	This is the number of Severely Errored Seconds meaning the number of seconds containing 30% or more errored blocks or at least one defect. This is a subset of ES.
UAS	This is the number of UnAvailable Seconds.
LOS	This is the number of Loss Of Signal seconds.
LOF	This is the number of Loss Of Frame seconds.
LOM	This is the number of Loss of Margin seconds.

3G Statistics

30.1 Overview

Use the 3G Statistics screens to look at 3G Internet connection status.

30.2 The 3G Statistics Screen

To open this screen, click System Monitor > 3G Statistics. The 3G status is available on this screen only when you insert a compatible 3G dongle in a USB port on the VMG.

Figure 154 System Monitor > 3G Statistics

Monitor	
Refresh Interval :	No Refresh ▼
Status :	
3G Status:	No Device
Service Provider:	N/A
Signal Strength:	N/A
Connection Uptime:	N/A
3G Card Manufacturer:	N/A
3G Card Model:	N/A
3G Card F/W Version:	N/A
SIM Card IMSI:	N/A
VID/PID:	N/A

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 126 System Monitor > 3G Statistics

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Refresh Interval	Select how often you want the VMG to update this screen. Select No Refresh to stop refreshing.
3G Status	This field displays the status of the 3G Internet connection. This field can display: GSM - Global System for Mobile Communications, 2G GPRS - General Packet Radio Service, 2.5G EDGE - Enhanced Data rates for GSM Evolution, 2.75G WCDMA - Wideband Code Division Multiple Access, 3G HSDPA - High-Speed Downlink Packet Access, 3.5G HSUPA - High-Speed Uplink Packet Access, 3.75G HSPA - HSDPA+HSUPA, 3.75G
Service Provider	This field displays the name of the service provider.

Table 126 System Monitor > 3G Statistics (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Signal Strength	This field displays the strength of the signal in dBm.
Connection Uptime	This field displays the time the connection has been up.
3G Card Manufacturer	This field displays the manufacturer of the 3G card.
3G Card Model	This field displays the model name of the 3G card.
3G Card F/W Version	This field displays the firmware version of the 3G card.
SIM Card IMSI	The International Mobile Subscriber Identity or IMSI is a unique identification number associated with all cellular networks. This number is provisioned in the SIM card.
VID/PID	This field displays the USB Vendor ID and Product ID of the 3G card.

31.1 Overview

In the System screen, you can name your VMG (Host) and give it an associated domain name for identification purposes.

31.2 The System Screen

Click Maintenance > System to open the following screen.

Figure 155 Maintenance > System

The screenshot shows a form with two input fields. The first field is labeled 'Host Name' and is empty. The second field is labeled 'Domain Name' and contains the text 'home'. To the right of the fields are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Cancel'.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 127 Maintenance > System

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Host Name	Type a hostname for your VMG. Enter a descriptive name of up to 16 alphanumeric characters, not including spaces, underscores, and dashes.
Domain Name	Type a Domain name for your host VMG.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to abandon this screen without saving.

User Account

32.1 Overview

In the User Account screen, you can view the settings of the “admin” and other user accounts that you used to log in the VMG.

32.2 The User Account Screen

Click Maintenance > User Account to open the following screen.

Figure 156 Maintenance > User Account

Add New Account						
#	User Name	Retry Times	Idle Timeout	Lock Period	Group	Modify
1	admin	0	60	15	Administer	
2	user	0	10	15	User	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 128 Maintenance > User Account

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add New Account	Click this button to add a new user account.
#	This is the index number
User Name	This field displays the name of the account used to log into the VMG web configurator.
Retry Times	This field displays the number of times consecutive wrong passwords can be entered for this account. 0 means there is no limit.
Idle Timeout	This field displays the the length of inactive time before the VMG will automatically log the user out of the web configurator.
Lock Period	This field displays the length of time a user must wait before attempting to log in again after a number if consecutive wrong passwords have been entered as defined in Retry Times.
Group	This field displays whether this user has Administrator or User privileges.
Modify	Click the Edit icon to configure the entry. Click the Delete icon to remove the entry.

32.2.1 The User Account Add/Edit Screen

Click Add New Account or the Edit icon of an existing account in the Maintenance > User Account to open the following screen.

Figure 157 Maintenance > User Account > Add/Edit

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 129 Maintenance > User Account > Add/Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
User Name	Enter a new name for the account. This field displays the name of an existing account.
Old Password	Type the default password or the existing password used to access the VMG web configurator.
New Password	Type your new system password (up to 256 characters). Note that as you type a password, the screen displays a (*) for each character you type. After you change the password, use the new password to access the VMG.
Verify Password	Type the new password again for confirmation.
Retry Times	Enter the number of times consecutive wrong passwords can be entered for this account. 0 means there is no limit.
Idle Timeout	Enter the length of inactive time before the VMG will automatically log the user out of the web configurator.
Lock Period	Enter the length of time a user must wait before attempting to log in again after a number if consecutive wrong passwords have been entered as defined in Retry Times.
Group	Specify whether this user will have Administrator or User privileges.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to restore your previously saved settings.

Remote Management

33.1 Overview

Remote management controls through which interface(s), which services can access the VMG.

Note: The VMG is managed using the Web Configurator.

33.2 The MGMT Services Screen

Use this screen to configure through which interface(s), which services can access the VMG. You can also specify the port numbers the services must use to connect to the VMG. Click Maintenance > Remote Management > MGMT Services to open the following screen.

Figure 158 Maintenance > Remote Management > MGMT Services

service	LAN/WLAN	WAN	Port
HTTP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	80
HTTPS	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	443
FTP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	21
TELNET	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	23
SSH	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	22
SNMP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	161

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 130 Maintenance > Remote Management > MGMT Services

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
WAN Interface used for services	Select Any_WAN to have the VMG automatically activate the remote management service when any WAN connection is up. Select Multi_WAN and then select one or more WAN connections to have the VMG activate the remote management service when the selected WAN connections are up.
service	This is the service you may use to access the VMG.
LAN/WLAN	Select the Enable check box for the corresponding services that you want to allow access to the VMG from the LAN/WLAN.
WAN	Select the Enable check box for the corresponding services that you want to allow access to the VMG from all WAN connections.
Port	You may change the server port number for a service if needed, however you must use the same port number in order to use that service for remote management.

Table 130 Maintenance > Remote Management > MGMT Services (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the VMG.
Cancel	Click Cancel to restore your previously saved settings.

33.3 The Trust Domain Screen

Use this screen to view a list of public IP addresses which are allowed to access the VMG through the services configured in the Maintenance > Remote Management screen. Click Maintenance > Remote Management > Trust Domain to open the following screen.

Note: If this list is empty, all public IP addresses can access the VMG from the WAN through the specified services.

Figure 159 Maintenance > Remote Management > Trust Domain



The following table describes the fields in this screen.

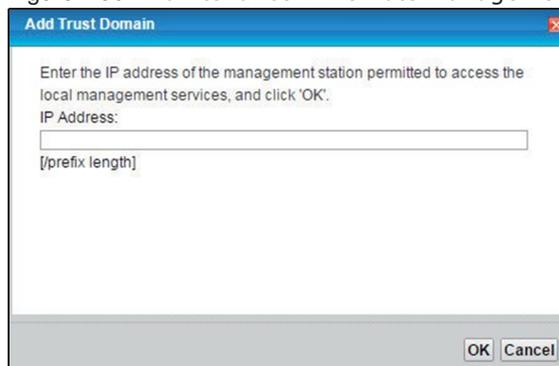
Table 131 Maintenance > Remote Management > Trust Domain

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add Trust Domain	Click this to add a trusted host IP address.
IP Address	This field shows a trusted host IP address.
Delete	Click the Delete icon to remove the trust IP address.

33.4 The Add Trust Domain Screen

Use this screen to configure a public IP address which is allowed to access the VMG. Click the Add Trust Domain button in the Maintenance > Remote Management > Trust Domain screen to open the following screen.

Figure 160 Maintenance > Remote Management > Trust Domain > Add Trust Domain



The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 132 Maintenance > Remote Management > Trust Domain > Add Trust Domain

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IP Address	Enter a public IPv4 IP address which is allowed to access the service on the VMG from the WAN.
OK	Click OK to save your changes back to the VMG.
Cancel	Click Cancel to restore your previously saved settings.

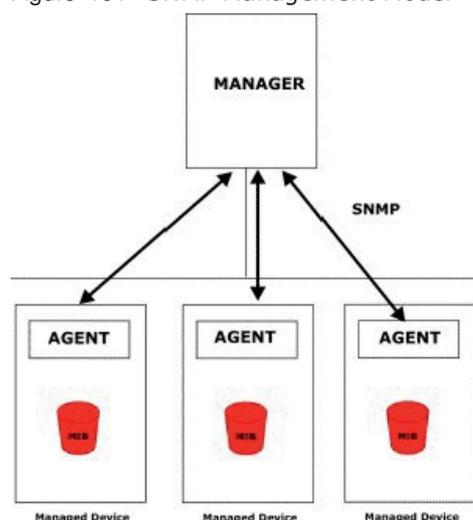
34.1 Overview

This chapter explains how to configure the SNMP settings on the VMG.

34.2 The SNMP Screen

Simple Network Management Protocol is a protocol used for exchanging management information between network devices. Your VMG supports SNMP agent functionality, which allows a manager station to manage and monitor the VMG through the network. The VMG supports SNMP version one (SNMPv1) and version two (SNMPv2c). The next figure illustrates an SNMP management operation.

Figure 161 SNMP Management Model



An SNMP managed network consists of two main types of component: agents and a manager.

An agent is a management software module that resides in a managed device (the VMG). An agent translates the local management information from the managed device into a form compatible with SNMP. The manager is the console through which network administrators perform network management functions. It executes applications that control and monitor managed devices.

The managed devices contain object variables/managed objects that define each piece of information to be collected about a device. Examples of variables include such as number of packets received, node port status etc. A Management Information Base (MIB) is a collection of managed objects. SNMP allows a manager and agents to communicate for the purpose of accessing these objects.

SNMP itself is a simple request/response protocol based on the manager/agent model. The manager issues a request and the agent returns responses using the following protocol operations:

- Get - Allows the manager to retrieve an object variable from the agent.
- GetNext - Allows the manager to retrieve the next object variable from a table or list within an agent. In SNMPv1, when a manager wants to retrieve all elements of a table from an agent, it initiates a Get operation, followed by a series of GetNext operations.
- Set - Allows the manager to set values for object variables within an agent.
- Trap - Used by the agent to inform the manager of some events.

Click Maintenance > SNMP to open the following screen. Use this screen to configure the VMG SNMP settings.

Figure 162 Maintenance > SNMP

SNMP Agent:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable
Get Community:	public
Set Community:	private
Trap Community:	public
System Name:	
System Location:	Taiwan
System Contact:	admin@zyxel.com.tw
Trap Destination:	
<input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 133 Maintenance > SNMP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
SNMP Agent	Select Enable to let the VMG act as an SNMP agent, which allows a manager station to manage and monitor the VMG through the network. Select Disable to turn this feature off.
Get Community	Enter the Get Community, which is the password for the incoming Get and GetNext requests from the management station.
Set Community	Enter the Set community, which is the password for incoming Set requests from the management station.
Trap Community	Enter the Trap Community, which is the password sent with each trap to the SNMP manager. The default is public and allows all requests.
System Name	Enter the SNMP system name.
System Location	Enter the SNMP system location.
System Contact	Enter the SNMP system contact.
Trap Destination	Type the IP address of the station to send your SNMP traps to.
Apply	Click this to save your changes back to the VMG.
Cancel	Click this to restore your previously saved settings.

Time Settings

35.1 Overview

This chapter shows you how to configure system related settings, such as system time, password, name, the domain name and the inactivity timeout interval.

35.2 The Time Screen

To change your VMG's time and date, click Maintenance > Time. The screen appears as shown. Use this screen to configure the VMG's time based on your local time zone.

Figure 163 Maintenance > Time

The screenshot shows the 'Maintenance > Time' configuration screen. It is divided into several sections:

- Current Date/Time:** Shows 'Current Time : 22:53:09' and 'Current Date : 1970-01-02'.
- Time and Date Setup:** Includes 'Time Protocol : SNTP (RFC-1769)'. Below are five 'Time Server Address' fields with dropdown menus: 'pool.ntp.org', 'clock.nyc.he.net', 'clock.sjc.he.net', 'None', and 'None'.
- Time Zone:** A dropdown menu showing '(GMT+01:00) Amsterdam, Berlin, Bern, Rome, Stockholm, Vienna'.
- Daylight Savings:**
 - State:** Radio buttons for 'Enable' (selected) and 'Disable'.
 - Start Rule:**
 - Day:** Radio buttons for '1' (selected) and 'in'.
 - Month:** Dropdown menu showing 'March'.
 - Hour:** Dropdown menu showing '2' and '0'.
 - End Rule:**
 - Day:** Radio buttons for '1' (selected) and 'in'.
 - Month:** Dropdown menu showing 'October'.
 - Time:** Dropdown menu showing '3' and '0'.

At the bottom right, there are 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons.

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 134 Maintenance > Time

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Current Date/Time	
Current Time	This field displays the time of your VMG. Each time you reload this page, the VMG synchronizes the time with the time server.
Current Date	This field displays the date of your VMG. Each time you reload this page, the VMG synchronizes the date with the time server.

Table 134 Maintenance > Time (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Time and Date Setup	
First ~ Fifth Time Server Address	<p>Select an NTP time server from the drop-down list box.</p> <p>Otherwise, select <code>Other</code> and enter the IP address or URL (up to 29 extended ASCII characters in length) of your time server.</p> <p>Select <code>None</code> if you don't want to configure the time server.</p> <p>Check with your ISP/network administrator if you are unsure of this information.</p>
Time Zone	
Time zone	Choose the time zone of your location. This will set the time difference between your time zone and Greenwich Mean Time (GMT).
Daylight Savings	Daylight Saving Time is a period from late spring to early fall when many countries set their clocks ahead of normal local time by one hour to give more daytime light in the evening.
State	Select <code>Enable</code> if you use Daylight Saving Time.
Start Rule	<p>Configure the day and time when Daylight Saving Time starts if you enabled Daylight Saving. You can select a specific date in a particular month or a specific day of a specific week in a particular month. The <code>Time</code> field uses the 24 hour format. Here are a couple of examples:</p> <p>Daylight Saving Time starts in most parts of the United States on the second Sunday of March. Each time zone in the United States starts using Daylight Saving Time at 2 A.M. local time. So in the United States, set the day to <code>Second</code>, <code>Sunday</code>, the month to <code>March</code> and the time to <code>2</code> in the <code>Hour</code> field.</p> <p>Daylight Saving Time starts in the European Union on the last Sunday of March. All of the time zones in the European Union start using Daylight Saving Time at the same moment (1 A.M. GMT or UTC). So in the European Union you would set the day to <code>Last</code>, <code>Sunday</code> and the month to <code>March</code>. The time you select in the o'clock field depends on your time zone. In Germany for instance, you would select <code>2</code> in the <code>Hour</code> field because Germany's time zone is one hour ahead of GMT or UTC (GMT+1).</p>
End Rule	<p>Configure the day and time when Daylight Saving Time ends if you enabled Daylight Saving. You can select a specific date in a particular month or a specific day of a specific week in a particular month. The <code>Time</code> field uses the 24 hour format. Here are a couple of examples:</p> <p>Daylight Saving Time ends in the United States on the first Sunday of November. Each time zone in the United States stops using Daylight Saving Time at 2 A.M. local time. So in the United States you would set the day to <code>First</code>, <code>Sunday</code>, the month to <code>November</code> and the time to <code>2</code> in the <code>Hour</code> field.</p> <p>Daylight Saving Time ends in the European Union on the last Sunday of October. All of the time zones in the European Union stop using Daylight Saving Time at the same moment (1 A.M. GMT or UTC). So in the European Union you would set the day to <code>Last</code>, <code>Sunday</code>, and the month to <code>October</code>. The time you select in the o'clock field depends on your time zone. In Germany for instance, you would select <code>2</code> in the <code>Hour</code> field because Germany's time zone is one hour ahead of GMT or UTC (GMT+1).</p>
Apply	Click <code>Apply</code> to save your changes.
Cancel	Click <code>Cancel</code> to exit this screen without saving.

E-mail Notification

36.1 Overview

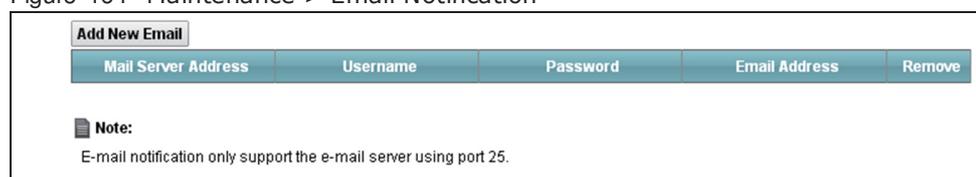
A mail server is an application or a computer that runs such an application to receive, forward and deliver e-mail messages.

To have the VMG send reports, logs or notifications via e-mail, you must specify an e-mail server and the e-mail addresses of the sender and receiver.

36.2 The Email Notification Screen

Click Maintenance > Email Notification to open the Email Notification screen. Use this screen to view, remove and add mail server information on the VMG.

Figure 164 Maintenance > Email Notification



Mail Server Address	Username	Password	Email Address	Remove
<p>Note: E-mail notification only support the e-mail server using port 25.</p>				

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 135 Maintenance > Email Notification

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add New Email	Click this button to create a new entry.
Mail Server Address	This field displays the server name or the IP address of the mail server.
Username	This field displays the user name of the sender's mail account.
Password	This field displays the password of the sender's mail account.
Email Address	This field displays the e-mail address that you want to be in the from/sender line of the e-mail that the VMG sends.
Delete	Click this button to delete the selected entry(ies).

36.2.1 Email Notification Edit

Click the Add button in the Email Notification screen. Use this screen to configure the required information for sending e-mail via a mail server.

Figure 165 Email Notification > Add

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Email Notification" with a close button in the top right corner. The main content area is titled "Email Notification Configuration" and contains the following fields:

- Mail Server Address:** A text input field with the sub-label "(SMTP Server NAME or IP)" below it.
- Authentication Username:** A text input field.
- Authentication Password:** A text input field.
- Account Email Address:** A text input field.

At the bottom right of the dialog, there are two buttons: "OK" and "Cancel".

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 136 Email Notification > Add

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Mail Server Address	Enter the server name or the IP address of the mail server for the e-mail address specified in the Account Email Address field. If this field is left blank, reports, logs or notifications will not be sent via e-mail.
Authentication Username	Enter the user name (up to 32 characters). This is usually the user name of a mail account you specified in the Account Email Address field.
Authentication Password	Enter the password associated with the user name above.
Account Email Address	Enter the e-mail address that you want to be in the from/sender line of the e-mail notification that the VMG sends. If you activate SSL/TLS authentication, the e-mail address must be able to be authenticated by the mail server as well.
OK	Click this button to save your changes and return to the previous screen.
Cancel	Click this button to begin configuring this screen afresh.

Log Setting

37.1 Overview

You can configure where the VMG sends logs and which logs and/or immediate alerts the VMG records in the Logs Setting screen.

37.2 The Log Settings Screen

To change your VMG's log settings, click Maintenance > Logs Setting. The screen appears as shown.

Figure 166 Maintenance > Logs Setting

Syslog Setting
 Syslog Logging : Enable Disable (settings are invalid when disabled)
 Mode :
 Syslog Server : (Server NAME or IPv4/IPv6 Address)
 UDP Port : (Server Port)

E-mail Log Settings
 E-mail Log Settings : Enable Disable (settings are invalid when disabled)
 Mail Account :
 System Log Mail Subject :
 Security Log Mail Subject :
 Send Log to : (E-Mail Address)
 Send Alarm to : (E-Mail Address)
 Alarm Interval : Second

Active Log

System Log

- WAN-DHCP
- DHCP Server
- PPPoE
- TR-069
- HTTP
- UPNP
- System
- xDSL
- ACL
- Wireless
- Voice

Security Log

- Account
- Attack
- Firewall
- MAC Filter

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 137 Maintenance > Logs Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Syslog Setting	
Syslog Logging	The VMG sends a log to an external syslog server. Select Enable to enable syslog logging.

Table 137 Maintenance > Logs Setting (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Mode	Select the syslog destination from the drop-down list box. If you select Remote, the log(s) will be sent to a remote syslog server. If you select Local File, the log(s) will be saved in a local file. If you want to send the log(s) to a remote syslog server and save it in a local file, select Local File and Remote.
Syslog Server	Enter the server name or IP address of the syslog server that will log the selected categories of logs.
UDP Port	Enter the port number used by the syslog server.
E-mail Log Settings	
E-mail Log Settings	Select Enable to have the VMG send logs and alarm messages to the configured e-mail addresses.
Mail Account	Select a mail account from which you want to send logs. You can configure mail accounts in the Maintenance > Email Notification screen.
System Log Mail Subject	Type a title that you want to be in the subject line of the system log e-mail message that the VMG sends.
Security Log Mail Subject	Type a title that you want to be in the subject line of the security log e-mail message that the VMG sends.
Send Log to	The VMG sends logs to the e-mail address specified in this field. If this field is left blank, the VMG does not send logs via E-mail.
Send Alarm to	Alerts are real-time notifications that are sent as soon as an event, such as a DoS attack, system error, or forbidden web access attempt occurs. Enter the E-mail address where the alert messages will be sent. Alerts include system errors, attacks and attempted access to blocked web sites. If this field is left blank, alert messages will not be sent via E-mail.
Alarm Interval	Specify how often the alarm should be updated.
Active Log	
System Log	Select the categories of system logs that you want to record.
Security Log	Select the categories of security logs that you want to record.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to restore your previously saved settings.

37.2.1 Example E-mail Log

An "End of Log" message displays for each mail in which a complete log has been sent. The following is an example of a log sent by e-mail.

- You may edit the subject title.
- The date format here is Day-Month-Year.
- The date format here is Month-Day-Year. The time format is Hour-Minute-Second.
- "End of Log" message shows that a complete log has been sent.

Figure 167 E-mail Log Example

```

Subject: Firewall Alert From
Date: Fri, 07 Apr 2000 10:05:42
From: user@zyxel.com
To: user@zyxel.com
1|Apr 7 00 |From:192.168.1.1 To:192.168.1.255 ldefault policy lforward
| 09:54:03 |UDP src port:00520 dest port:00520 |<1,00> |
2|Apr 7 00 |From:192.168.1.131 To:192.168.1.255 ldefault policy lforward
| 09:54:17 |UDP src port:00520 dest port:00520 |<1,00> |
3|Apr 7 00 |From:192.168.1.6 To:10.10.10.10 lmatch lforward
| 09:54:19 |UDP src port:03516 dest port:00053 |<1,01> |
.....{snip}.....
.....{snip}.....
126|Apr 7 00 |From:192.168.1.1 To:192.168.1.255 lmatch lforward
| 10:05:00 |UDP src port:00520 dest port:00520 |<1,02> |
127|Apr 7 00 |From:192.168.1.131 To:192.168.1.255 lmatch lforward
| 10:05:17 |UDP src port:00520 dest port:00520 |<1,02> |
128|Apr 7 00 |From:192.168.1.1 To:192.168.1.255 lmatch lforward
| 10:05:30 |UDP src port:00520 dest port:00520 |<1,02> |

End of Firewall Log

```

Firmware Upgrade

38.1 Overview

This chapter explains how to upload new firmware to your VMG. You can download new firmware releases from your nearest ZyXEL FTP site (or www.zyxel.com) to use to upgrade your device's performance.

Only use firmware for your device's specific model. Refer to the label on the bottom of your VMG.

38.2 The Firmware Screen

Click Maintenance > Firmware Upgrade to open the following screen. The upload process uses HTTP (Hypertext Transfer Protocol) and may take up to two minutes. After a successful upload, the system will reboot.

Do NOT turn off the VMG while firmware upload is in progress!

Figure 168 Maintenance > Firmware Upgrade

The screenshot shows a web interface for firmware upgrade. It is divided into two main sections:

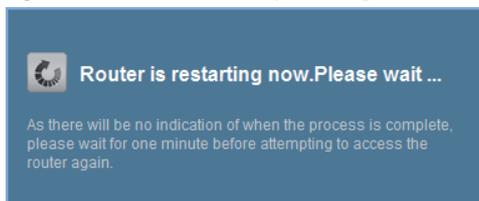
- Upgrade Firmware:**
 - Current Firmware Version: V5.11(AAVF.0)b3
 - File Path: [Choose File] No file chosen
 - [Upload]
- Upgrade 3G Package:**
 - Current 3G Package Version: 1.11
 - File Path: [Choose File] No file chosen
 - [Upload]

The following table describes the labels in this screen. After you see the firmware updating screen, wait two minutes before logging into the VMG again.

Table 138 Maintenance > Firmware Upgrade

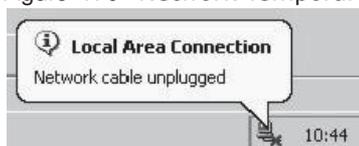
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Upgrade Firmware	
Current Firmware Version	This is the present Firmware version and the date created.
File Path	Type in the location of the file you want to upload in this field or click Choose File to find it.
Choose File	Click this to find the .bin file you want to upload. Remember that you must decompress compressed (.zip) files before you can upload them.
Upload	Click this to begin the upload process. This process may take up to two minutes.
Upgrade 3G Package	
Current 3G Package Version	This is the present 3G Package version and the date created.
File Path	Type in the location of the file you want to upload in this field or click Choose File to find it.
Choose File	Click this to find the .bin file you want to upload. Remember that you must decompress compressed (.zip) files before you can upload them.
Upload	Click this to begin the upload process. This process may take up to two minutes.

Figure 169 Firmware Uploading



The VMG automatically restarts in this time causing a temporary network disconnect. In some operating systems, you may see the following icon on your desktop.

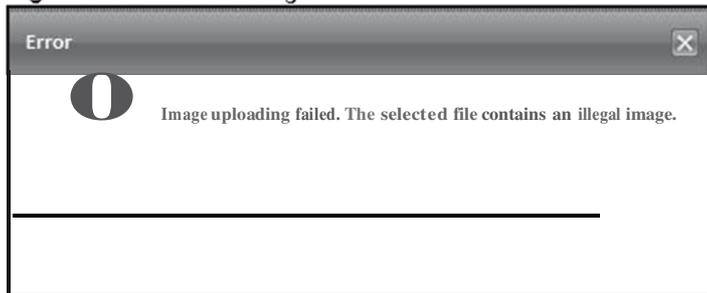
Figure 170 Network Temporarily Disconnected



After two minutes, log in again and check your new firmware version in the Status screen.

If the upload was not successful, the following screen will appear. Click OK to go back to the Firmware Upgrade screen.

Figure 171 Error Message



Backup Restore

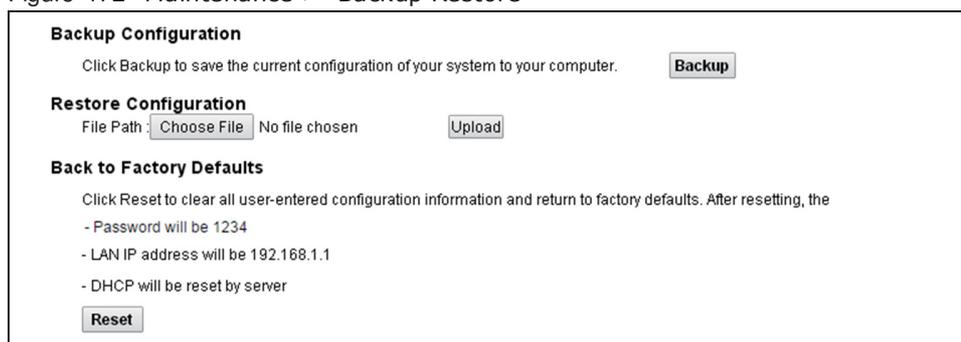
39.1 Overview

The Backup Restore screen allows you to backup and restore device configurations. You can also reset your device settings back to the factory default.

39.2 The Backup Restore Screen

Click Maintenance > Backup Restore. Information related to factory defaults, backup configuration, and restoring configuration appears in this screen, as shown next.

Figure 172 Maintenance > Backup Restore



The screenshot displays the Backup Restore interface with three main sections:

- Backup Configuration:** Includes the instruction "Click Backup to save the current configuration of your system to your computer." and a **Backup** button.
- Restore Configuration:** Features a "File Path" field with a **Choose File** button, the text "No file chosen", and an **Upload** button.
- Back to Factory Defaults:** Contains the instruction "Click Reset to clear all user-entered configuration information and return to factory defaults. After resetting, the" followed by a list of defaults:
 - Password will be 1234
 - LAN IP address will be 192.168.1.1
 - DHCP will be reset by serverand a **Reset** button.

Backup Configuration

Backup Configuration allows you to back up (save) the VMG's current configuration to a file on your computer. Once your VMG is configured and functioning properly, it is highly recommended that you back up your configuration file before making configuration changes. The backup configuration file will be useful in case you need to return to your previous settings.

Click Backup to save the VMG's current configuration to your computer.

Restore Configuration

Restore Configuration allows you to upload a new or previously saved configuration file from your computer to your VMG.

Table 139 Restore Configuration

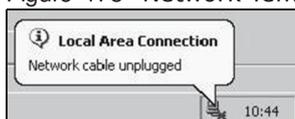
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
File Path	Type in the location of the file you want to upload in this field or click Choose File to find it.
Choose File	Click this to find the file you want to upload. Remember that you must decompress compressed (.ZIP) files before you can upload them.
Upload	Click this to begin the upload process.

Do not turn off the VMG while configuration file upload is in progress.

After the VMG configuration has been restored successfully, the login screen appears. Login again to restart the VMG.

The VMG automatically restarts in this time causing a temporary network disconnect. In some operating systems, you may see the following icon on your desktop.

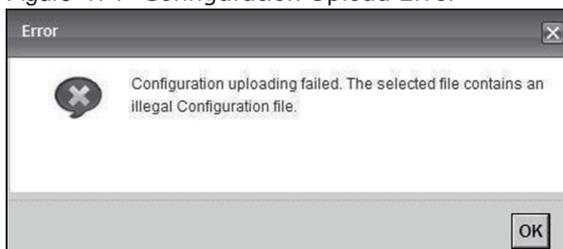
Figure 173 Network Temporarily Disconnected



If you uploaded the default configuration file you may need to change the IP address of your computer to be in the same subnet as that of the default device IP address (192.168.1.1).

If the upload was not successful, the following screen will appear. Click OK to go back to the Configuration screen.

Figure 174 Configuration Upload Error



Reset to Factory Defaults

Click the Reset button to clear all user-entered configuration information and return the VMG to its factory defaults. The following warning screen appears.

Figure 175 Reset Warning Message

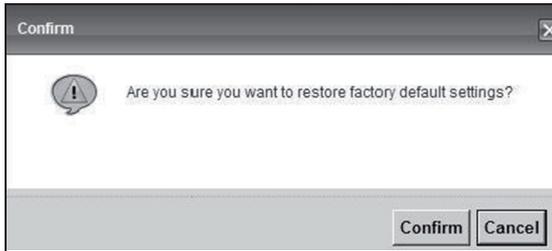
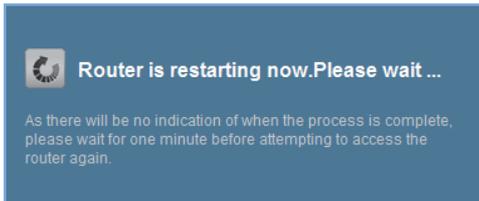


Figure 176 Reset In Process Message



You can also press the RESET button on the rear panel to reset the factory defaults of your VMG. Refer to [Section 1.6 on page 21](#) for more information on the RESET button.

39.3 The Reboot Screen

System restart allows you to reboot the VMG remotely without turning the power off. You may need to do this if the VMG hangs, for example.

Click Maintenance > Reboot. Click Reboot to have the VMG reboot. This does not affect the VMG's configuration.

Figure 177 Maintenance > Reboot



40.1 Overview

The Diagnostic screens display information to help you identify problems with the VMG.

The route between a CO VDSL switch and one of its CPE may go through switches owned by independent organizations. A connectivity fault point generally takes time to discover and impacts subscriber's network access. In order to eliminate the management and maintenance efforts, IEEE 802.1ag is a Connectivity Fault Management (CFM) specification which allows network administrators to identify and manage connection faults. Through discovery and verification of the path, CFM can detect, analyze and isolate connectivity faults in bridged LANs.

40.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- The Ping & TraceRoute & NsLookup screen lets you ping an IP address or trace the route packets take to a host ([Section 40.3 on page 289](#)).
- The 802.1ag screen lets you perform CFM actions ([Section 40.5 on page 290](#)).
- The OAM Ping screen lets you send an ATM OAM (Operation, Administration and Maintenance) packet to verify the connectivity of a specific PVC. ([Section 40.5 on page 290](#)).

40.2 What You Need to Know

The following terms and concepts may help as you read through this chapter.

How CFM Works

A Maintenance Association (MA) defines a VLAN and associated Maintenance End Point (MEP) ports on the device under a Maintenance Domain (MD) level. An MEP port has the ability to send Connectivity Check Messages (CCMs) and get other MEP ports information from neighbor devices' CCMs within an MA.

CFM provides two tests to discover connectivity faults.

- Loopback test - checks if the MEP port receives its Loop Back Response (LBR) from its target after it sends the Loop Back Message (LBM). If no response is received, there might be a connectivity fault between them.
- Link trace test - provides additional connectivity fault analysis to get more information on where the fault is. If an MEP port does not respond to the source MEP, this may indicate a fault. Administrators can take further action to check and resume services from the fault according to the line connectivity status report.

40.3 Ping & TraceRoute & Nslookup

Use this screen to ping, traceroute, or nslookup an IP address. Click Maintenance > Diagnostic > Ping&TraceRoute&Nslookup to open the screen shown next.

Figure 178 Maintenance > Diagnostic > Ping &TraceRoute&Nslookup

The screenshot shows a web interface for network diagnostics. At the top, it says 'Ping/TraceRoute Test' and '-Info-'. Below is a large empty box for results. At the bottom, there's a 'TCP/IP' section with an 'Address' input field and three buttons: 'Ping', 'Trace Route', and 'Nslookup'.

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 140 Maintenance > Diagnostic > Ping & TraceRoute & Nslookup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
URL or IP Address	Type the IP address of a computer that you want to perform ping, traceroute, or nslookup in order to test a connection.
Ping	Click this to ping the IP address that you entered.
TraceRoute	Click this button to perform the traceroute function. This determines the path a packet takes to the specified computer.
Nslookup	Click this button to perform a DNS lookup on the IP address of a computer you enter.

40.4 802.1ag

Click Maintenance > Diagnostic > 8.2.1ag to open the following screen. Use this screen to perform CFM actions.

Figure 179 Maintenance > Diagnostic > 802.1ag

802.1ag Connectivity Fault Management

Maintenance Domain (MD) Level:

Destination MAC Address:

802.1Q VLAN ID: [0-4095]

VDSL Traffic Type: Inactive

Test the connection to another Maintenance End Point (MEP)

Loopback Message (LBM):

Test the connection to another Maintenance End Point (MEP)

Linktrace Message (LTM):

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 141 Maintenance > Diagnostic > 802.1ag

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
802.1ag Connectivity Fault Management	
Maintenance Domain (MD) Level	Select a level (0-7) under which you want to create an MA.
Destination MAC Address	Enter the target device's MAC address to which the VMG performs a CFM loopback test.
802.1Q VLAN ID	Type a VLAN ID (0-4095) for this MA.
VDSL Traffic Type	This shows whether the VDSL traffic is activated.
Loopback Message (LBM)	This shows how many Loop Back Messages (LBMs) are sent and if there is any in order or out of order Loop Back Response (LBR) received from a remote MEP.
Linktrace Message (LTM)	This shows the destination MAC address in the Link Trace Response (LTR).
Set MD Level	Click this button to configure the MD (Maintenance Domain) level.
Send Loopback	Click this button to have the selected MEP send the LBM (Loop Back Message) to a specified remote end point.
Send Linktrace	Click this button to have the selected MEP send the LTMs (Link Trace Messages) to a specified remote end point.

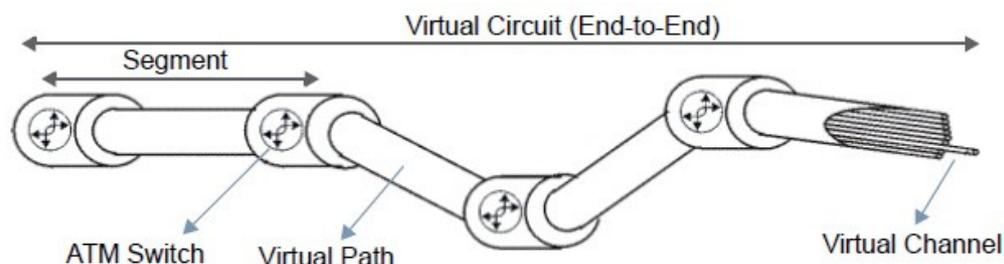
40.5 OAM Ping

Click Maintenance > Diagnostic > OAM Ping to open the screen shown next. Use this screen to perform an OAM (Operation, Administration and Maintenance) F4 or F5 loopback test on a PVC. The VMG sends an OAM F4 or F5 packet to the DSLAM or ATM switch and then returns it to the VMG. The test result then displays in the text box.

ATM sets up virtual circuits over which end systems communicate. The terminology for virtual circuits is as follows:

- Virtual Channel (VC) Logical connections between ATM devices
- Virtual Path (VP) A bundle of virtual channels
- Virtual Circuits A series of virtual paths between circuit end points

Figure 180 Virtual Circuit Topology



Think of a virtual path as a cable that contains a bundle of wires. The cable connects two points and wires within the cable provide individual circuits between the two points. In an ATM cell header, a VPI (Virtual Path Identifier) identifies a link formed by a virtual path; a VCI (Virtual Channel Identifier) identifies a channel within a virtual path. A series of virtual paths make up a virtual circuit.

F4 cells operate at the virtual path (VP) level, while F5 cells operate at the virtual channel (VC) level. F4 cells use the same VPI as the user data cells on VP connections, but use different predefined VCI values. F5 cells use the same VPI and VCI as the user data cells on the VC connections, and are distinguished from data cells by a predefined Payload Type Identifier (PTI) in the cell header. Both F4 flows and F5 flows are bidirectional and have two types.

- segment F4 flows (VCI=3)
- end-to-end F4 flows (VCI=4)
- segment F5 flows (PTI=100)
- end-to-end F5 flows (PTI=101)

OAM F4 or F5 tests are used to check virtual path or virtual channel availability between two DSL devices. Segment flows are terminated at the connecting point which terminates a VP or VC segment. End-to-end flows are terminated at the end point of a VP or VC connection, where an ATM link is terminated. Segment loopback tests allow you to verify integrity of a PVC to the nearest neighboring ATM device. End-to-end loopback tests allow you to verify integrity of an end-to-end PVC.

Note: The DSLAM to which the VMG is connected must also support ATM F4 and/or F5 to use this test.

Note: This screen is available only when you configure an ATM layer-2 interface.

Figure 181 Maintenance > Diagnostic > OAM Ping



The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 142 Maintenance > Diagnostic > OAM Ping

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
	Select a PVC on which you want to perform the loopback test.
F4 segment	Press this to perform an OAM F4 segment loopback test.
F4 end-end	Press this to perform an OAM F4 end-to-end loopback test.
F5 segment	Press this to perform an OAM F5 segment loopback test.
F5 end-end	Press this to perform an OAM F5 end-to-end loopback test.

Troubleshooting

This chapter offers some suggestions to solve problems you might encounter. The potential problems are divided into the following categories.

- [Power, Hardware Connections, and LEDs](#)
- [VMG Access and Login](#)
- [Internet Access](#)
- [Wireless Internet Access](#)
- [USB Device Connection](#)
- [UPnP](#)

41.1 Power, Hardware Connections, and LEDs

The VMG does not turn on. None of the LEDs turn on.

- 1 Make sure the VMG is turned on.
- 2 Make sure you are using the power adaptor or cord included with the VMG.
- 3 Make sure the power adaptor or cord is connected to the VMG and plugged in to an appropriate power source. Make sure the power source is turned on.
- 4 Turn the VMG off and on.
- 5 If the problem continues, contact the vendor.

One of the LEDs does not behave as expected.

- 1 Make sure you understand the normal behavior of the LED. See [Section 1.5 on page 19](#).
- 2 Check the hardware connections.
- 3 Inspect your cables for damage. Contact the vendor to replace any damaged cables.
- 4 Turn the VMG off and on.

- 5 If the problem continues, contact the vendor.

41.2 VMG Access and Login

I forgot the IP address for the VMG.

- 1 The default LAN IP address is 192.168.1.1.
- 2 If you changed the IP address and have forgotten it, you might get the IP address of the VMG by looking up the IP address of the default gateway for your computer. To do this in most Windows computers, click Start > Run, enter cmd, and then enter ipconfig. The IP address of the Default Gateway might be the IP address of the VMG (it depends on the network), so enter this IP address in your Internet browser.
- 3 If this does not work, you have to reset the device to its factory defaults. See [Section 1.6 on page 21](#).

I forgot the password.

- 1 See the cover page for the default login names and associated passwords.
- 2 If those do not work, you have to reset the device to its factory defaults. See [Section 1.6 on page 21](#).

I cannot see or access the Login screen in the web configurator.

- 1 Make sure you are using the correct IP address.
 - The default IP address is [192.168.1.1](#).
 - If you changed the IP address ([Section 8.2 on page 122](#)), use the new IP address.
 - If you changed the IP address and have forgotten it, see the troubleshooting suggestions for [I forgot the IP address for the VMG](#).
- 2 Check the hardware connections, and make sure the LEDs are behaving as expected. See [Section 1.5 on page 19](#).
- 3 Make sure your Internet browser does not block pop-up windows and has JavaScripts and Java enabled.
- 4 If it is possible to log in from another interface, check the service control settings for HTTP and HTTPS (Maintenance > Remote MGMT).

- 5 Reset the device to its factory defaults, and try to access the VMG with the default IP address. See [Section 1.6 on page 21](#).
- 6 If the problem continues, contact the network administrator or vendor, or try one of the advanced suggestions.

Advanced Suggestions

- Make sure you have logged out of any earlier management sessions using the same user account even if they were through a different interface or using a different browser.
- Try to access the VMG using another service, such as Telnet. If you can access the VMG, check the remote management settings and firewall rules to find out why the VMG does not respond to HTTP.

I can see the Login screen, but I cannot log in to the VMG.

- 1 Make sure you have entered the password correctly. See the cover page for the default login names and associated passwords. The field is case-sensitive, so make sure [Caps Lock] is not on.
- 2 You cannot log in to the web configurator while someone is using Telnet to access the VMG. Log out of the VMG in the other session, or ask the person who is logged in to log out.
- 3 Turn the VMG off and on.
- 4 If this does not work, you have to reset the device to its factory defaults. See [Section 41.1 on page 293](#).

I cannot Telnet to the VMG.

See the troubleshooting suggestions for [I cannot see or access the Login screen in the web configurator](#). Ignore the suggestions about your browser.

I cannot use FTP to upload / download the configuration file. / I cannot use FTP to upload new firmware.

See the troubleshooting suggestions for [I cannot see or access the Login screen in the web configurator](#). Ignore the suggestions about your browser.

41.3 Internet Access

I cannot access the Internet.

- 1 Check the hardware connections, and make sure the LEDs are behaving as expected. See the Quick Start Guide and [Section 1.5 on page 19](#).
- 2 Make sure you entered your ISP account information correctly in the Network Setting > Broadband screen. These fields are case-sensitive, so make sure [Caps Lock] is not on.
- 3 If you are trying to access the Internet wirelessly, make sure that you enabled the wireless LAN in the VMG and your wireless client and that the wireless settings in the wireless client are the same as the settings in the VMG.
- 4 Disconnect all the cables from your device and reconnect them.
- 5 If the problem continues, contact your ISP.

I cannot access the Internet through a DSL connection.

- 1 Make sure you have the DSL WAN port connected to a telephone jack (or the DSL or modem jack on a splitter if you have one).
- 2 Make sure you configured a proper DSL WAN interface (Network Setting > Broadband screen) with the Internet account information provided by your ISP and that it is enabled.
- 3 Check that the LAN interface you are connected to is in the same interface group as the DSL connection (Network Setting > Interface Group).
- 4 If you set up a WAN connection using bridging service, make sure you turn off the DHCP feature in the LAN screen to have the clients get WAN IP addresses directly from your ISP's DHCP server.

I cannot connect to the Internet using a second DSL connection.

ADSL and VDSL connections cannot work at the same time. You can only use one type of DSL connection, either ADSL or VDSL connection at one time.

I cannot connect to the Internet using an Ethernet connection.

- 1 The DSL connection has priority. If the DSL connection is up, then the Ethernet connection will be down.

- 2 Make sure you have the Ethernet WAN port connected to a MODEM or Router.
- 3 Make sure you converted LAN port number four as WAN. Click **Enable** in **Network Setting > Broadband > Ethernet WAN** screen.
- 4 Make sure you configured a proper EthernetWAN interface (**Network Setting > Broadband** screen) with the Internet account information provided by your ISP and that it is enabled.
- 5 Check that the WAN interface you are connected to is in the same interface group as the Ethernet connection (**Network Setting > Interface Group**).
- 6 If you set up a WAN connection using bridging service, make sure you turn off the DHCP feature in the **LAN** screen to have the clients get WAN IP addresses directly from your ISP's DHCP server.

I cannot connect to the Internet using a 3G connection.

- 1 The DSL and Ethernet connections have priority in that order. If the DSL or Ethernet connection is up, then the 3G connection will be down.
- 2 Make sure you have connected a compatible 3G dongle to the USB port.
- 3 Make sure you have configured **Network Setting > Broadband > 3G Backup** correctly.

Check that the VMG is within range of a 3G base station. [I cannot access the VMG anymore. I had access to the VMG, but my connection is not available anymore.](#)

- 1 Your session with the VMG may have expired. Try logging into the VMG again.
- 2 Check the hardware connections, and make sure the LEDs are behaving as expected. See the **Quick Start Guide** and [Section 1.5 on page 19](#).
- 3 Turn the VMG off and on.
- 4 If the problem continues, contact your vendor.

41.4 Wireless Internet Access

[What factors may cause intermittent or unstabled wireless connection? How can I solve this problem?](#)

The following factors may cause interference:

- Obstacles: walls, ceilings, furniture, and so on.

- Building Materials: metal doors, aluminum studs.
- Electrical devices: microwaves, monitors, electric motors, cordless phones, and other wireless devices.

To optimize the speed and quality of your wireless connection, you can:

- Move your wireless device closer to the AP if the signal strength is low.
- Reduce wireless interference that may be caused by other wireless networks or surrounding wireless electronics such as cordless phones.
- Place the AP where there are minimum obstacles (such as walls and ceilings) between the AP and the wireless client.
- Reduce the number of wireless clients connecting to the same AP simultaneously, or add additional APs if necessary.
- Try closing some programs that use the Internet, especially peer-to-peer applications. If the wireless client is sending or receiving a lot of information, it may have too many programs open that use the Internet.

What is a Server Set ID (SSID)?

An SSID is a name that uniquely identifies a wireless network. The AP and all the clients within a wireless network must use the same SSID.

41.5 USB Device Connection

The VMG fails to detect my USB device.

- 1 Disconnect the USB device.
- 2 Reboot the VMG.
- 3 If you are connecting a USB hard drive that comes with an external power supply, make sure it is connected to an appropriate power source that is on.
- 4 Re-connect your USB device to the VMG.

41.6 UPnP

When using UPnP and the VMG reboots, my computer cannot detect UPnP and refresh My Network Places > Local Network.

- 1 Disconnect the Ethernet cable from the VMG's LAN port or from your computer.
- 2 Re-connect the Ethernet cable.

The Local Area Connection icon for UPnP disappears in the screen.

Restart your computer.

PART III

Appendices

Appendices contain general information. Some information may not apply to your device.

Customer Support

In the event of problems that cannot be solved by using this manual, you should contact your vendor. If you cannot contact your vendor, then contact a ZyXEL office for the region in which you bought the device.

See <http://www.zyxel.com/homepage.shtml> and also

http://www.zyxel.com/about_zyxel/zyxel_worldwide.shtml for the latest information.

Please have the following information ready when you contact an office.

Required Information

- Product model and serial number.
- Warranty Information.
- Date that you received your device.
- Brief description of the problem and the steps you took to solve it.

Corporate Headquarters (Worldwide) Taiwan

- ZyXEL Communications Corporation
- <http://www.zyxel.com>

Asia

China

- ZyXEL Communications (Shanghai) Corp.
- ZyXEL Communications (Beijing) Corp.
- ZyXEL Communications (Tianjin) Corp.
- <http://www.zyxel.cn>

India

- ZyXEL Technology India Pvt Ltd
- <http://www.zyxel.in>

Kazakhstan

- ZyXEL Kazakhstan

- <http://www.zyxel.kz>

Korea

- ZyXEL Korea Corp.
- <http://www.zyxel.kr>

Malaysia

- ZyXEL Malaysia Sdn Bhd.
- <http://www.zyxel.com.my>

Pakistan

- ZyXEL Pakistan (Pvt.) Ltd.
- <http://www.zyxel.com.pk>

Philippines

- ZyXEL Philippines
- <http://www.zyxel.com.ph>

Singapore

- ZyXEL Singapore Pte Ltd.
- <http://www.zyxel.com.sg>

Taiwan

- ZyXEL Communications Corporation
- <http://www.zyxel.com/tw/zh/>

Thailand

- ZyXEL Thailand Co., Ltd
- <http://www.zyxel.co.th>

Vietnam

- ZyXEL Communications Corporation-Vietnam Office
- <http://www.zyxel.com/vn/vi>

Europe

Austria

- ZyXEL Deutschland GmbH
- <http://www.zyxel.de>

Belarus

- ZyXEL BY
- <http://www.zyxel.by>

Belgium

- ZyXEL Communications B.V.
- <http://www.zyxel.com/be/nl/>
- <http://www.zyxel.com/be/fr/>

Bulgaria

- ZyXEL България
- <http://www.zyxel.com/bg/bg/>

Czech Republic

- ZyXEL Communications Czech s.r.o
- <http://www.zyxel.cz>

Denmark

- ZyXEL Communications A/S
- <http://www.zyxel.dk>

Estonia

- ZyXEL Estonia
- <http://www.zyxel.com/ee/et/>

Finland

- ZyXEL Communications
- <http://www.zyxel.fi>

France

- ZyXEL France
- <http://www.zyxel.fr>

Germany

- ZyXEL Deutschland GmbH
- <http://www.zyxel.de>

Hungary

- ZyXEL Hungary & SEE
- <http://www.zyxel.hu>

Italy

- ZyXEL Communications Italy
- <http://www.zyxel.it/>

Latvia

- ZyXEL Latvia
- <http://www.zyxel.com/lv/lv/homepage.shtml>

Lithuania

- ZyXEL Lithuania
- <http://www.zyxel.com/lt/lt/homepage.shtml>

Netherlands

- ZyXEL Benelux
- <http://www.zyxel.nl>

Norway

- ZyXEL Communications
- <http://www.zyxel.no>

Poland

- ZyXEL Communications Poland
- <http://www.zyxel.pl>

Romania

- ZyXEL Romania
- <http://www.zyxel.com/ro/ro>

Russia

- ZyXEL Russia
- <http://www.zyxel.ru>

Slovakia

- ZyXEL Communications Czech s.r.o. organizacna zlozka
- <http://www.zyxel.sk>

Spain

- ZyXEL Communications ES Ltd
- <http://www.zyxel.es>

Sweden

- ZyXEL Communications

- <http://www.zyxel.se>

Switzerland

- Studerus AG
- <http://www.zyxel.ch/>

Turkey

- ZyXEL Turkey A.S.
- <http://www.zyxel.com.tr>

UK

- ZyXEL Communications UK Ltd.
- <http://www.zyxel.co.uk>

Ukraine

- ZyXEL Ukraine
- <http://www.ua.zyxel.com>

Latin America

Argentina

- ZyXEL Communication Corporation
- <http://www.zyxel.com/ec/es/>

Brazil

- ZyXEL Communications Brasil Ltda.
- <https://www.zyxel.com/br/pt/>

Ecuador

- ZyXEL Communication Corporation
- <http://www.zyxel.com/ec/es/>

Middle East

Israel

- ZyXEL Communication Corporation
- <http://il.zyxel.com/homepage.shtml>

Middle East

- ZyXEL Communication Corporation

- <http://www.zyxel.com/me/en/>

North America

USA

- ZyXEL Communications, Inc. - North America Headquarters
- <http://www.zyxel.com/us/en/>

Oceania

Australia

- ZyXEL Communications Corporation
- <http://www.zyxel.com/au/en/>

Africa

South Africa

- Nology (Pty) Ltd.
- <http://www.zyxel.co.za>

Wireless LANs

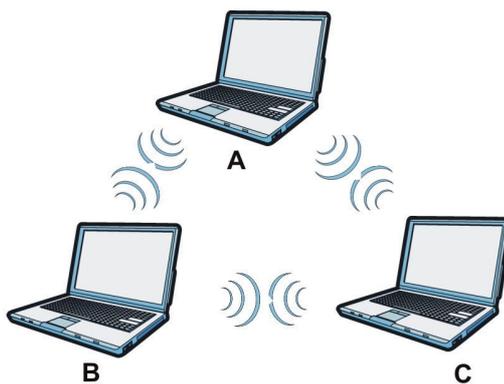
Wireless LAN Topologies

This section discusses ad-hoc and infrastructure wireless LAN topologies.

Ad-hoc Wireless LAN Configuration

The simplest WLAN configuration is an independent (Ad-hoc) WLAN that connects a set of computers with wireless adapters (A, B, C). Any time two or more wireless adapters are within range of each other, they can set up an independent network, which is commonly referred to as an ad-hoc network or Independent Basic Service Set (IBSS). The following diagram shows an example of notebook computers using wireless adapters to form an ad-hoc wireless LAN.

Figure 182 Peer-to-Peer Communication in an Ad-hoc Network

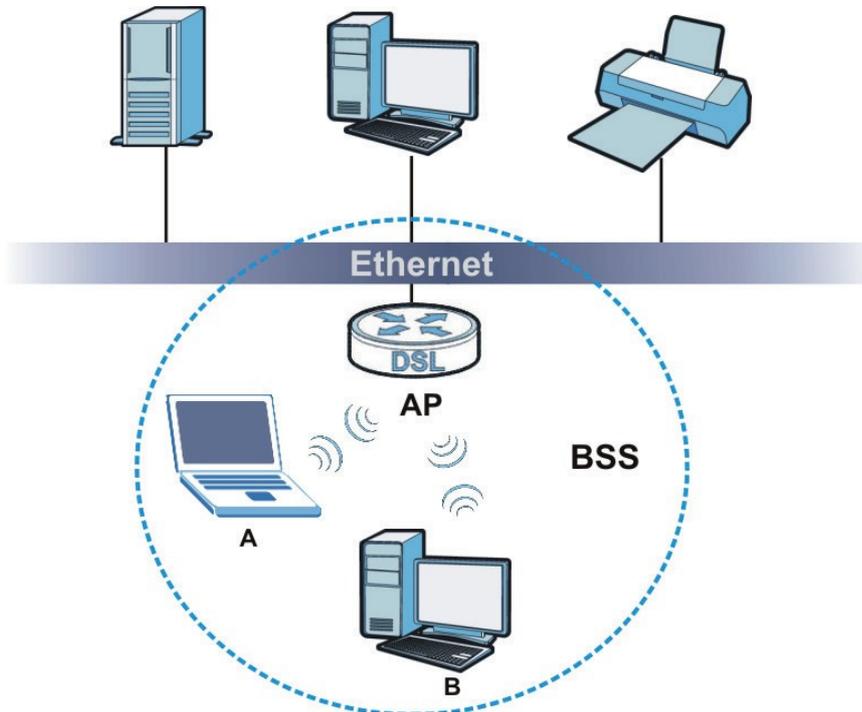


BSS

A Basic Service Set (BSS) exists when all communications between wireless clients or between a wireless client and a wired network client go through one access point (AP).

Intra-BSS traffic is traffic between wireless clients in the BSS. When Intra-BSS is enabled, wireless client A and B can access the wired network and communicate with each other. When Intra-BSS is disabled, wireless client A and B can still access the wired network but cannot communicate with each other.

Figure 183 Basic Service Set



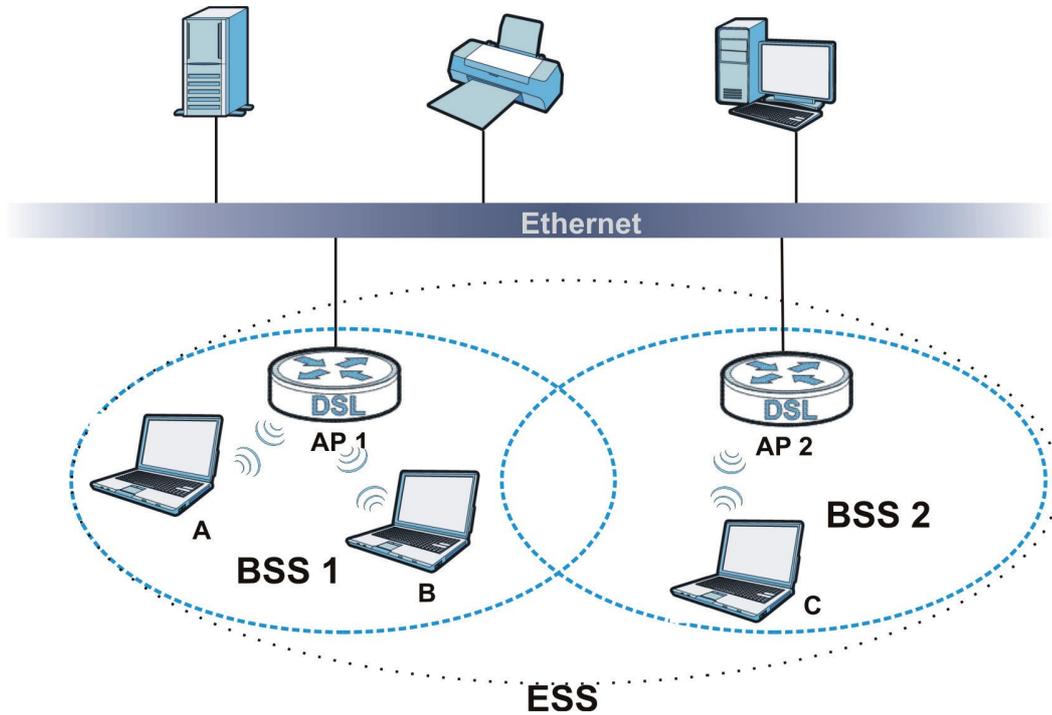
ESS

An Extended Service Set (ESS) consists of a series of overlapping BSSs, each containing an access point, with each access point connected together by a wired network. This wired connection between APs is called a Distribution System (DS).

This type of wireless LAN topology is called an Infrastructure WLAN. The Access Points not only provide communication with the wired network but also mediate wireless network traffic in the immediate neighborhood.

An ESSID (ESS IDentification) uniquely identifies each ESS. All access points and their associated wireless clients within the same ESS must have the same ESSID in order to communicate.

Figure 184 Infrastructure WLAN



Channel

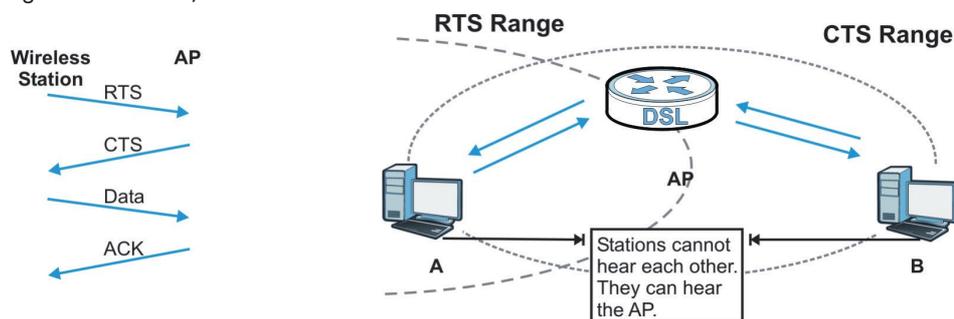
A channel is the radio frequency(ies) used by wireless devices to transmit and receive data. Channels available depend on your geographical area. You may have a choice of channels (for your region) so you should use a channel different from an adjacent AP (access point) to reduce interference. Interference occurs when radio signals from different access points overlap causing interference and degrading performance.

Adjacent channels partially overlap however. To avoid interference due to overlap, your AP should be on a channel at least five channels away from a channel that an adjacent AP is using. For example, if your region has 11 channels and an adjacent AP is using channel 1, then you need to select a channel between 6 or 11.

RTS/CTS

A hidden node occurs when two stations are within range of the same access point, but are not within range of each other. The following figure illustrates a hidden node. Both stations (STA) are within range of the access point (AP) or wireless gateway, but out-of-range of each other, so they cannot "hear" each other, that is they do not know if the channel is currently being used. Therefore, they are considered hidden from each other.

Figure 185 RTS/CTS



When station A sends data to the AP, it might not know that the station B is already using the channel. If these two stations send data at the same time, collisions may occur when both sets of data arrive at the AP at the same time, resulting in a loss of messages for both stations.

RTS/CTS is designed to prevent collisions due to hidden nodes. An RTS/CTS defines the biggest size data frame you can send before an RTS (Request To Send)/CTS (Clear to Send) handshake is invoked.

When a data frame exceeds the RTS/CTS value you set (between 0 to 2432 bytes), the station that wants to transmit this frame must first send an RTS (Request To Send) message to the AP for permission to send it. The AP then responds with a CTS (Clear to Send) message to all other stations within its range to notify them to defer their transmission. It also reserves and confirms with the requesting station the time frame for the requested transmission.

Stations can send frames smaller than the specified RTS/CTS directly to the AP without the RTS (Request To Send)/CTS (Clear to Send) handshake.

You should only configure RTS/CTS if the possibility of hidden nodes exists on your network and the "cost" of resending large frames is more than the extra network overhead involved in the RTS (Request To Send)/CTS (Clear to Send) handshake.

If the RTS/CTS value is greater than the Fragmentation Threshold value (see next), then the RTS (Request To Send)/CTS (Clear to Send) handshake will never occur as data frames will be fragmented before they reach RTS/CTS size.

Note: Enabling the RTS Threshold causes redundant network overhead that could negatively affect the throughput performance instead of providing a remedy.

Fragmentation Threshold

A Fragmentation Threshold is the maximum data fragment size (between 256 and 2432 bytes) that can be sent in the wireless network before the AP will fragment the packet into smaller data frames.

A large Fragmentation Threshold is recommended for networks not prone to interference while you should set a smaller threshold for busy networks or networks that are prone to interference.

If the Fragmentation Threshold value is smaller than the RTS/CTS value (see previously) you set then the RTS (Request To Send)/CTS (Clear to Send) handshake will never occur as data frames will be fragmented before they reach RTS/CTS size.

IEEE 802.11g Wireless LAN

IEEE 802.11g is fully compatible with the IEEE 802.11b standard. This means an IEEE 802.11b adapter can interface directly with an IEEE 802.11g access point (and vice versa) at 11 Mbps or lower depending on range. IEEE 802.11g has several intermediate rate steps between the maximum and minimum data rates. The IEEE 802.11g data rate and modulation are as follows:

Table 143 IEEE 802.11g

DATA RATE (MBPS)	MODULATION
1	DBPSK (Differential Binary Phase Shift Keyed)
2	DQPSK (Differential Quadrature Phase Shift Keying)
5.5 / 11	CCK (Complementary Code Keying)
6/9/12/18/24/36/48/54	OFDM (Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplexing)

Wireless Security Overview

Wireless security is vital to your network to protect wireless communication between wireless clients, access points and the wired network.

Wireless security methods available on the VMG are data encryption, wireless client authentication, restricting access by device MAC address and hiding the VMG identity.

The following figure shows the relative effectiveness of these wireless security methods available on your VMG.

Table 144 Wireless Security Levels

SECURITY LEVEL	SECURITY TYPE
Least Secure	Unique SSID (Default)
	Unique SSID with Hide SSID Enabled
	MAC Address Filtering
	WEP Encryption
	IEEE802.1x EAP with RADIUS Server Authentication
	Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA)
Most Secure	WPA2

Note: You must enable the same wireless security settings on the VMG and on all wireless clients that you want to associate with it.

IEEE 802.1x

In June 2001, the IEEE 802.1x standard was designed to extend the features of IEEE 802.11 to support extended authentication as well as providing additional accounting and control features. It is supported by Windows XP and a number of network devices. Some advantages of IEEE 802.1x are:

- User based identification that allows for roaming.

- Support for RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial In User Service, RFC 2138, 2139) for centralized user profile and accounting management on a network RADIUS server.
- Support for EAP (Extensible Authentication Protocol, RFC 2486) that allows additional authentication methods to be deployed with no changes to the access point or the wireless clients.

RADIUS

RADIUS is based on a client-server model that supports authentication, authorization and accounting. The access point is the client and the server is the RADIUS server. The RADIUS server handles the following tasks:

- Authentication
Determines the identity of the users.
- Authorization
Determines the network services available to authenticated users once they are connected to the network.
- Accounting
Keeps track of the client's network activity.

RADIUS is a simple package exchange in which your AP acts as a message relay between the wireless client and the network RADIUS server.

Types of RADIUS Messages

The following types of RADIUS messages are exchanged between the access point and the RADIUS server for user authentication:

- Access-Request
Sent by an access point requesting authentication.
- Access-Reject
Sent by a RADIUS server rejecting access.
- Access-Accept
Sent by a RADIUS server allowing access.
- Access-Challenge
Sent by a RADIUS server requesting more information in order to allow access. The access point sends a proper response from the user and then sends another Access-Request message.

The following types of RADIUS messages are exchanged between the access point and the RADIUS server for user accounting:

- Accounting-Request
Sent by the access point requesting accounting.
- Accounting-Response
Sent by the RADIUS server to indicate that it has started or stopped accounting.

In order to ensure network security, the access point and the RADIUS server use a shared secret key, which is a password, they both know. The key is not sent over the network. In addition to the

shared key, password information exchanged is also encrypted to protect the network from unauthorized access.

Types of EAP Authentication

This section discusses some popular authentication types: EAP-MD5, EAP-TLS, EAP-TTLS, PEAP and LEAP. Your wireless LAN device may not support all authentication types.

EAP (Extensible Authentication Protocol) is an authentication protocol that runs on top of the IEEE 802.1x transport mechanism in order to support multiple types of user authentication. By using EAP to interact with an EAP-compatible RADIUS server, an access point helps a wireless station and a RADIUS server perform authentication.

The type of authentication you use depends on the RADIUS server and an intermediary AP(s) that supports IEEE 802.1x.

For EAP-TLS authentication type, you must first have a wired connection to the network and obtain the certificate(s) from a certificate authority (CA). A certificate (also called digital IDs) can be used to authenticate users and a CA issues certificates and guarantees the identity of each certificate owner.

EAP-MD5 (Message-Digest Algorithm 5)

MD5 authentication is the simplest one-way authentication method. The authentication server sends a challenge to the wireless client. The wireless client 'proves' that it knows the password by encrypting the password with the challenge and sends back the information. Password is not sent in plain text.

However, MD5 authentication has some weaknesses. Since the authentication server needs to get the plaintext passwords, the passwords must be stored. Thus someone other than the authentication server may access the password file. In addition, it is possible to impersonate an authentication server as MD5 authentication method does not perform mutual authentication. Finally, MD5 authentication method does not support data encryption with dynamic session key. You must configure WEP encryption keys for data encryption.

EAP-TLS (Transport Layer Security)

With EAP-TLS, digital certifications are needed by both the server and the wireless clients for mutual authentication. The server presents a certificate to the client. After validating the identity of the server, the client sends a different certificate to the server. The exchange of certificates is done in the open before a secured tunnel is created. This makes user identity vulnerable to passive attacks. A digital certificate is an electronic ID card that authenticates the sender's identity. However, to implement EAP-TLS, you need a Certificate Authority (CA) to handle certificates, which imposes a management overhead.

EAP-TTLS (Tunneled Transport Layer Service)

EAP-TTLS is an extension of the EAP-TLS authentication that uses certificates for only the server-side authentications to establish a secure connection. Client authentication is then done by sending username and password through the secure connection, thus client identity is protected. For client authentication, EAP-TTLS supports EAP methods and legacy authentication methods such as PAP, CHAP, MS-CHAP and MS-CHAP v2.

PEAP (Protected EAP)

Like EAP-TTLS, server-side certificate authentication is used to establish a secure connection, then use simple username and password methods through the secured connection to authenticate the clients, thus hiding client identity. However, PEAP only supports EAP methods, such as EAP-MD5, EAP-MSCHAPv2 and EAP-GTC (EAP-Generic Token Card), for client authentication. EAP-GTC is implemented only by Cisco.

LEAP

LEAP (Lightweight Extensible Authentication Protocol) is a Cisco implementation of IEEE 802.1x.

Dynamic WEP Key Exchange

The AP maps a unique key that is generated with the RADIUS server. This key expires when the wireless connection times out, disconnects or reauthentication times out. A new WEP key is generated each time reauthentication is performed.

If this feature is enabled, it is not necessary to configure a default encryption key in the wireless security configuration screen. You may still configure and store keys, but they will not be used while dynamic WEP is enabled.

Note: EAP-MD5 cannot be used with Dynamic WEP Key Exchange

For added security, certificate-based authentications (EAP-TLS, EAP-TTLS and PEAP) use dynamic keys for data encryption. They are often deployed in corporate environments, but for public deployment, a simple user name and password pair is more practical. The following table is a comparison of the features of authentication types.

Table 145 Comparison of EAP Authentication Types

	EAP-MD5	EAP-TLS	EAP-TTLS	PEAP	LEAP
Mutual Authentication	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Certificate – Client	No	Yes	Optional	Optional	No
Certificate – Server	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
Dynamic Key Exchange	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Credential Integrity	None	Strong	Strong	Strong	Moderate
Deployment Difficulty	Easy	Hard	Moderate	Moderate	Moderate
Client Identity Protection	No	No	Yes	Yes	No

WPA and WPA2

Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA) is a subset of the IEEE 802.11i standard. WPA2 (IEEE 802.11i) is a wireless security standard that defines stronger encryption, authentication and key management than WPA.

Key differences between WPA or WPA2 and WEP are improved data encryption and user authentication.

If both an AP and the wireless clients support WPA2 and you have an external RADIUS server, use WPA2 for stronger data encryption. If you don't have an external RADIUS server, you should use

WPA2-PSK (WPA2-Pre-Shared Key) that only requires a single (identical) password entered into each access point, wireless gateway and wireless client. As long as the passwords match, a wireless client will be granted access to a WLAN.

If the AP or the wireless clients do not support WPA2, just use WPA or WPA-PSK depending on whether you have an external RADIUS server or not.

Select WEP only when the AP and/or wireless clients do not support WPA or WPA2. WEP is less secure than WPA or WPA2.

Encryption

WPA improves data encryption by using Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP), Message Integrity Check (MIC) and IEEE 802.1x. WPA2 also uses TKIP when required for compatibility reasons, but offers stronger encryption than TKIP with Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) in the Counter mode with Cipher block chaining Message authentication code Protocol (CCMP).

TKIP uses 128-bit keys that are dynamically generated and distributed by the authentication server. AES (Advanced Encryption Standard) is a block cipher that uses a 256-bit mathematical algorithm called Rijndael. They both include a per-packet key mixing function, a Message Integrity Check (MIC) named Michael, an extended initialization vector (IV) with sequencing rules, and a re-keying mechanism.

WPA and WPA2 regularly change and rotate the encryption keys so that the same encryption key is never used twice. .

The RADIUS server distributes a Pairwise Master Key (PMK) key to the AP that then sets up a key hierarchy and management system, using the PMK to dynamically generate unique data encryption keys to encrypt every data packet that is wirelessly communicated between the AP and the wireless clients. This all happens in the background automatically.

The Message Integrity Check (MIC) is designed to prevent an attacker from capturing data packets, altering them and resending them. The MIC provides a strong mathematical function in which the receiver and the transmitter each compute and then compare the MIC. If they do not match, it is assumed that the data has been tampered with and the packet is dropped.

By generating unique data encryption keys for every data packet and by creating an integrity checking mechanism (MIC), with TKIP and AES it is more difficult to decrypt data on a Wi-Fi network than WEP and difficult for an intruder to break into the network.

The encryption mechanisms used for WPA(2) and WPA(2)-PSK are the same. The only difference between the two is that WPA(2)-PSK uses a simple common password, instead of user-specific credentials. The common-password approach makes WPA(2)-PSK susceptible to brute-force password-guessing attacks but it's still an improvement over WEP as it employs a consistent, single, alphanumeric password to derive a PMK which is used to generate unique temporal encryption keys. This prevent all wireless devices sharing the same encryption keys. (a weakness of WEP)

User Authentication

WPA and WPA2 apply IEEE 802.1x and Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) to authenticate wireless clients using an external RADIUS database. WPA2 reduces the number of key exchange messages from six to four (CCMP 4-way handshake) and shortens the time required to connect to a network. Other WPA2 authentication features that are different from WPA include key caching and

pre-authentication. These two features are optional and may not be supported in all wireless devices.

Key caching allows a wireless client to store the PMK it derived through a successful authentication with an AP. The wireless client uses the PMK when it tries to connect to the same AP and does not need to go with the authentication process again.

Pre-authentication enables fast roaming by allowing the wireless client (already connecting to an AP) to perform IEEE 802.1x authentication with another AP before connecting to it.

Wireless Client WPA Supplicants

A wireless client supplicant is the software that runs on an operating system instructing the wireless client how to use WPA. At the time of writing, the most widely available supplicant is the WPA patch for Windows XP, Funk Software's Odyssey client.

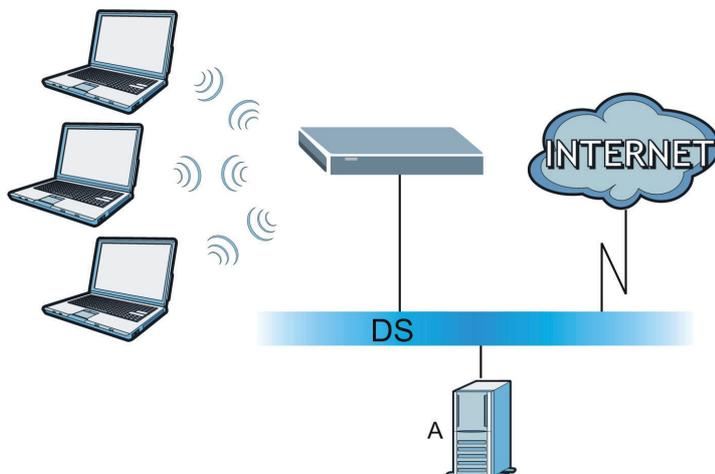
The Windows XP patch is a free download that adds WPA capability to Windows XP's built-in "Zero Configuration" wireless client. However, you must run Windows XP to use it.

WPA(2) with RADIUS Application Example

To set up WPA(2), you need the IP address of the RADIUS server, its port number (default is 1812), and the RADIUS shared secret. A WPA(2) application example with an external RADIUS server looks as follows. "A" is the RADIUS server. "DS" is the distribution system.

- 1 The AP passes the wireless client's authentication request to the RADIUS server.
- 2 The RADIUS server then checks the user's identification against its database and grants or denies network access accordingly.
- 3 A 256-bit Pairwise Master Key (PMK) is derived from the authentication process by the RADIUS server and the client.
- 4 The RADIUS server distributes the PMK to the AP. The AP then sets up a key hierarchy and management system, using the PMK to dynamically generate unique data encryption keys. The keys are used to encrypt every data packet that is wirelessly communicated between the AP and the wireless clients.

Figure 186 WPA(2) with RADIUS Application Example

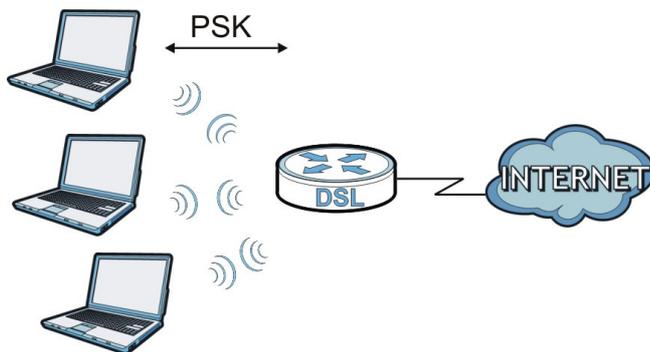


WPA(2)-PSK Application Example

A WPA(2)-PSK application looks as follows.

- 1 First enter identical passwords into the AP and all wireless clients. The Pre-Shared Key (PSK) must consist of between 8 and 63 ASCII characters or 64 hexadecimal characters (including spaces and symbols).
- 2 The AP checks each wireless client's password and allows it to join the network only if the password matches.
- 3 The AP and wireless clients generate a common PMK (Pairwise Master Key). The key itself is not sent over the network, but is derived from the PSK and the SSID.
- 4 The AP and wireless clients use the TKIP or AES encryption process, the PMK and information exchanged in a handshake to create temporal encryption keys. They use these keys to encrypt data exchanged between them.

Figure 187 WPA(2)-PSK Authentication



Security Parameters Summary

Refer to this table to see what other security parameters you should configure for each authentication method or key management protocol type. MAC address filters are not dependent on how you configure these security features.

Table 146 Wireless Security Relational Matrix

AUTHENTICATION METHOD/ KEY MANAGEMENT PROTOCOL	ENCRYPTIO N METHOD	ENTER MANUAL KEY	IEEE 802.1X
Open	None	No	Disable
			Enable without Dynamic WEP Key
Open	WEP	No	Enable with Dynamic WEP Key
		Yes	Enable without Dynamic WEP Key
		Yes	Disable
Shared	WEP	No	Enable with Dynamic WEP Key
		Yes	Enable without Dynamic WEP Key
		Yes	Disable
WPA	TKIP/AES	No	Enable
WPA-PSK	TKIP/AES	Yes	Disable
WPA2	TKIP/AES	No	Enable
WPA2-PSK	TKIP/AES	Yes	Disable

Antenna Overview

An antenna couples RF signals onto air. A transmitter within a wireless device sends an RF signal to the antenna, which propagates the signal through the air. The antenna also operates in reverse by capturing RF signals from the air.

Positioning the antennas properly increases the range and coverage area of a wireless LAN.

Antenna Characteristics

Frequency

An antenna in the frequency of 2.4GHz (IEEE 802.11b and IEEE 802.11g) or 5GHz (IEEE 802.11a) is needed to communicate efficiently in a wireless LAN

Radiation Pattern

A radiation pattern is a diagram that allows you to visualize the shape of the antenna’s coverage area.

Antenna Gain

Antenna gain, measured in dB (decibel), is the increase in coverage within the RF beam width. Higher antenna gain improves the range of the signal for better communications.

For an indoor site, each 1 dB increase in antenna gain results in a range increase of approximately

2.5%. For an unobstructed outdoor site, each 1dB increase in gain results in a range increase of approximately 5%. Actual results may vary depending on the network environment.

Antenna gain is sometimes specified in dBi, which is how much the antenna increases the signal power compared to using an isotropic antenna. An isotropic antenna is a theoretical perfect antenna that sends out radio signals equally well in all directions. dBi represents the true gain that the antenna provides.

Types of Antennas for WLAN

There are two types of antennas used for wireless LAN applications.

- Omni-directional antennas send the RF signal out in all directions on a horizontal plane. The coverage area is torus-shaped (like a donut) which makes these antennas ideal for a room environment. With a wide coverage area, it is possible to make circular overlapping coverage areas with multiple access points.
- Directional antennas concentrate the RF signal in a beam, like a flashlight does with the light from its bulb. The angle of the beam determines the width of the coverage pattern. Angles typically range from 20 degrees (very directional) to 120 degrees (less directional). Directional antennas are ideal for hallways and outdoor point-to-point applications.

Positioning Antennas

In general, antennas should be mounted as high as practically possible and free of obstructions. In point-to-point application, position both antennas at the same height and in a direct line of sight to each other to attain the best performance.

For omni-directional antennas mounted on a table, desk, and so on, point the antenna up. For omni-directional antennas mounted on a wall or ceiling, point the antenna down. For a single AP application, place omni-directional antennas as close to the center of the coverage area as possible.

For directional antennas, point the antenna in the direction of the desired coverage area.

Overview

IPv6 (Internet Protocol version 6), is designed to enhance IP address size and features. The increase in IPv6 address size to 128 bits (from the 32-bit IPv4 address) allows up to 3.4×10^{38} IP addresses.

IPv6 Addressing

The 128-bit IPv6 address is written as eight 16-bit hexadecimal blocks separated by colons (:). This is an example IPv6 address 2001:0db8:1a2b:0015:0000:0000:1a2f:0000.

IPv6 addresses can be abbreviated in two ways:

- Leading zeros in a block can be omitted. So 2001:0db8:1a2b:0015:0000:0000:1a2f:0000 can be written as 2001:db8:1a2b:15:0:0:1a2f:0.
- Any number of consecutive blocks of zeros can be replaced by a double colon. A double colon can only appear once in an IPv6 address. So 2001:0db8:0000:0000:1a2f:0000:0000:0015 can be written as 2001:0db8::1a2f:0000:0000:0015, 2001:0db8:0000:0000:1a2f::0015, 2001:db8::1a2f:0:0:15 or 2001:db8:0:0:1a2f::15.

Prefix and Prefix Length

Similar to an IPv4 subnet mask, IPv6 uses an address prefix to represent the network address. An IPv6 prefix length specifies how many most significant bits (start from the left) in the address compose the network address. The prefix length is written as "/x" where x is a number. For example,

2001:db8:1a2b:15::1a2f:0/32

means that the first 32 bits (2001:db8) is the subnet prefix.

Link-local Address

A link-local address uniquely identifies a device on the local network (the LAN). It is similar to a "private IP address" in IPv4. You can have the same link-local address on multiple interfaces on a device. A link-local unicast address has a predefined prefix of fe80::/10. The link-local unicast address format is as follows.

Table 147 Link-local Unicast Address Format

1111 1110 10	0	Interface ID
10 bits	54 bits	64 bits

Global Address

A global address uniquely identifies a device on the Internet. It is similar to a “public IP address” in IPv4. A global unicast address starts with a 2 or 3.

Unspecified Address

An unspecified address (0:0:0:0:0:0:0:0 or ::) is used as the source address when a device does not have its own address. It is similar to “0.0.0.0” in IPv4.

Loopback Address

A loopback address (0:0:0:0:0:0:0:1 or ::1) allows a host to send packets to itself. It is similar to “127.0.0.1” in IPv4.

Multicast Address

In IPv6, multicast addresses provide the same functionality as IPv4 broadcast addresses. Broadcasting is not supported in IPv6. A multicast address allows a host to send packets to all hosts in a multicast group.

Multicast scope allows you to determine the size of the multicast group. A multicast address has a predefined prefix of ff00::/8. The following table describes some of the predefined multicast addresses.

Table 148 Predefined Multicast Address

MULTICAST ADDRESS	DESCRIPTION
FF01:0:0:0:0:0:0:1	All hosts on a local node.
FF01:0:0:0:0:0:0:2	All routers on a local node.
FF02:0:0:0:0:0:0:1	All hosts on a local connected link.
FF02:0:0:0:0:0:0:2	All routers on a local connected link.
FF05:0:0:0:0:0:0:2	All routers on a local site.
FF05:0:0:0:0:0:1:3	All DHCP servers on a local site.

The following table describes the multicast addresses which are reserved and can not be assigned to a multicast group.

Table 149 Reserved Multicast Address

MULTICAST ADDRESS
FF00:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF01:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF02:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF03:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF04:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF05:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF06:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF07:0:0:0:0:0:0:0

Table 149 Reserved Multicast Address (continued)

MULTICAST ADDRESS
FF08:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF09:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF0A:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF0B:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF0C:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF0D:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF0E:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
FF0F:0:0:0:0:0:0:0

Subnet Masking

Both an IPv6 address and IPv6 subnet mask compose of 128-bit binary digits, which are divided into eight 16-bit blocks and written in hexadecimal notation. Hexadecimal uses four bits for each character (1 ~ 10, A ~ F). Each block's 16 bits are then represented by four hexadecimal characters. For example, FFFF:FFFF:FFFF:FFFF:FC00:0000:0000:0000.

Interface ID

In IPv6, an interface ID is a 64-bit identifier. It identifies a physical interface (for example, an Ethernet port) or a virtual interface (for example, the management IP address for a VLAN). One interface should have a unique interface ID.

EUI-64

The EUI-64 (Extended Unique Identifier) defined by the IEEE (Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers) is an interface ID format designed to adapt with IPv6. It is derived from the 48-bit (6-byte) Ethernet MAC address as shown next. EUI-64 inserts the hex digits ffe between the third and fourth bytes of the MAC address and complements the seventh bit of the first byte of the MAC address. See the following example.

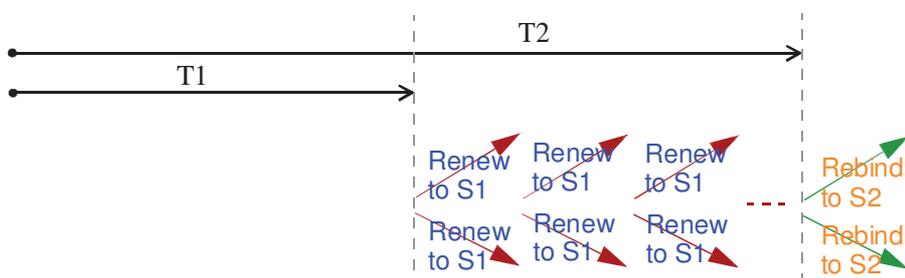
MAC	00 : 13 : 49 : 12 : 34 : 56
EUI-64	02 : 13 : 49 : FF : FE : 12 : 34 : 56

Identity Association

An Identity Association (IA) is a collection of addresses assigned to a DHCP client, through which the server and client can manage a set of related IP addresses. Each IA must be associated with exactly one interface. The DHCP client uses the IA assigned to an interface to obtain configuration from a DHCP server for that interface. Each IA consists of a unique IAID and associated IP information.

The IA type is the type of address in the IA. Each IA holds one type of address. IA_NA means an identity association for non-temporary addresses and IA_TA is an identity association for temporary addresses. An IA_NA option contains the T1 and T2 fields, but an IA_TA option does not. The DHCPv6 server uses T1 and T2 to control the time at which the client contacts with the server to extend the lifetimes on any addresses in the IA_NA before the lifetimes expire. After T1, the client sends the server (S1) (from which the addresses in the IA_NA were obtained) a Renew message. If

the time T2 is reached and the server does not respond, the client sends a Rebind message to any available server (S2). For an IA_TA, the client may send a Renew or Rebind message at the client's discretion.



DHCP Relay Agent

A DHCP relay agent is on the same network as the DHCP clients and helps forward messages between the DHCP server and clients. When a client cannot use its link-local address and a well-known multicast address to locate a DHCP server on its network, it then needs a DHCP relay agent to send a message to a DHCP server that is not attached to the same network.

The DHCP relay agent can add the remote identification (remote-ID) option and the interface-ID option to the Relay-Forward DHCPv6 messages. The remote-ID option carries a user-defined string, such as the system name. The interface-ID option provides slot number, port information and the VLAN ID to the DHCPv6 server. The remote-ID option (if any) is stripped from the Relay-Reply messages before the relay agent sends the packets to the clients. The DHCP server copies the interface-ID option from the Relay-Forward message into the Relay-Reply message and sends it to the relay agent. The interface-ID should not change even after the relay agent restarts.

Prefix Delegation

Prefix delegation enables an IPv6 router to use the IPv6 prefix (network address) received from the ISP (or a connected uplink router) for its LAN. The VMG uses the received IPv6 prefix (for example, 2001:db2::/48) to generate its LAN IP address. Through sending Router Advertisements (RAs) regularly by multicast, the VMG passes the IPv6 prefix information to its LAN hosts. The hosts then can use the prefix to generate their IPv6 addresses.

ICMPv6

Internet Control Message Protocol for IPv6 (ICMPv6 or ICMP for IPv6) is defined in RFC 4443. ICMPv6 has a preceding Next Header value of 58, which is different from the value used to identify ICMP for IPv4. ICMPv6 is an integral part of IPv6. IPv6 nodes use ICMPv6 to report errors encountered in packet processing and perform other diagnostic functions, such as "ping".

Neighbor Discovery Protocol (NDP)

The Neighbor Discovery Protocol (NDP) is a protocol used to discover other IPv6 devices and track neighbor's reachability in a network. An IPv6 device uses the following ICMPv6 messages types:

- Neighbor solicitation: A request from a host to determine a neighbor's link-layer address (MAC address) and detect if the neighbor is still reachable. A neighbor being "reachable" means it responds to a neighbor solicitation message (from the host) with a neighbor advertisement message.

- Neighbor advertisement: A response from a node to announce its link-layer address.
- Router solicitation: A request from a host to locate a router that can act as the default router and forward packets.
- Router advertisement: A response to a router solicitation or a periodical multicast advertisement from a router to advertise its presence and other parameters.

IPv6 Cache

An IPv6 host is required to have a neighbor cache, destination cache, prefix list and default router list. The VMG maintains and updates its IPv6 caches constantly using the information from response messages. In IPv6, the VMG configures a link-local address automatically, and then sends a neighbor solicitation message to check if the address is unique. If there is an address to be resolved or verified, the VMG also sends out a neighbor solicitation message. When the VMG receives a neighbor advertisement in response, it stores the neighbor's link-layer address in the neighbor cache. When the VMG uses a router solicitation message to query for a router and receives a router advertisement message, it adds the router's information to the neighbor cache, prefix list and destination cache. The VMG creates an entry in the default router list cache if the router can be used as a default router.

When the VMG needs to send a packet, it first consults the destination cache to determine the next hop. If there is no matching entry in the destination cache, the VMG uses the prefix list to determine whether the destination address is on-link and can be reached directly without passing through a router. If the address is unlink, the address is considered as the next hop. Otherwise, the VMG determines the next-hop from the default router list or routing table. Once the next hop IP address is known, the VMG looks into the neighbor cache to get the link-layer address and sends the packet when the neighbor is reachable. If the VMG cannot find an entry in the neighbor cache or the state for the neighbor is not reachable, it starts the address resolution process. This helps reduce the number of IPv6 solicitation and advertisement messages.

Multicast Listener Discovery

The Multicast Listener Discovery (MLD) protocol (defined in RFC 2710) is derived from IPv4's Internet Group Management Protocol version 2 (IGMPv2). MLD uses ICMPv6 message types, rather than IGMP message types. MLDv1 is equivalent to IGMPv2 and MLDv2 is equivalent to IGMPv3.

MLD allows an IPv6 switch or router to discover the presence of MLD listeners who wish to receive multicast packets and the IP addresses of multicast groups the hosts want to join on its network.

MLD snooping and MLD proxy are analogous to IGMP snooping and IGMP proxy in IPv4.

MLD filtering controls which multicast groups a port can join.

MLD Messages

A multicast router or switch periodically sends general queries to MLD hosts to update the multicast forwarding table. When an MLD host wants to join a multicast group, it sends an MLD Report message for that address.

An MLD Done message is equivalent to an IGMP Leave message. When an MLD host wants to leave a multicast group, it can send a Done message to the router or switch. The router or switch then sends a group-specific query to the port on which the Done message is received to determine if other devices connected to this port should remain in the group.

Example - Enabling IPv6 on Windows XP/2003/Vista

By default, Windows XP and Windows 2003 support IPv6. This example shows you how to use the `ipv6 install` command on Windows XP/2003 to enable IPv6. This also displays how to use the `ipconfig` command to see auto-generated IP addresses.

```
C:\>ipv6 install
Installing...
Succeeded.

C:\>ipconfig

WindowsIP Configuration

Ethernet adapter Local Area Connection:

    Connection-specific DNS Suffix  . :
    IP Address. . . . .                : 10.1.1.46
    Subnet Mask . . . . .              : 255.255.255.0
    IP Address. . . . .                : fe80::2d0:59ff:feb8:103c%4
    Default Gateway . . . . .          : 10.1.1.254
```

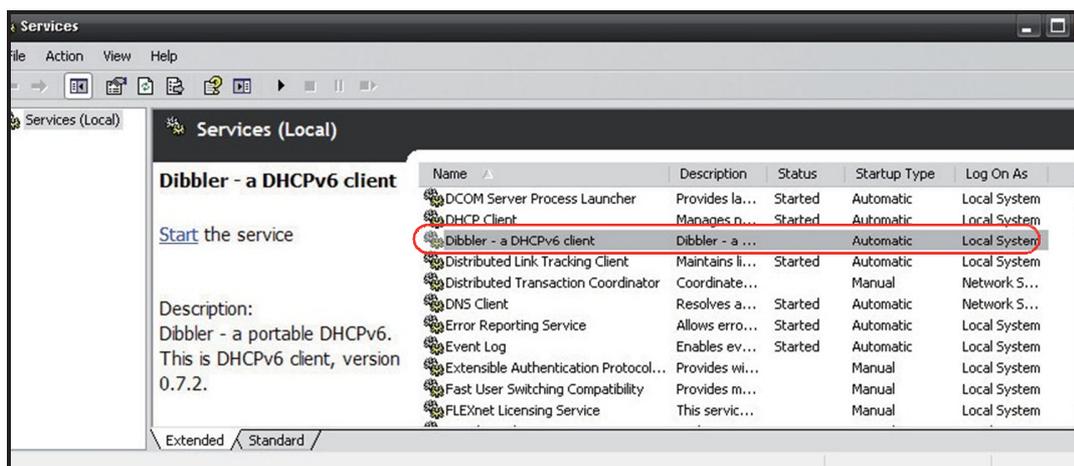
IPv6 is installed and enabled by default in Windows Vista. Use the `ipconfig` command to check your automatic configured IPv6 address as well. You should see at least one IPv6 address available for the interface on your computer.

Example - Enabling DHCPv6 on Windows XP

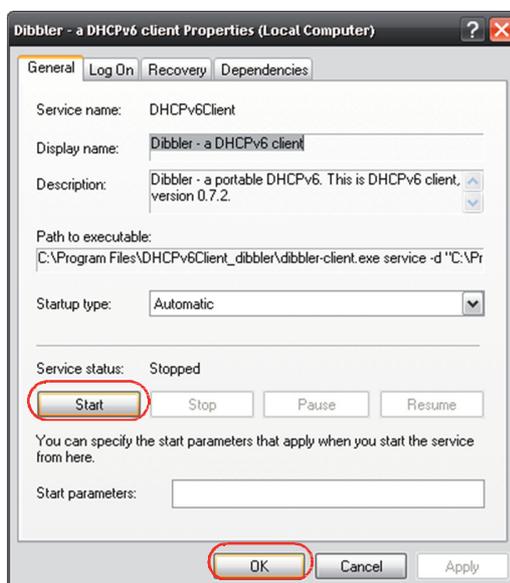
Windows XP does not support DHCPv6. If your network uses DHCPv6 for IP address assignment, you have to additionally install a DHCPv6 client software on your Windows XP. (Note: If you use static IP addresses or Router Advertisement for IPv6 address assignment in your network, ignore this section.)

This example uses Dibbler as the DHCPv6 client. To enable DHCPv6 client on your computer:

- 1 Install Dibbler and select the DHCPv6 client option on your computer.
- 2 After the installation is complete, select Start > All Programs > Dibbler-DHCPv6 > Client Install as service.
- 3 Select Start > Control Panel > Administrative Tools > Services.
- 4 Double click Dibbler - a DHCPv6 client.



- 5 Click Start and then OK.



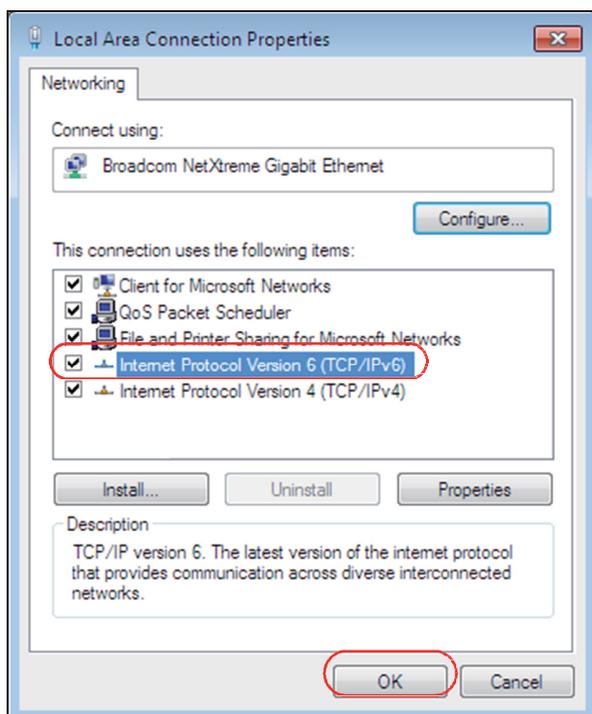
- 6 Now your computer can obtain an IPv6 address from a DHCPv6 server.

Example - Enabling IPv6 on Windows 7

Windows 7 supports IPv6 by default. DHCPv6 is also enabled when you enable IPv6 on a Windows 7 computer.

To enable IPv6 in Windows 7:

- 1 Select Control Panel > Network and Sharing Center > Local Area Connection.
- 2 Select the Internet Protocol Version 6 (TCP/IPv6) checkbox to enable it.
- 3 Click OK to save the change.



- 4 Click Close to exit the Local Area Connection Status screen.
- 5 Select Start > All Programs > Accessories > Command Prompt.
- 6 Use the `ipconfig` command to check your dynamic IPv6 address. This example shows a global address (2001:b021:2d::1000) obtained from a DHCP server.

```
C:\>ipconfig

WindowsIP Configuration

Ethernet adapter Local Area Connection:

    Connection-specific DNS Suffix . . : 
    IPv6 Address. . . . . : 2001:b021:2d::1000
    Link-local IPv6 Address . . . . . : fe80::25d8:dcab:c80a:5189%11
    IPv4 Address. . . . . : 172.16.100.61
    Subnet Mask . . . . . : 255.255.255.0
    Default Gateway . . . . . : fe80::213:49ff:feaa:7125%11
                                172.16.100.254
```

Services

The following table lists some commonly-used services and their associated protocols and port numbers.

- **Name:** This is a short, descriptive name for the service. You can use this one or create a different one, if you like.
- **Protocol:** This is the type of IP protocol used by the service. If this is TCP/UDP, then the service uses the same port number with TCP and UDP. If this is USER-DEFINED, the Port(s) is the IP protocol number, not the port number.
- **Port(s):** This value depends on the Protocol.
 - If the Protocol is TCP, UDP, or TCP/UDP, this is the IP port number.
 - If the Protocol is USER, this is the IP protocol number.
- **Description:** This is a brief explanation of the applications that use this service or the situations in which this service is used.

Table 150 Examples of Services

NAME	PROTOCOL	PORT(S)	DESCRIPTION
AH (IPSEC_TUNNEL)	User-Defined	51	The IPSEC AH (Authentication Header) tunneling protocol uses this service.
AIM	TCP	5190	AOL's Internet Messenger service.
AUTH	TCP	113	Authentication protocol used by some servers.
BGP	TCP	179	Border Gateway Protocol.
BOOTP_CLIENT	UDP	68	DHCP Client.
BOOTP_SERVER	UDP	67	DHCP Server.
CU-SEEME	TCP/UDP TCP/UDP	7648 24032	A popular videoconferencing solution from White Pines Software.
DNS	TCP/UDP	53	Domain Name Server, a service that matches web names (for instance www.zyxel.com) to IP numbers.
ESP (IPSEC_TUNNEL)	User-Defined	50	The IPSEC ESP (Encapsulation Security Protocol) tunneling protocol uses this service.
FINGER	TCP	79	Finger is a UNIX or Internet related command that can be used to find out if a user is logged on.
FTP	TCP TCP	20 21	File Transfer Protocol, a program to enable fast transfer of files, including large files that may not be possible by e-mail.
H.323	TCP	1720	NetMeeting uses this protocol.
HTTP	TCP	80	Hyper Text Transfer Protocol - a client/server protocol for the world wide web.
HTTPS	TCP	443	HTTPS is a secured http session often used in e-commerce.
ICMP	User-Defined	1	Internet Control Message Protocol is often used for diagnostic purposes.
ICQ	UDP	4000	This is a popular Internet chat program.
IGMP (MULTICAST)	User-Defined	2	Internet Group Multicast Protocol is used when sending packets to a specific group of hosts.
IKE	UDP	500	The Internet Key Exchange algorithm is used for key distribution and management.
IMAP4	TCP	143	The Internet Message Access Protocol is used for e-mail.
IMAP4S	TCP	993	This is a more secure version of IMAP4 that runs over SSL.
IRC	TCP/UDP	6667	This is another popular Internet chat program.
MSN Messenger	TCP	1863	Microsoft Networks' messenger service uses this protocol.
NetBIOS	TCP/UDP TCP/UDP TCP/UDP TCP/UDP	137 138 139 445	The Network Basic Input/Output System is used for communication between computers in a LAN.
NEW-ICQ	TCP	5190	An Internet chat program.
NEWS	TCP	144	A protocol for news groups.

Table 150 Examples of Services (continued)

NAME	PROTOCOL	PORT(S)	DESCRIPTION
NFS	UDP	2049	Network File System - NFS is a client/server distributed file service that provides transparent file sharing for network environments.
NNTP	TCP	119	Network News Transport Protocol is the delivery mechanism for the USENET newsgroup service.
PING	User-Defined	1	Packet INternet Groper is a protocol that sends out ICMP echo requests to test whether or not a remote host is reachable.
POP3	TCP	110	Post Office Protocol version 3 lets a client computer get e-mail from a POP3 server through a temporary connection (TCP/IP or other).
POP3S	TCP	995	This is a more secure version of POP3 that runs over SSL.
PPTP	TCP	1723	Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol enables secure transfer of data over public networks. This is the control channel.
PPTP_TUNNEL (GRE)	User-Defined	47	PPTP (Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol) enables secure transfer of data over public networks. This is the data channel.
RCMD	TCP	512	Remote Command Service.
REAL_AUDIO	TCP	7070	A streaming audio service that enables real time sound over the web.
REXEC	TCP	514	Remote Execution Daemon.
RLOGIN	TCP	513	Remote Login.
ROADRUNNER	TCP/UDP	1026	This is an ISP that provides services mainly for cable modems.
RTELNET	TCP	107	Remote Telnet.
RTSP	TCP/UDP	554	The Real Time Streaming (media control) Protocol (RTSP) is a remote control for multimedia on the Internet.
SFTP	TCP	115	The Simple File Transfer Protocol is an old way of transferring files between computers.
SMTP	TCP	25	Simple Mail Transfer Protocol is the message-exchange standard for the Internet. SMTP enables you to move messages from one e-mail server to another.
SMTPS	TCP	465	This is a more secure version of SMTP that runs over SSL.
SNMP	TCP/UDP	161	Simple Network Management Program.
SNMP-TRAPS	TCP/UDP	162	Traps for use with the SNMP (RFC:1215).
SQL-NET	TCP	1521	Structured Query Language is an interface to access data on many different types of database systems, including mainframes, midrange systems, UNIX systems and network servers.
SSDP	UDP	1900	The Simple Service Discovery Protocol supports Universal Plug-and-Play (UPnP).
SSH	TCP/UDP	22	Secure Shell Remote Login Program.
STRM WORKS	UDP	1558	Stream Works Protocol.

Table 150 Examples of Services (continued)

NAME	PROTOCOL	PORT(S)	DESCRIPTION
SYSLOG	UDP	514	Syslog allows you to send system logs to a UNIX server.
TACACS	UDP	49	Login Host Protocol used for (Terminal Access Controller Access Control System).
TELNET	TCP	23	Telnet is the login and terminal emulation protocol common on the Internet and in UNIX environments. It operates over TCP/IP networks. Its primary function is to allow users to log into remote host systems.
VDOLIVE	TCP UDP	7000 user- defined	A videoconferencing solution. The UDP port number is specified in the application.

Legal Information

Copyright

Copyright © 2016 by ZyXEL Communications Corporation.

The contents of this publication may not be reproduced in any part or as a whole, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, translated into any language, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, magnetic, optical, chemical, photocopying, manual, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of ZyXEL Communications Corporation.

Published by ZyXEL Communications Corporation. All rights reserved.

Disclaimer

ZyXEL does not assume any liability arising out of the application or use of any products, or software described herein. Neither does it convey any license under its patent rights nor the patent rights of others. ZyXEL further reserves the right to make changes in any products described herein without notice. This publication is subject to change without notice.

Regulatory Notice and Statement

UNITED STATES of AMERICA



The following information applies if you use the product within USA area.

FCC EMC Statement

- The device complies with Part 15 of FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
 - (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
 - (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
- Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the device.
- This product has been tested and complies with the specifications for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This device generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used according to the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.
- If this device does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which is found by turning the device off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:
 - Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna
 - Increase the separation between the devices
 - Connect the equipment to an outlet other than the receiver's
 - Consult a dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for assistance

FCC Radiation Exposure Statement

- This device complies with FCC RF radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment.

This transmitter must be at least 20 cm from the user and must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

CANADA

The following information applies if you use the product within Canada area

Industry Canada ICES statement

ICAN ICES-3 (B)/NMB-3(B)

Industry Canada RSS-GEN & RSS-247 statement

- This device complies with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.
 - This radio transmitter has been approved by Industry Canada to operate with the antenna types listed below with the maximum permissible gain and required antenna impedance for each antenna type indicated. Antenna types not included in this list, having a gain greater than the maximum gain indicated for that type, are strictly prohibited for use with this device.
- If the product with 5G wireless function operating in 5150-5250 MHz and 5725-5850 MHz, the following attention must be paid,
- The device for operation in the band 5150-5250 MHz is only for indoor use to reduce the potential for harmful interference to co-channel mobile satellite systems.
 - For devices with detachable antenna(s), the maximum antenna gain permitted for devices in the band 5725-5850 MHz shall be such that the equipment still complies with the e.i.r.p. limits specified for point-to-point and non-point-to-point operation as appropriate; and
 - The worst-case tilt angle(s) necessary to remain compliant with the e.i.r.p. elevation mask requirement set forth in Section 6.2.2(3) of RSS 247 shall be clearly indicated.

If the product with 5G wireless function operating in 5250-5350 MHz and 5470-5725 MHz, the following attention must be paid.

- For devices with detachable antenna(s), the maximum antenna gain permitted for devices in the bands 5250-5350 MHz and 5470-5725 MHz shall be such that the equipment still complies with the e.i.r.p. limit
- Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes : (1) l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et (2) l'utilisateur de l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.
- Le présent émetteur radio de modèle s'il fait partie du matériel de catégorie I) a été approuvé par Industrie Canada pour fonctionner avec les types d'antenne énumérés ci-dessous et ayant un gain admissible maximal et l'impédance requise pour chaque type d'antenne. Les types d'antenne non inclus dans cette liste, ou dont le gain est supérieur au gain maximal indiqué, sont strictement interdits pour l'exploitation de l'émetteur.

Lorsque la fonction sans fil 5G fonctionnant en 5150-5250 MHz and 5725-5850 MHz est activée pour ce produit, il est nécessaire de porter une attention particulière aux choses suivantes

- Les dispositifs fonctionnant dans la bande 5150-5250 MHz sont réservés uniquement pour une utilisation à l'intérieur afin de réduire les risques de brouillage préjudiciable aux systèmes de satellites mobiles utilisant les mêmes canaux;
- Pour les dispositifs munis d'antennes amovibles, le gain maximal d'antenne permis (pour les dispositifs utilisant la bande de 5 725 à 5 850 MHz) doit être conforme à la limite de la p.i.r.e. spécifiée pour l'exploitation point à point et l'exploitation non point à point, selon le cas;
- Les pires angles d'inclinaison nécessaires pour rester conforme à l'exigence de la p.i.r.e. applicable au masque d'élévation, et énoncée à la section 6.2.2 3) du CNR-247, doivent être clairement indiqués.

Lorsque la fonction sans fil 5G fonctionnant en 5250-5350 MHz et 5470-5725 MHz est activée pour ce produit, il est nécessaire de porter une attention particulière aux choses suivantes

- Pour les dispositifs munis d'antennes amovibles, le gain maximal d'antenne permis pour les dispositifs utilisant les bandes de 5 250 à 5 350 MHz et de 5 470 à 5 725 MHz doit être conforme à la limite de la p.i.r.e.

Industry Canada radiation exposure statement

This device complies with IC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This device should be installed and operated with a minimum distance of 20 cm between the radiator and your body.

Déclaration d'exposition aux radiations:

Cet équipement est conforme aux limites d'exposition aux rayonnements IC établies pour un environnement non contrôlé. Cet équipement doit être installé et utilisé avec un minimum de 20 cm de distance entre la source de rayonnement et votre corps.

EUROPEAN UNION



The following information applies if you use the product within the European Union.

Declaration of Conformity with Regard to EU Directive 1999/5/EC (R&TTE Directive)

Compliance information for 2.4GHz and/or 5GHz wireless products relevant to the EU and other Countries following the EU Directive 1999/5/EC (R&TTE)

кБРТИШРР (Bulgarian)	н улштУадУТУ ZyXEL ÖөрfiŞRŞİ, ёо ТУТТ УтУСтÖИүү ö İ şБУТТöТşТІРö ş8ş ş8дöşТТöуРТö РöRşRІІuRа R ÖŞтРТö аŞRfUÖRÜR ŞІoaUŞöÖІРТö ұІ ÖRŞöRТІТІ 1999/5/ġC.
Español (Spanish)	Por medio de la presente ZyXEL declara que el equipo cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
čeština (Czech)	ZyXEL tímto prohlašuje, že tento zařizení je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/EC.
Dansk (Danish)	Undertegnede ZyXEL erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

Appendix E Legal Information

Deutsch (German)	Hiermit erklärt ZyXEL, dass sich das Gerät Ausstattung in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EU befindet.
Eesti keel (Estonian)	Käesolevaga kinnitab ZyXEL seadme seadmed vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Ἑλληνικά (Greek)	Ἐν τῷ παρόντι ἀρτῶν τὸ ζυξελ ἀρτῶν τὸν ἰσὺν τὸν ἀπὸ τῆς ἑπισημῆς ἀπαιτήσεως καὶ τῶν ἄλλων σχετικῶν ἀρτῶν τῆς ἑπισημῆς ἀπαιτήσεως 1999/5/ΕΚ.
English	Hereby, ZyXEL declares that this device is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Français (French)	Par la présente ZyXEL déclare que l'appareil équipements est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/EC.
Hrvatski (Croatian)	ZyXEL ovime izjavljuje da je radijska oprema tipa u skladu s Direktivom 1999/5/EC.
Íslenska (Icelandic)	Hér með lýsir, ZyXEL því yfir að þessi búnaður er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og önnur viðeigandi ákvæði tilskipunar 1999/5/EC.
Italiano (Italian)	Con la presente ZyXEL dichiara che questo attrezzatura è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Latviešu valoda (Latvian)	Ar šo ZyXEL deklarē, ka iekārta atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Lietuvių kalba (Lithuanian)	Šiuo ZyXEL deklaruoja, kad šis įranga atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Magyar (Hungarian)	Alulírott, ZyXEL nyilatkozom, hogy a berendezés megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EK irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
Malti (Maltese)	Hawnhekk, ZyXEL, jiddikjara li dan tagħmir jikkonforma mal-ċertiessenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn rilevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Nederlands (Dutch)	Hierbij verklaart ZyXEL dat het toestel uitrusting in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EC.
Polski (Polish)	Niniejszym ZyXEL oświadczam, że sprzęt jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Português (Portuguese)	ZyXEL declara que este equipamento está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/EC.
Română (Romanian)	Prin prezenta, ZyXEL declară că acest echipament este în conformitate cu cerințele esențiale și alte prevederi relevante ale Directivei 1999/5/EC.
Slovenčina (Slovak)	ZyXEL týmto vyhlasuje, že zariadenia spĺňajú základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/EC.
Slovenščina (Slovene)	ZyXEL izjavlja, da je ta oprema v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/EC.
Suomi (Finnish)	ZyXEL vakuuttaa täten että laitteet tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Svenska (Swedish)	Härmed intygar ZyXEL att denna utrustning står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EC.
Norsk (Norwegian)	Erklærer herved ZyXEL at dette utstyret er i samsvar med de grunnleggende kravene og andre relevante bestemmelser i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

This device is restricted to indoor use only when operating in the 5150 to 5350 MHz frequency range.

National Restrictions

This product may be used in all EU countries (and other countries following the EU Directive 1999/5/EC) without any limitation except for the countries mentioned below:

Ce produit peut être utilisé dans tous les pays de l'UE (et dans tous les pays ayant transposés la directive 1999/5/CE) sans aucune limitation, excepté pour les pays mentionnés ci-dessous:

Questo prodotto è utilizzabile in tutte i paesi EU (ed in tutti gli altri paesi che seguono le direttiva 1999/5/EC) senza nessuna limitazione, eccetto per i paesi menzionati di seguito:

Das Produkt kann in allen EU Staaten ohne Einschränkungen eingesetzt werden (sowie in anderen Staaten die der Richtlinie 1999/5/CE folgen) mit Ausnahme der folgenden aufgeführten Staaten:

In the majority of the EU and other European countries, the 2.4GHz and 5GHz bands have been made available for the use of wireless local area networks (LANs). Later in this document you will find an overview of countries in which additional restrictions or requirements or both are applicable.

The requirements for any country may evolve. ZyXEL recommends that you check with the local authorities for the latest status of their national regulations for both the 2.4GHz and 5GHz wireless LANs.

The following countries have restrictions and/or requirements in addition to those given in the table labeled "Overview of Regulatory Requirements for Wireless LANs":

Belgium

Appendix E Legal Information

The Belgian Institute for Postal Services and Telecommunications (BIPT) must be notified of any outdoor wireless link having a range exceeding 300 meters. Please check <http://www.bipt.be> for more details.

Draadloze verbindingen voor buitengebruik en met een reikwijdte van meer dan 300 meter dienen aangemeld te worden bij het Belgisch Instituut voor postdiensten en telecommunicatie (BIPT). Zie <http://www.bipt.be> voor meer gegevens.

Les liaisons sans fil pour une utilisation en extérieur d'une distance supérieure à 300 mètres doivent être notifiées à l'Institut Belge des services Postaux et des Télécommunications (IBPT). Visitez <http://www.ibpt.be> pour de plus amples détails.

Denmark

In Denmark, the band 5150 - 5350 MHz is also allowed for outdoor usage.

I Danmark må frekvensbåndet 5150 - 5350 også anvendes udendørs.

Italy

This product meets the National Radio Interface and the requirements specified in the National Frequency Allocation Table for Italy. Unless this wireless LAN product is operating within the boundaries of the owner's property, its use requires a "general authorization." Please check <http://www.sviluppoeconomico.gov.it/> for more details.

Questo prodotto è conforme alla specifiche di Interfaccia Radio Nazionali e rispetta il Piano Nazionale di ripartizione delle frequenze in Italia. Se non viene installato all'interno del proprio fondo, l'utilizzo di prodotti Wireless LAN richiede una "Autorizzazione Generale". Consultare <http://www.sviluppoeconomico.gov.it/> per maggiori dettagli.

Latvia

The outdoor usage of the 2.4 GHz band requires an authorization from the Electronic Communications Office. Please check <http://www.esd.lv> for more details.

2.4 GHz frekvenču joslas izmantošanai ārpus telpām nepieciešama atļauja no Elektronisko sakaru direkcijas. Vairāk informācijas: <http://www.esd.lv>.

Notes:

1. Although Norway, Switzerland and Liechtenstein are not EU member states, the EU Directive 1999/5/EC has also been implemented in those countries.
2. The regulatory limits for maximum output power are specified in EIRP. The EIRP level (in dBm) of a device can be calculated by adding the gain of the antenna used (specified in dBi) to the output power available at the connector (specified in dBm).

List of national codes

COUNTRY	ISO 3166 2 LETTER CODE	COUNTRY	ISO 3166 2 LETTER CODE
Austria	AT	Liechtenstein	LI
Belgium	BE	Lithuania	LT
Bulgaria	BG	Luxembourg	LU
Croatia	HR	Malta	MT
Cyprus	CY	Netherlands	NL
Czech Republic	CZ	Norway	NO
Denmark	DK	Poland	PL
Estonia	EE	Portugal	PT
Finland	FI	Romania	RO
France	FR	Serbia	RS
Germany	DE	Slovakia	SK
Greece	GR	Slovenia	SI
Hungary	HU	Spain	ES
Iceland	IS	Switzerland	CH
Ireland	IE	Sweden	SE
Italy	IT	Turkey	TR
Latvia	LV	United Kingdom	GB

Safety Warnings

- Do not use this product near water, for example, in a wet basement or near a swimming pool.
- Do not expose your device to dampness, dust or corrosive liquids.
- Do not store things on the device.
- Do not install, use, or service this device during a thunderstorm. There is a remote risk of electric shock from lightning.
- Connect ONLY suitable accessories to the device.
- Do not open the device or unit. Opening or removing covers can expose you to dangerous high voltage points or other risks. ONLY qualified service personnel should service or disassemble this device. Please contact your vendor for further information.
- Make sure to connect the cables to the correct ports.
- Place connecting cables carefully so that no one will step on them or stumble over them.
- Always disconnect all cables from this device before servicing or disassembling.
- Do not remove the plug and connect it to a power outlet by itself; always attach the plug to the power adaptor first before connecting it to a power outlet.

Appendix E Legal Information

- Do not allow anything to rest on the power adaptor or cord and do NOT place the product where anyone can walk on the power adaptor or cord.
- Please use the provided or designated connection cables/power cables/ adaptors. Connect it to the right supply voltage (for example, 110V AC in North America or 230V AC in Europe). If the power adaptor or cord is damaged, it might cause electrocution. Remove it from the device and the power source, repairing the power adapter or cord is prohibited. Contact your local vendor to order a new one.
- Do not use the device outside, and make sure all the connections are indoors. There is a remote risk of electric shock from lightning.
- CAUTION: Risk of explosion if battery is replaced by an incorrect type, dispose of used batteries according to the instruction. Dispose them at the applicable collection point for the recycling of electrical and electronic devices. For detailed information about recycling of this product, please contact your local city office, your household waste disposal service or the store where you purchased the product.
- Do not obstruct the device ventilation slots, as insufficient airflow may harm your device.

The following warning statements apply, where the disconnect device is not incorporated in the device or where the plug on the power supply cord is intended to serve as the disconnect device,

- For permanently connected devices, a readily accessible disconnect device shall be incorporated external to the device;
- For pluggable devices, the socket-outlet shall be installed near the device and shall be easily accessible.

Environment Statement

ErP (Energy-related Products)

ZyXEL products put on the EU market in compliance with the requirement of the European Parliament and the Council published Directive 2009/125/EC establishing a framework for the setting of ecodesign requirements for energy-related products (recast), so called as "ErP Directive (Energy-related Products directive) as well as ecodesign requirement laid down in applicable implementing measures, power consumption has satisfied regulation requirements which are:

Network standby power consumption < 12W, and/or

Off mode power consumption < 0.5W, and/or

Standby mode power consumption < 0.5W.

Wireless setting, please refer to "Wireless" chapter for more detail.

European Union - Disposal and Recycling Information

The symbol below means that according to local regulations your product and/or its battery shall be disposed of separately from domestic waste. If this product is end of life, take it to a recycling station designated by local authorities. At the time of disposal, the separate collection of your product and/or its battery will help save natural resources and ensure that the environment is sustainable development.

Die folgende Symbol bedeutet, dass Ihr Produkt und/oder seine Batterie gemäß den örtlichen Bestimmungen getrennt vom Hausmüll entsorgt werden muss. Wenden Sie sich an eine Recyclingstation, wenn dieses Produkt das Ende seiner Lebensdauer erreicht hat. Zum Zeitpunkt der Entsorgung wird die getrennte Sammlung von Produkt und/oder seiner Batterie dazu beitragen, natürliche Ressourcen zu sparen und die Umwelt und die menschliche Gesundheit zu schützen.

El símbolo de abajo indica que según las regulaciones locales, su producto y/o su batería deberán depositarse como basura separada de la doméstica. Cuando este producto alcance el final de su vida útil, llévelo a un punto limpio. Cuando llegue el momento de desechar el producto, la recogida por separado éste y/o su batería ayudará a salvar los recursos naturales y a proteger la salud humana y medioambiental.

Le symbole ci-dessous signifie que selon les réglementations locales votre produit et/ou sa batterie doivent être éliminés séparément des ordures ménagères. Lorsque ce produit atteint sa fin de vie, amenez-le à un centre de recyclage. Au moment de la mise au rebut, la collecte séparée de votre produit et/ou de sa batterie aidera à économiser les ressources naturelles et protéger l'environnement et la santé humaine.

Il simbolo sotto significa che secondo i regolamenti locali il vostro prodotto e/o batteria deve essere smaltito separatamente dai rifiuti domestici. Quando questo prodotto raggiunge la fine della vita di servizio portarlo a una stazione di riciclaggio. Al momento dello smaltimento, la raccolta separata del vostro prodotto e/o della sua batteria aiuta a risparmiare risorse naturali e a proteggere l'ambiente e la salute umana.

Symbolen innebär att enligt lokal lagstiftning ska produkten och/eller dess batteri kastas separat från hushållsavfallet. När den här produkten når slutet av sin livslängd ska du ta den till en återvinningsstation. Vid tiden för kasseringen bidrar du till en bättre miljö och mänsklig hälsa genom att göra dig av med den på ett återvinningsställe.



Environmental Product Declaration

български (Bulgarian)	Čeština (Czech)	Oansk (Danish)	Deutsch (German)
<p>Екологична продуктова декларация</p> <p>RoHS: ApeKTb-cj WEEE: ApeKTb-cj PPW: JM 81094/621EO REACH: PE(AMEN)T (E)0190712006 JNjpech32009125EG</p> <p>Richard Hsu / Quality Management Division Senior Manager Date (dd/mm/yyyy): 01/10/2014</p> <p>Richard Hsu</p>  	<p>EnvironmentálníprohíMění o produktu</p> <p>RoHS: ApeKTb-cj WEEE: ApeKTb-cj PPW: JM 81094/621EO REACH: PE(AMEN)T (E)0190712006 JNjpech32009125EG</p> <p>Richard Hsu / Quality Management Division Senior Manager Date (dd/mm/yyyy): 01/10/2014</p> <p>Richard Hsu</p>  	<p>Miljøvaredeklaration</p> <p>RoHS: Direktiv 2011/65/EU WEEE: Direktiv 2012/19/EU PPW: Direktiv 94/62/EF REACH: Forordning (EF) nr. 1907/2006 Deklar. 2009/125/EG</p> <p>Navn/ titel: Richard Hsu / Quality Management Division Senior Manager Underskrift: Richard Hsu Date (dd/mm/yyyy): 01/10/2014</p>  	<p>PrOukUmweltdelklaration</p> <p>RoHS: Direktiv 2011/65/EU WEEE: Direktiv 2012/19/EU PPW: Direktiv 94/62/EF REACH: Verordnung (EG) Nr. 1907/2006 Deklar. 2009/125/EG</p> <p>Richard Hsu / Quality Management Division Senior Manager Date (dd/mm/yyyy): 01/10/2014</p> <p>Richard Hsu</p>  
Eesti keel (Estonian)	English	Español (Spanish)	Français
<p>Toote keskkonnadeklaratsioon</p> <p>RoHS: Direktiv 2011/65/EU WEEE: Direktiv 2012/19/EU PPW: Direktiv 94/62/EF REACH: Regulation (EC) No 1907/2006 Deklar. 2009/125/EG</p> <p>Richard Hsu / Quality Management Division Senior Manager Date (dd/mm/yyyy): 01/10/2014</p> <p>Richard Hsu</p>  	<p>Environmental product declaration</p> <p>RoHS: Directive 2011/65/EU WEEE: Directive 2012/19/EU PPW: Directive 94/62/EC REACH: Regulation (EC) No 1907/2006 Deklar. 2009/125/EG</p> <p>Richard Hsu / Quality Management Division Senior Manager Date (dd/mm/yyyy): 01/10/2014</p> <p>Richard Hsu</p>  	<p>Declaraciones Ambientales de Producto</p> <p>RoHS: Directiva 2011/65/UE WEEE: Directiva 2012/19/UE PPW: Directiva 94/62/CE REACH: Reglamento (CE) nº 1907/2006 Deklar. 2009/125/EG</p> <p>Richard Hsu / Quality Management Division Senior Manager Date (dd/mm/yyyy): 01/10/2014</p> <p>Richard Hsu</p>  	<p>Profil environnementale produit</p> <p>RoHS: Directive 2011/65/UE WEEE: Directive 2012/19/UE PPW: Directive 94/62/CE REACH: Règlement (CE) No 1907/2006 Deklar. 2009/125/EG</p> <p>Richard Hsu / Quality Management Division Senior Manager Date (dd/mm/yyyy): 01/10/2014</p> <p>Richard Hsu</p>  
Hrvatski (Croatian)	Italiano (Italian)	Latviešu valoda (Latvian)	Lietuvių kalba (Lithuanian)
<p>Oekološki/uzbrinjavanju proizvoda</p> <p>RoHS: Direktiv 2011/65/EU WEEE: Direktiv 2012/19/EU PPW: Direktiv 94/62/EF REACH: Regulation (EC) No 1907/2006 Deklar. 2009/125/EG</p> <p>Richard Hsu / Quality Management Division Senior Manager Date (dd/mm/yyyy): 01/10/2014</p> <p>Richard Hsu</p>  	<p>Ochiariti/ione ambientale di prodotto</p> <p>RoHS: Direttiva 2011/65/UE WEEE: Direttiva 2012/19/UE PPW: Direttiva 94/62/CE REACH: Regolamento (CE) No 1907/2006 Deklar. 2009/125/EG</p> <p>Richard Hsu / Quality Management Division Senior Manager Date (dd/mm/yyyy): 01/10/2014</p> <p>Richard Hsu</p>  	<p>ProUkUvades ietekm jumadek</p> <p>RoHS: Direktīva 2011/65/EU WEEE: Direktīva 2012/19/EU PPW: Direktīva 94/62/EK REACH: Regula (EK) Nr. 1907/2006 Deklar. 2009/125/EG</p> <p>Richard Hsu / Quality Management Division Senior Manager Date (dd/mm/yyyy): 01/10/2014</p> <p>Richard Hsu</p>  	<p>Apinkosaugin gaminiodek</p> <p>RoHS: Direktyva 2011/65/ES WEEE: Direktyva 2012/19/ES PPW: Direktyva 94/62/EB REACH: Regiamantas (EB) Nr. 1907/2006 Deklar. 2009/125/EG</p> <p>Richard Hsu / Quality Management Division Senior Manager Date (dd/mm/yyyy): 01/10/2014</p> <p>Richard Hsu</p>  
Magyar (Hungarian)	Malta (Maltese)	Nederlands (Dutch)	Polski (Polish)
<p>Könyezetvédelmi terméknyilatkozat</p> <p>RoHS: Direktív 2011/65/EU WEEE: Direktív 2012/19/EU PPW: Direktív 94/62/EF REACH: Regulation (EC) No 1907/2006 Deklar. 2009/125/EG</p> <p>Richard Hsu / Quality Management Division Senior Manager Date (dd/mm/yyyy): 01/10/2014</p> <p>Richard Hsu</p>  	<p>Dikjarazzjoni Ambientali dwar il-Prodott</p> <p>RoHS: Direttiva 2011/65/UE WEEE: Direttiva 2012/19/UE PPW: Direttiva 94/62/CE REACH: Regolamento (CE) No 1907/2006 Deklar. 2009/125/EG</p> <p>Richard Hsu / Quality Management Division Senior Manager Date (dd/mm/yyyy): 01/10/2014</p> <p>Richard Hsu</p>  	<p>Milieuproductverklaring</p> <p>RoHS: Richtlijn 2011/65/UE WEEE: Richtlijn 2012/19/UE PPW: Richtlijn 94/62/EG REACH: Verordening (EG) nr. 1907/2006 Deklar. 2009/125/EG</p> <p>Richard Hsu / Quality Management Division Senior Manager Date (dd/mm/yyyy): 01/10/2014</p> <p>Richard Hsu</p>  	<p>Deklaracja oOowiskowq produktu</p> <p>RoHS: Dyrektywa 2011/65/UE WEEE: Dyrektywa 2012/19/UE PPW: Dyrektywa 94/62/CE REACH: Rozporozczenie (WE) nr 1907/2006 Deklar. 2009/125/EG</p> <p>Richard Hsu / Quality Management Division Senior Manager Date (dd/mm/yyyy): 01/10/2014</p> <p>Richard Hsu</p>  
Portugues (Portuguese)	Romana (Romanian)	Slovenhina (Slovak)	SlovenSina (Slovene)
<p>DeclaraM ambiental do produto</p> <p>RoHS: Diretiva 2011/65/UE WEEE: Diretiva 2012/19/UE PPW: Diretiva 94/62/CE REACH: Regulamento (CE) No 1907/2006 Deklar. 2009/125/EG</p> <p>Richard Hsu / Quality Management Division Senior Manager Date (dd/mm/yyyy): 01/10/2014</p> <p>Richard Hsu</p>  	<p>DeclaraM de medu privind produsele</p> <p>RoHS: Directiva 2011/65/UE WEEE: Directiva 2012/19/UE PPW: Directiva 94/62/CE REACH: Regulamentul (CE) No 1907/2006 Deklar. 2009/125/EG</p> <p>Richard Hsu / Quality Management Division Senior Manager Date (dd/mm/yyyy): 01/10/2014</p> <p>Richard Hsu</p>  	<p>Vnik-tsenie o environment-tnom v-robu</p> <p>RoHS: Smernica 2011/65/EU WEEE: Smernica 2012/19/UE PPW: Direktiva 94/62/EF REACH: Naustava (E) 1907/2006 Deklar. 2009/125/EG</p> <p>Richard Hsu / Quality Management Division Senior Manager Date (dd/mm/yyyy): 01/10/2014</p> <p>Richard Hsu</p>  	<p>Okoljskodedklaracijozdeka</p> <p>RoHS: Direktiva 2011/65/UE WEEE: Direktiva 2012/19/UE PPW: Direktiva 94/62/CE REACH: Uredba (E) 1907/2006 Deklar. 2009/125/EG</p> <p>Richard Hsu / Quality Management Division Senior Manager Date (dd/mm/yyyy): 01/10/2014</p> <p>Richard Hsu</p>  
Suomi (Finnish)	Svenska (Swedish)	E.V. rYJKI (Greek)	Norsk (Norwegian)
<p>Standardinperustava ympäristötietosiselöste</p> <p>RoHS: Direktiiv 2011/65/EU WEEE: Direktiiv 2012/19/EU PPW: Direktiiv 94/62/EF REACH: ASETUS(EY) N:o 1907/2006 Deklar. 2009/125/EG</p> <p>Richard Hsu / Quality Management Division Senior Manager Date (dd/mm/yyyy): 01/10/2014</p> <p>Richard Hsu</p>  	<p>Miljöproduktdeklaration</p> <p>RoHS: Direktiv 2011/65/EU WEEE: Direktiv 2012/19/EU PPW: Direktiv 94/62/EF REACH: Förordning (EG) nr 1907/2006 Deklar. 2009/125/EG</p> <p>Richard Hsu / Quality Management Division Senior Manager Date (dd/mm/yyyy): 01/10/2014</p> <p>Richard Hsu</p>  	<p>Περβαλονικη δήλωση προϊόντος</p> <p>RoHS: Οδηγία 2011/65/ΕΕ WEEE: Οδηγία 2012/19/ΕΕ PPW: Οδηγία 94/62/ΕΚ REACH: Κανονισμός (ΕΚ) αριθ. 1907/2006 Deklar. 2009/125/ΕΚ</p> <p>Richard Hsu / Quality Management Division Senior Manager Date (dd/mm/yyyy): 01/10/2014</p> <p>Richard Hsu</p>  	<p>Miljødeklarasjon</p> <p>RoHS: Direktiv 2011/65/UE WEEE: Direktiv 2012/19/UE PPW: Direktiv 94/62/CE REACH: Regulation (EC) No 1907/2006 Deklar. 2009/125/EG</p> <p>Richard Hsu / Quality Management Division Senior Manager Date (dd/mm/yyyy): 01/10/2014</p> <p>Richard Hsu</p>  

Appendix E Legal Information

Register your product online to receive e-mail notices of firmware upgrades and information at www.zyxel.com for global products, or at www.us.zyxel.com for North American products.

Open Source Licenses

This product contains in part some free software distributed under GPL license terms and/or GPL like licenses. Open source licenses are provided with the firmware package. You can download the latest firmware at www.zyxel.com. To obtain the source code covered under those Licenses, please contact support@zyxel.com.tw to get it.

A

ACK message 238
ACL rule 199
activation firewalls
 195 media server
 193
 SIP ALG 169
 SSID 96
Address Resolution Protocol 256
administrator password 24
antenna
 directional 320
 gain 319
 omni-directional 320
AP (access point) 310
applications
 Internet access 18
 media server 192
 activation 193
 iTunes server 192
applications, NAT 173
ARP Table 256, 258
authentication 108, 109
 RADIUS server 109
Authentication method
 CHAP 70
 MSCHAP 70
 PAP 70

B

backup
 configuration 285
Basic Service Set, See BSS 308
Basic Service Set, see BSS
blinking LEDs 20
Broadband 62
broadcast 88

BSS 111, 308
 example 111
BYE request 238

C

CA 210, 314
call history 233
call hold 244, 245
call service mode 243, 245
call transfer 244, 246
call waiting 244, 245
Canonical Format Indicator See CFI
CCMs 288
certificate
 factory default 211
Certificate Authority
 See CA.
certificates 210
 authentication 210
 CA
 creating 211
 public key 210
 replacing 211
 storage space 211
Certification Authority 210
Certification Authority. see CA
certifications 336
 viewing 339
CFI 88
CFM 288
 CCMs 288
 link trace test 288
 loopback test 288
 MA 288
 MD 288
 MEP 288
 MIP 288
channel 310
 interference 310

-
- channel, wireless LAN 107
 - CHAP 70
 - Class of Service 242
 - Class of Service, see CoS
 - client list 126
 - client-server protocol 235
 - comfort noise generation 240
 - compatibility, WDS 102
 - configuration
 - backup 285
 - firewalls 195
 - reset 286
 - restoring 286
 - static route 84, 137, 138, 177
 - Connectivity Check Messages, see CCMs
 - contact information 302
 - copyright 333
 - CoS 156, 242
 - CoS technologies 143
 - creating certificates 211
 - CTS (Clear to Send) 311
 - CTS threshold 104, 108
 - customer support 302
- D**
- data fragment threshold 104, 108
 - DDoS 195
 - default server address 168
 - Denials of Service, see DoS
 - DHCP 121, 133
 - DHCP option 43 71
 - DHCP option 60 71
 - DHCP option 61
 - DUID 71
 - IAD 71
 - differentiated services 242
 - Differentiated Services, see DiffServ 156
 - DiffServ 156
 - marking rule 156
 - DiffServ (Differentiated Services) 242
 - code points 242
 - marking rule 242
 - digital IDs 210
 - disclaimer 333
 - DLNA 192
 - DMZ 168
 - DNS 121, 133
 - DNS server address assignment 88
 - Domain Name 174
 - Domain Name System, see DNS
 - Domain Name System. See DNS.
 - DoS 195
 - DS field 156, 242
 - DS, dee differentiated services
 - DSCP 156, 242
 - dynamic DNS 176
 - wildcard 176
 - Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol, see DHCP
 - dynamic WEP key exchange 315
 - DYNDNS wildcard 176
- E**
- EAP Authentication 314
 - ECHO 174
 - echo cancellation 240
 - e-mail
 - log example 280
 - Encapsulation 84
 - MER 85
 - PPP over Ethernet 85
 - encapsulation
 - RFC 1483 85
 - encryption 110, 316
 - ESS 309
 - Europe type call service mode 243
 - Extended Service Set IDentification 92, 97
 - Extended Service Set, See ESS 309
- F**
- Fast Leave 181
 - file sharing 19
 - filters

- MAC address 98, 109
 - Finger 174
 - firewalls 194
 - add protocols 196
 - configuration 195
 - DDoS 195
 - DoS 195
 - LAND attack 195
 - Ping of Death 195
 - SYN attack 195
 - firmware 282
 - version 59
 - flash key 243
 - flashing 243
 - forwarding ports 161
 - fragmentation threshold 104, 108, 311
 - FTP 161, 174
- ## G
- G.168 240
 - General wireless LAN screen 91
- ## H
- hidden node 310
 - HTTP 174
- ## I
- IBSS 308
 - ICMPv6 179
 - IEEE 802.11g 312
 - IEEE 802.1Q 88
 - IGA 172
 - IGMP 88
 - multicast group list 179, 260
 - version 88
 - IGMP Fast Leave 179
 - IGMPv2 179
 - IGMPv3 179
 - ILA 172
 - Independent Basic Service Set
 - See IBSS 308
 - initialization vector (IV) 316
 - Inside Global Address, see IGA
 - Inside Local Address, see ILA
 - interface group 184
 - Internet
 - wizard setup 31
 - Internet access 18
 - wizard setup 31
 - Internet Protocol version 6 64
 - Internet Protocol version 6, see IPv6
 - Intra LAN Multicast 181
 - IP address 121, 134
 - ping 289
 - private 134
 - WAN 63
 - IP Address Assignment 87
 - IP alias
 - NAT applications 174
 - IPv6 64, 321
 - addressing 64, 89, 321
 - EUI-64 323
 - global address 322
 - interface ID 323
 - link-local address 321
 - Neighbor Discovery Protocol 321
 - ping 321
 - prefix 64, 89, 321
 - delegation 66
 - length 64, 89, 321
 - unspecified address 322
 - iTunes server 192
 - ITU-T 240
- ## K
- key combinations 246
 - keypad 246

L

LAN 120

- client list 126
- DHCP 121, 133
- DNS 121, 133
- IP address 121, 122, 134
- MAC address 126
- status 60
- subnet mask 121, 122, 134

LAN to LAN multicast 181

LAND attack 195

LBR 288

limitations

- wireless LAN 110
- WPS 118

link trace 288

Link Trace Message, see LTM

Link Trace Response, see LTR

listening port 227

login 23

- passwords 23, 24

logs 248, 251, 260, 265, 279

Loop Back Response, see LBR

loopback 288

LTM 288

LTR 288

M

MA 288

MAC address 99, 126

- filter 98, 109

MAC authentication 98

Mac filter 202

Maintenance Association, see MA

Maintenance Domain, see MD

Maintenance End Point, see MEP

Management Information Base (MIB) 273

managing the device

- good habits 17

Maximum Burst Size (MBS) 86

MBSSID 111

MD 288

media server 192

- activation 193
- iTunes server 192

MEP 288

MLD 179

MLDv1 179

MLDv2 179

MSCHAP 70

MTU (Multi-Tenant Unit) 87

multicast 88

Multicast Listener Discovery, see MLD

multimedia 234

Multiple BSS, see MBSSID

multiplexing 85

- LLC-based 86
- VC-based 85

multiprotocol encapsulation 85

N

NAT 160, 161, 162, 172

- applications 173

 - IP alias 174

example 173

global 172

IGA 172

ILA 172

inside 172

local 172

outside 172

port forwarding 161

port number 174

services 174

SIP ALG 168

- activation 169

NAT example 175

Network Address Translation, see NAT

Network Map 57

network map 26

NNTP 174

non-proxy calls 232

O

OK response 238, 239

P

Pairwise Master Key (PMK) 316, 318
PAP 70
passwords 23, 24
PBC 113
Peak Cell Rate (PCR) 86
peer-to-peer calls 232
Per-Hop Behavior, see PHB 156
PHB 156, 242
phone book
 speed dial 232
phone functions 246
PIN, WPS 113
 example 115
Ping of Death 195
Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol, see PPTP
POP3 174
port forwarding 161
ports 20
PPPoE 85
 Benefits 85
PPTP 174 preamble
105, 108 preamble
mode 112 prefix
delegation 66 private
IP address 134
PSK 316
push button 21
Push Button Configuration, see PBC
push button, WPS 113

Q

QoS 142, 156, 242
 marking 143
 setup 142
 tagging 143

 versus CoS 143

Quality of Service, see QoS

R

RADIUS 313
 message types 313
 messages 313
 shared secret key 313
RADIUS server 109
Real time Transport Protocol, see RTP
reset 21, 286
restart 287
restoring configuration 286
RFC 1058. See RIP.
RFC 1389. See RIP.
RFC 1483 85
RFC 1889 237
RFC 3164 248
RIP 141
 router features 18
Routing Information Protocol. See RIP
RTP 237
RTS (Request To Send) 311
 threshold 310, 311
RTS threshold 104, 108

S

security
 wireless LAN 108
Security Log 249
Security Parameter Index, see SPI
service access control 270, 271
Service Set 92, 97
Services 174
Session Initiation Protocol, see SIP
setup
 firewalls 195
 static route 84, 137, 138, 177
silence suppression 240
Simple Network Management Protocol, see SNMP

-
- Single Rate Three Color Marker, see srTCM
 - SIP 234
 - account 234
 - call progression 238
 - client 235
 - identities 234
 - INVITE request 238, 239
 - number 235
 - OK response 239
 - proxy server 236
 - redirect server 236
 - register server 237
 - servers 235
 - service domain 235
 - URI 234
 - user agent 236
 - SIP ALG 168
 - activation 169
 - SMTP 174
 - SNMP 174, 273, 274
 - agents 273
 - Get 274
 - GetNext 274
 - Manager 273
 - managers 273
 - MIB 273
 - network components 273
 - Set 274
 - Trap 274
 - versions 273
 - SNMP trap 174
 - speed dial 232
 - SPI 195
 - srTCM 158
 - SSID 109
 - activation 96
 - MBSSID 111
 - static route 136, 141, 277
 - configuration 84, 137, 138, 177
 - example 136
 - static VLAN
 - status 57
 - firmware version 59
 - LAN 60
 - WAN 59
 - wireless LAN 60
 - status indicators 20
 - subnet mask 121, 134
 - supplementary services 242
 - Sustained Cell Rate (SCR) 86
 - SYN attack 195
 - syslog
 - protocol 248
 - severity levels 248
 - system
 - firmware 282
 - version 59
 - passwords 23, 24
 - reset 21
 - status 57
 - LAN 60
 - WAN 59
 - wireless LAN 60
 - time 275
- ## T
- Tag Control Information See TCI
 - Tag Protocol Identifier See TPID
 - TCI
 - The 63
 - three-way conference 245, 246
 - thresholds
 - data fragment 104, 108
 - RTS/CTS 104, 108
 - time 275
 - ToS 242
 - TPID 88
 - traffic shaping 86
 - trTCM 159
 - Two Rate Three Color Marker, see trTCM
 - Type of Service, see ToS
- ## U
- unicast 88
 - Uniform Resource Identifier 234
 - Universal Plug and Play, see UPnP
 - upgrading firmware 282
 - UPnP 127
 - cautions 122
-

NAT traversal 121
USA type call service mode 245
USB features 19

V

VAD 240
Vendor ID 131
VID
Virtual Circuit (VC) 85
Virtual Local Area Network See VLAN
VLAN 87
 Introduction 87
 number of possible VIDs
 priority frame
 static
VLAN ID 88
VLAN Identifier See VID
VLAN tag 88
voice activity detection 240
voice coding 240
VoIP 234
 peer-to-peer calls 232
VoIP status 254

W

Wake on LAN 131
WAN
 status 59
 Wide Area Network, see WAN 62
warranty 339
 note 339
WDS 102, 112
 compatibility 102
 example 112
web configurator 23
 login 23
 passwords 23, 24
WEP 110
WEP Encryption 94, 95
WEP encryption 93
WEP key 93

Wi-Fi Protected Access 315
wireless client WPA supplicants 317
Wireless Distribution System, see WDS
wireless LAN 90, 106
 authentication 108, 109
 BSS 111
 example 111
 channel 107
 encryption 110
 example 107
 fragmentation threshold 104, 108
 limitations 110
 MAC address filter 98, 109
 MBSSID 111
 preamble 105, 108
 RADIUS server 109
 RTS/CTS threshold 104, 108
 security 108
 SSID 109
 activation 96
 status 60
 WDS 102, 112
 compatibility 102
 example 112
 WEP 110
 WPA 110
 WPA-PSK 110
 WPS 112, 115
 example 116
 limitations 118
 PIN 113
 push button 21, 113
wireless security 312
Wireless tutorial 37
wizard setup
 Internet 31
WLAN
 interference 310
 security parameters 319
WPA 110, 315
 key caching 317
 pre-authentication 317
 user authentication 316
 vs WPA-PSK 316
 wireless client supplicant 317
 with RADIUS application example 317
WPA2 315
 user authentication 316

- vs WPA2-PSK 316
- wireless client supplicant 317
- with RADIUS application example 317
- WPA2-Pre-Shared Key 316
- WPA2-PSK 316
 - application example 318
- WPA-PSK 110, 316
 - application example 318
- WPS 112, 115
 - example 116
 - limitations 118
 - PIN 113
 - example 115
 - push button 21, 113